



GE Fanuc Automation

Programmable Control Products

Using PC Control Software

GFK-1424B

August 1998

Warning

Warning notices are used in this publication to emphasize that hazardous voltages, currents, temperatures, or other conditions that could cause personal injury exist in this equipment or may be associated with its use.

In situations where inattention could cause either personal injury or damage to equipment, a Warning notice is used.

Caution

Caution notices are used where equipment might be damaged if care is not taken.

Note

Notes merely call attention to information that is especially significant to understanding and operating the equipment.

This document is based on information available at the time of its publication. While efforts have been made to be accurate, the information contained herein does not purport to cover all details or variations in hardware or software, nor to provide for every possible contingency in connection with installation, operation, or maintenance. Features may be described herein which are not present in all hardware and software systems. GE Fanuc Automation assumes no obligation of notice to holders of this document with respect to changes subsequently made.

GE Fanuc Automation makes no representation or warranty, expressed, implied, or statutory with respect to, and assumes no responsibility for the accuracy, completeness, sufficiency, or usefulness of the information contained herein. No warranties of merchantability or fitness for purpose shall apply.

The following are trademarks of GE Fanuc Automation North America, Inc.

Alarm Master	GENet	PowerMotion	Series One
CIMPLICITY	Genius	ProLoop	Series Six
CIMPLICITY PowerTRAC	Genius PowerTRAC	PROMACRO	Series Three
CIMPLICITY 90-ADS	Helpmate	Series Five	VuMaster
CIMSTAR	Logicmaster	Series 90	Workmaster
Field Control	Modelmaster		

**©Copyright 1997—1998 GE Fanuc Automation North America, Inc.
All Rights Reserved.**

Revisions to This Manual

Release 2.0 of PC Control software provides the following new features:

Runtime error reporting — page 2-5

Cryp Key emergency authorization — page 2-14

Smart Shutdown UPS monitor — pages 2-19 and 2-30

New System Option dialogue window — page 2-26

Structure and Function Block Enumeration — page 2-29

IEC reference display — page 2-29

Import/Export of symbols via a .CSV file for Global Symbols, and GE Fanuc PCIM and PCIM variables — page 3-41

Enhanced parser error handling — page 4-102

Seamless online editing — page 4-115

Structured Text and Instruction List programming languages for standalone programs — Sections 4 and 5 in Chapter 4

Menu driven Structured Text Editor — Section 4 in Chapter 4

ActiveX interface — page 6-33

PCIF2 driver support for Series 90-30 I/O interface — Appendix C

APM and DSM configuration; Program 0 creation and download — page E-2 and the online help for configuring your motion control card

Motion Control programming and operator interface controls — Appendix E

Support for Indirect addressing (Pointers) — appendix F

Change MMI function — “Miscellaneous Functions” in Appendix G

Additional timer types — “Extended Timers” in Appendix G

New instructions for conversions and extended timers — Appendix G

Support of user defined C function blocks — refer to application note APP981R1 provided on the PC Control CD for details on using the CFB Editor

Content of This Manual

- Chapter 1.** Introduction: Provides the requirements and procedures for installing PC Control on your computer and tells how to use online documentation.
- Chapter 2.** Getting Started: Provides an overview of PC Control operation and the main tasks you need to perform to create a control application. Describes how to create a new project to hold all of the associated files.
- Chapter 3.** Configuring I/O: Describes how to configure GENIUS® I/O and Series 90™-30 I/O within PC Control software.
- Chapter 4.** Creating Application Programs: Describes how to create Sequential Function Chart, Relay Ladder Logic, Structured Text, and Instruction List programs.
- Chapter 5.** Running Application Programs: Describes how to start the run-time systems and run an application program.
- Chapter 6.** Creating Operator Interface Applications: Describes how to create an operator interface screen using the integrated PC Control GUI editor.
- Appendix A.** The Personal Computer Interface Module (PCIM) for Genius I/O: This appendix describes how to install the PCIM in your personal computer and configure the module using the PCIM Configuration Utility in the PC Control software.
- Appendix B.** The Personal Computer Interface (PCIF) for Series 90-30 I/O: This appendix describes how to install the PCIF in your personal computer.
- Appendix C.** The Personal Computer Interface (PCIF2) for Series 90-30 I/O: This appendix describes how to install the PCIF2 in your personal computer.
- Appendix D.** Application Example: Provides step-by-step instructions on how to create an application program using the SFC and Relay Ladder program editors. An Operator Interface screen is also constructed to monitor and control program operation.
- Appendix E.** Motion Control: Describes how to use the RS-274D compliant language set of text-based instructions for motion control operation.
- Appendix F.** Pointers: (For advanced users) Describes how to use pointers for indirect addressing operations in Structured Text.
- Appendix G.** Instruction Set Reference
- Appendix H.** Glossary of Terms

Related Publications

- GEK-90486-1 *Genius® I/O System User's Manual*
- GFK-0898 *Series 90™-30 Programmable Controller I/O Module Specifications*
- GFK-0826 *Field Control Distributed I/O and Control System User's Manual*
- GFK-0356 *Series 90™-30 Programmable Controller Installation Manual*
- GFK-1180 *CIMPLICITY® HMI for Window NT® and Windows® 95 Base System User's Manual*

At GE Fanuc Automation, we strive to produce quality technical documentation. After you have used this manual, please take a few moments to complete and return the Reader's Comment Card located on the next page.

Libby Allen
Senior Technical Writer

Chapter 1	Introduction.....	1-1
	Section 1: Setting Up PC Control.....	1-2
	Before You Begin	1-2
	Upgrading PC Control	1-4
	Installing PC Control Software.....	1-4
	Running and Authorizing PC Control Software	1-5
	Section 2: Using Online Documentation	1-7
	Online Help.....	1-7
Chapter 2	Getting Started	2-1
	Section 1: Overview of the Software	2-2
	Software Subsystems	2-2
	IEC 1131 Overview	2-3
	IEC 1131-3 Programming Languages.....	2-3
	Quick Start	2-4
	PC Control Runtime Subsystems	2-6
	Program Editor.....	2-7
	Access Levels.....	2-7
	Keyboard Shortcuts for the Operator Interface	2-9
	Menu Descriptions	2-10
	Toolbars and Status Bar	2-16
	Answers to Common Questions	2-18
	Section 2: Working with Projects and Applications.....	2-20
	Managing Projects.....	2-20
	Creating a New Project	2-20
	Opening a Project.....	2-20
	Copying a Project.....	2-21
	Renaming a Project	2-21
	Activating a Configuration.....	2-21
	Working With Application Programs	2-22
	Creating a New Program.....	2-22
	Opening a Program	2-22
	Saving a File	2-23
	Printing a Program	2-23
	Printing Program Cross-References	2-24

Managing Application Programs	2-24
Closing Application Programs	2-24
Viewing Programs.....	2-25
Sizing a Program to Fit the Window	2-25
Turning Comments On and Off.....	2-25
Setting System Options.....	2-26
IEC Style Locations	2-29
UPS Configuration.....	2-30
Section 3: Program Operation Overview.....	2-32
Activate Configuration.....	2-32
First Scan with Active Configuration	2-32
Power-down Sequence.....	2-32
Normal Operation	2-33
File Names	2-34
Chapter 3 Configuring I/O.....	3-1
Section 1: Overview	3-2
Help With Hardware Conflicts	3-2
Data I/O Port.....	3-3
Memory Address.....	3-3
Interrupt – IRQ.....	3-3
Working with Configuration Files	3-4
Elements of a Configuration	3-4
Creating a New Configuration	3-4
Editing an Existing Configuration File.....	3-4
Activating a Configuration File.....	3-4
Navigating Within the Configuration Utility	3-5
About the System Configuration Dialog Box.....	3-5
I/O Scan Rate	3-5
Using the Define Board Dialog Box	3-6
Section 2: Configuring GENIUS I/O.....	3-7
The PC Interface Module (PCIM).....	3-7
Global Data Setup Dialog Box.....	3-11
Global Data: Device.....	3-11
Global Data: Device, Word.....	3-11

Genius Bus Address Definitions	3-11
Using the Genius Bus Address Definitions Dialog Box.....	3-12
Discrete Point Information.....	3-13
Sending Datagrams with the PCIM Driver.....	3-15
Section 3: Configuring Series 90-30 I/O	3-16
The PC Interface (PCIF)	3-16
Using the PCIF Board Dialog	3-16
The Rack Definition Dialog.....	3-18
The Module Dialog	3-18
Defining Digital Port Connections.....	3-19
Defining Analog Port Connections	3-19
Section 4: Configuring Other Field Busses.....	3-20
Configuring DeviceNet I/O.....	3-20
Capabilities	3-20
Installing and Configuring Devices on the DeviceNet Network	3-20
Configuring Profibus I/O	3-22
Section 5: Dynamic Data Exchange.....	3-38
About the DDE Interface	3-38
DDE Communication with Microsoft's Excel Software.....	3-38
Transferring Data to Excel.....	3-38
Transferring Data to the Control System.....	3-39
Transferring Values to the Control System Upon Request.....	3-39
Section 6: Import/Export Configuration	3-41
Chapter 4 Creating Application Programs.....	4-1
Section 1: Configuring Symbols	4-2
About Symbols.....	4-2
Symbol Scope	4-2
Identifiers	4-3
Literals	4-4
Numeric Literals	4-4
Character String Literals	4-4
Time Duration Literals.....	4-5
Time of Day and Date Literals.....	4-6
Data Types	4-7

BOOL (Boolean).....	4-7
BYTE.....	4-7
DATE.....	4-8
DINT (Double Integer).....	4-8
DWORD (Double WORD).....	4-8
INT (Integer).....	4-8
REAL.....	4-9
STRING.....	4-9
TIME.....	4-9
TOD (TIME_OF_DAY).....	4-10
UINT (Unsigned Integer).....	4-10
WORD.....	4-10
Generic Data Types.....	4-11
User-Defined Data Type.....	4-11
Arrays.....	4-12
Pointer Symbols.....	4-12
Symbol Manager.....	4-12
Opening the Symbol Manager.....	4-12
Creating a Symbol.....	4-14
Editing a Symbol.....	4-14
Copying a Symbol.....	4-16
Deleting a Symbol.....	4-16
Naming a Bit in a Symbol.....	4-16
Editing User-Defined Data Types.....	4-17
Using Symbols.....	4-19
Drag-and-Drop.....	4-19
Enumerations.....	4-19
System Symbols.....	4-20
Predefined System Symbols.....	4-20
Run-Time Symbols.....	4-21
Keywords.....	4-22
Exporting Symbols for CIMPLICITY HMI.....	4-25
Section 2: RLL Programming.....	4-26
Overview of Relay Ladder Logic Diagrams.....	4-26
How RLL Application Programs are Solved.....	4-27
How Simple Relay Logic is Solved.....	4-27
How RLL Logic is Solved When Function Blocks Are Used.....	4-28

Creating a Relay Ladder Logic Program.....	4-28
Section 3: SFC Programming	4-41
Overview of Sequential Function Charts	4-41
About Steps.....	4-41
Using the Step System Symbols.....	4-43
About Actions	4-44
Action Manager	4-50
About Transitions.....	4-50
About Divergences.....	4-51
About Program Flow Control Features	4-53
How SFCs are Solved	4-56
How Transitions are Evaluated	4-57
Using Simultaneous Divergences.....	4-58
Using Macro Steps.....	4-58
Extensions to IEC 1131-3	4-59
Creating Sequential Function Charts	4-60
Creating an SFC Program	4-60
Using the SFC Tool and Menu Bar.....	4-62
Working with Steps.....	4-63
Working with Transitions	4-66
Working with Macro Steps	4-67
Working with Actions	4-68
Adding SFC Program Flow Controls	4-71
Integrating Structured Text into an SFC	4-80
Documenting an SFC Program.....	4-81
Section 4: Structured Text Programming.....	4-82
Overview	4-82
Opening a Structured Text Document.....	4-82
Editing Structured Text in an SFC Step	4-82
Entering Statements	4-83
Editing Structured Text.....	4-83
Language Overview	4-84
Expressions	4-84
Operators.....	4-84
Pointer Operators	4-85
Structured Text Syntax.....	4-85
Assignment Statement.....	4-86

BREAK Statement	4-87
CASE Statement	4-87
Comments	4-88
Exit Statement	4-89
IF Statement	4-90
INCLUDE	4-91
FOR Statement	4-91
Function Call	4-93
LABEL	4-93
REPEAT Statement	4-94
SCAN	4-95
WHILE Statement	4-95
Structured Text Operators	4-97
About the Statement Types	4-98
Using PIDs in an Application Program	4-98
Controlling the Flow of RLL and Structured Text Application Programs	4-100
Monitoring and Testing Application Programs and Symbols	4-102
Section 5: Instruction List Programming	4-105
Overview	4-105
Opening an Instruction List Document	4-105
Entering Instructions	4-105
Editing Instructions	4-106
Language Overview	4-107
Instruction List Syntax	4-107
Operators	4-108
Functions and Function Blocks	4-110
Program Examples	4-112
General Operations Example	4-113
Call to Function Block Example	4-114
Section 6: Online Editing	4-115
Online Editing Operation	4-115
Rules	4-116
General	4-116
Symbols	4-116
I/O	4-116
RLL Programs	4-117
SFC Programs	4-117

	File Operations.....	4-117
	Structured Text Programs	4-118
	Instruction List Programs.....	4-118
Chapter 5	Running Application Programs.....	5-1
	Runtime Subsystems	5-2
	Running an Individual Program	5-2
	Running the Active Program.....	5-2
	Canceling a Running Program	5-3
	Configuring Programs to Execute Automatically	5-4
	Starting Programs with a Batch file	5-4
	Starting Programs with the Run With Restart Command.....	5-5
	Monitoring Power Flow	5-5
	Active RLL Programs	5-5
	Active SFC Programs.....	5-5
	Viewing the Status of Application Programs.....	5-6
Chapter 6	Creating Operator Interface Applications	6-1
	Section 1: Overview of the Operator Interface Editor	6-2
	Starting the Operator Interface.....	6-2
	Access Levels.....	6-2
	Entering an Access Code	6-3
	Changing Access Levels	6-3
	Activation and Edit Modes	6-4
	Switching Operator Interface Modes	6-4
	Controlling RLL Programs from an Operator Interface.....	6-5
	Section 2: Working with Operator Interface Screens	6-6
	Operator Interface Operations.....	6-6
	Starting a New Operator Interface File	6-6
	Opening an Operator Interface File.....	6-6
	Saving an Operator Interface File	6-6
	Screen Operations	6-7
	Creating a New Operator Interface Screen.....	6-7
	Deleting a Screen	6-7
	Copying a Screen	6-7
	Renaming a Screen.....	6-8

Selecting the Startup Screen.....	6-8
Selecting a Screen to Edit	6-8
Section 3: Working with Controls.....	6-9
Adding Controls.....	6-9
Editing Controls.....	6-9
Selecting Controls.....	6-10
Moving Controls.....	6-10
Sizing Controls	6-11
Copying, Cutting, and Pasting	6-11
Deleting Controls.....	6-12
Aligning Controls.....	6-12
Moving Controls Front/Back	6-12
Section 4: Symbol Operations.....	6-13
Editing Symbols.....	6-13
Activating Configurations.....	6-13
Section 5: Creating Operator Interface Applications.....	6-14
Standard Controls.....	6-14
Introduction.....	6-14
Bar	6-16
Bitmap.....	6-18
Box.....	6-19
Click Button.....	6-20
Continuous Button	6-23
Gauge.....	6-25
Indicator	6-27
Numeric Display	6-29
Selected Program Status Panel.....	6-30
Slide	6-30
Text.....	6-32
ActiveX Controls	6-33
Introduction.....	6-33
ActiveX Limitations.....	6-33
ActiveX and Standard Controls	6-34
ActiveX Control Sources	6-34
Registering ActiveX Controls.....	6-35

	Inserting ActiveX Controls	6-36
	Editing ActiveX Controls.....	6-37
Appendix A	The Personal Computer Interface Module for Genius I/O	A-1
	Description.....	A-1
	Installation and Configuration.....	A-3
	Connecting the PCIM to the Bus.....	A-12
	Removing the PCIM from the Bus.....	A-13
	Specifications.....	A-14
	PCIM Electrical Characteristics.....	A-15
	Troubleshooting	A-16
Appendix B	Personal Computer Interface (PCIF) for Series 90-30 I/O	B-1
	Installing the PCIF-30.....	B-1
	Configuring the PCIF-30 Card.....	B-4
Appendix C	Personal Computer Interface (PCIF2) for Series 90-30 I/O	C-1
	Overview	C-1
	Compatibility	C-2
	Hardware Overview	C-2
	Jumpers	C-3
	Connectors	C-4
	DIP Switch.....	C-6
	Quick Start Guide	C-7
Appendix D	Application Examples.....	D-1
	Exercise 1: Create a New Project.....	D-1
	Exercise 2: Create a New System Configuration.....	D-2
	Exercise 3: Creating an SFC.....	D-5
	Exercise 4: Creating Symbols.....	D-9
	Exercise 5: Adding Transition Logic.....	D-11
	Exercise 6: Entering Structured Text Commands.....	D-13
	Exercise 7: Adding and Editing Action Blocks	D-14
	Exercise 8: Executing the Sample Program.....	D-19
	Exercise 9: Creating an Operator Interface Screen	D-20

Appendix E	Motion Control.....	E-1
	Configuring Motion Control.....	E-2
	Motion Control Programming.....	E-3
	Adding Motion Control to an SFC.....	E-3
	PC CONTROL Software Enhancements to RS-274D.....	E-3
	Using Motion Control Statements.....	E-4
	Using Predefined Motion Control Symbols.....	E-11
	Configuring Motion Options.....	E-18
	Using Program Flow Control in Motion Applications.....	E-19
	Using the G56 Macro Calls with Motion.....	E-22
	Monitoring and Running Motion Application Programs.....	E-24
	Embedding Structured Text into Motion Control Code.....	E-27
	Structured Text Motion Functions.....	E-29
	Operator Interface Motion Controls.....	E-31
	Jog Panel.....	E-31
	Single Axis Panel.....	E-32
	Multi-Axis Status Panel.....	E-33
	RS274 Block Display.....	E-34
Appendix F	Pointers in Structured Text.....	F-1
	Addressing.....	F-2
	Pointer Operators.....	F-2
	Pointer Symbol Definition.....	F-3
	Pointer Notes.....	F-3
	Array Pointers.....	F-5
Appendix G	Instruction Set Reference.....	G-1
	RLL Instruction Set Summary.....	G-1
	SFC Instruction Set Summary.....	G-7
	Structured Text Instruction Set Summary.....	G-10
	Instruction List Instruction Set Summary.....	G-17
Appendix H	Glossary of Terms.....	H-1

Chapter 1

Introduction

Welcome to PC Control, GE Fanuc's new software package that provides an integrated programming, configuration, operator graphical user interface (GUI), and run-time package that runs under the Windows NT[®] 4.0 environment. PC Control software provides support for connecting to Genius[®], Field Control[™], DeviceNet[™], PROFIBUS, and Series 90[™]-30 I/O.

With PC Control software, you can:

- Create an application project
- Configure your I/O hardware
- Create and edit symbols
- Create and edit an application program
- Run the program under Windows NT

This chapter provides the following information:

- Requirements and procedures for installing PC Control software on your computer
- Guidelines for running PC Control software under Windows[®] 95
- How to use the product's Online Help

Windows NT and Windows[®] 95 are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. DeviceNet is a trademark of the Open DeviceNet Vendor Association, Inc.

Section 1: Setting Up PC Control

This section provides the recommended system requirements for running PC Control on your computer and tells how to install the program.

Before You Begin

Running Under Windows NT

Your system must meet the following minimum requirements to successfully install and run PC Control for Windows NT.

Windows NT 4.0 requires Service Pack 3.

	<i>Recommended</i>
CPU	Pentium, 100MHz
RAM	32 MB (64 MB preferred)
Hard Drive	100 MB free
CD-ROM Drive	Yes
Monitor	VGA minimum SVGA recommended
Keyboard and Pointing Device	Yes
UPS System	Recommended

Appropriate I/O interfaces are required. Additional resources may be required to support other applications which will run concurrently.

You should also check the *Important Product Information* document shipped with your release for any last minute changes to these requirements.

Running Under Windows 95

Warning

Windows 95 is not a protected-mode operating system. We do not recommend controlling any process with PC Control software running under Windows 95. The Windows 95 operating system should be used for program development only.

PC Control supports offline development and demo operation under Windows 95, with I/O in simulation mode. Your system must meet the following minimum requirements to run PC Control under Windows 95.

	<i>Recommended</i>
CPU	Pentium, 100MHz
RAM	32 MB (64 MB preferred)
Hard Drive	100 MB free
CD-ROM Drive	Yes
Monitor	VGA minimum SVGA recommended
Keyboard and Pointing Device	Yes
UPS System	Recommended

You should also check the Important Product Information document shipped with your release for any last minute changes to these requirements.

Upgrading PC Control

If you are upgrading an authorized version of PC Control, perform these steps before installing Version 2.0.

1. From the Control Panel, double click Add/Remove Programs.
2. Click the Install/Uninstall tab.
3. Highlight PC Control and click the Add/Remove button.
4. Click Yes to remove previous versions.
5. Using Explorer, delete the BIN folder in the path \PCCONTROL\BIN
6. Follow instructions for Installing and Authorizing PC Control Software.

Installing PC Control Software

Before you begin, check the Important Product Information document shipped with your release for any last minute changes or special operation notes about the installation procedure.

The installation instructions given here assume that the CD-ROM drive is d:. If you have assigned another drive to the CD-ROM, make the appropriate substitutions in these instructions.

You can quit or exit installation anytime during the process. To install PC Control for Windows NT software:

1. Place the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive. Setup is invoked automatically. Double-click the icon beside Setup.exe. The PC Control Setup screen will appear.
2. Read the introduction. Click Next to continue with the install procedure.
3. The Select Destination Directory dialog box will appear. The default directory is C:\SIMPLICITY\PCCONTROL. To change the default directory, click the Browse button and select an alternate directory. To accept the directory, click Next.
4. The PC Control files will be installed in the destination directory. This process can take several minutes to complete.

Running and Authorizing PC Control Software

After installing PC Control, you can run the software in Demo mode or you can register the software to operate in Authorized mode. Demo mode is restricted to 32 I/O points and 2 hours of operation..

To run PC Control in Demo mode:

1. Locate the Control Program Editor icon from Programs, as shown:



The Key Validation dialog box appears.

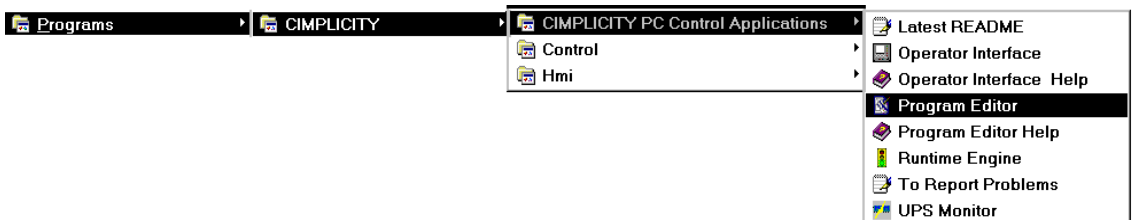
2. Click the **Demo** button. The License Information dialog box will appear.
3. Read the agreement and click the **I Agree** button to accept and continue. The Enter Password dialog box appears.
4. Enter the default password 4, 5, 6, 7 and click the **Enter** button.

PC Control is now running in Demo mode.

To run PC Control in Authorized mode:

You can run only purchased software in authorized mode. Demo CDs will not be authorized.

1. Locate the Control Program Editor icon from Programs, as shown:



The Key Validation dialog box appears.

2. Click the **Authorize** button. The License Information dialog box will appear.

3. Read the agreement and click the **I Agree** button to accept and continue. The Authorization dialog box appears containing a Site Code.
 4. To authorize your software, follow the instructions on the screen.
Type in the Site Code and click **OK**. The Enter Password dialog box appears.
5. Enter the default password 4, 5, 6, 7 and click the **Enter** button.
PC Control is now running in Authorized mode.

Section 2: Using Online Documentation

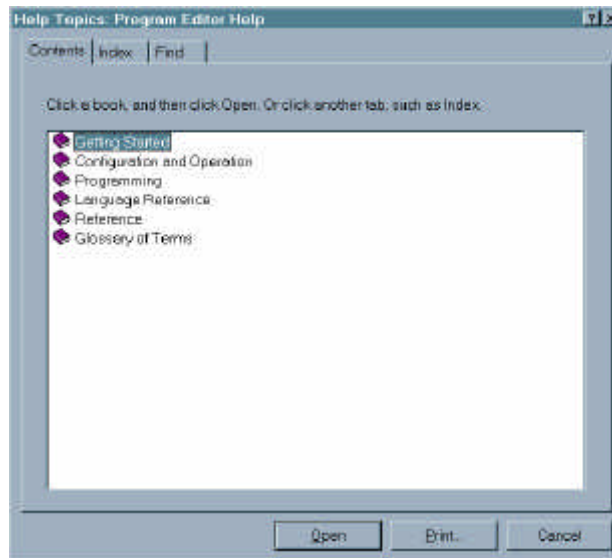
When using PC Control, your primary source of information will be the Online Help. The Online Help includes a demo to help you get started with the product and specific help topics describing the product's features and how to use them.

Online Help

Online Help is designed to give you quick, easy-to-access information about PC Control topics. Use Help to get general information about a product feature, to learn how to perform a specific procedure, or to find the definition of an unfamiliar term. The three ways to find information in Help are by viewing the Help contents, performing a Help search, or using context-sensitive help.


Help Contents

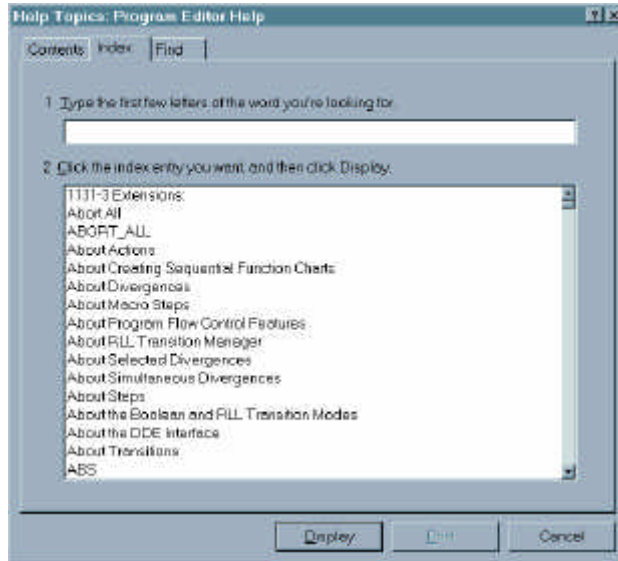
The Contents tab of Help shows the main topics covered in Help. To access the Help Contents, choose the Help menu and select Contents:



Double-clicking the topic name or the book icon beside it “opens” the book and displays the topics subheadings. To view the contents of one of the subheadings, double-click it.

Searching Help

The Index tab of Help allows you to type the topic you are looking for or scroll through an alphabetical list of topics. To access the Help Index, choose the Help menu and select Search for Help On (or click the Help Search toolbar button ):



To initiate a search, type the topic name in the field or scroll through the list. Double-click the selected topic to access help on that topic.

Context-Sensitive Help (F1)

Using context-sensitive help, you can quickly access specific information about the active window or dialog box by pressing the F1 button.

Chapter 2

Getting Started

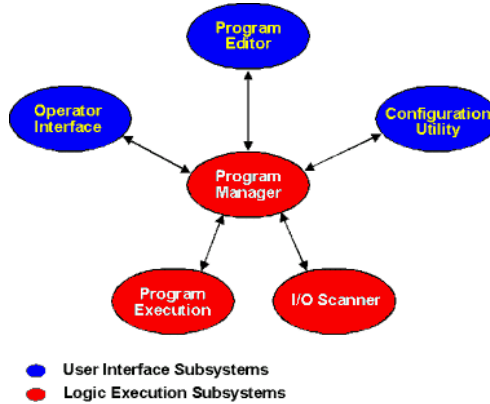
To get started using PC Control software, open the Program Editor utility. The Program Editor utility allows you to create a new project to hold the application program and configuration files, create application programs, and access the I/O Configuration utility.

This chapter provides the following information:

- Overview of the software subsystems comprising PC Control software
- Overview of IEC 1131
- How to change access level passwords
- How to create and manage projects from Program Editor
- How to create and manage application programs
- Overview of program operation

Section 1: Overview of the Software

The PC Control software consists of the following subsystems:



Software Subsystems

Configuration Utility The Configuration Utility allows you to define the I/O structure and assign tag names to I/O points and I/O ports.

Operator Interface (PC Control GUI) The Operator Interface utility allows you to customize and operate the operator interface environment. The operator interface is a series of screens, messages, or windows that are presented to the operator to control and monitor a machine or process.

Program Editor The Program Editor allows you to create and run Relay Ladder Logic (Ladder Diagram), Sequential Function Chart (SFC+), Structured Text, and Instruction List programs.

Program Manager The Program Manager prepares programs for execution and manages the external interface to Program Execution and the I/O Scanner.

Program Execution Program Execution executes the Relay Ladder Logic, Sequential Function Chart (SFC+), Structured Text, and Instruction List programs. Program Execution runs at Windows NT's REAL_TIME process priority.

I/O Scanner The I/O Scanner scans the physical I/O devices and makes the information available to Program Execution. The I/O Scanner runs at the REAL_TIME process priority. The I/O Scanner retrieves all inputs from and transmits all outputs to the physical I/O interface.

IEC 1131 Overview

IEC 1131-3 is an international standard from the International Electrotechnical Commission. IEC 1131-3 specifies the syntax and semantics of a unified suite of programming languages for programmable controllers.

IEC 1131-3 Programming Languages

The IEC-1131-3 languages consist of textual and graphical languages. These languages can be used together in an integrated programming environment. For information about PC Control software enhancements to the IEC 1131-3 standard, refer to the online help.

Textual Languages	
Instruction List (IL)	Instruction List format is similar to an assembly language.
Structured Text (ST)	Structured text is best suited for complex algorithms, string and file operations, and manipulation of data structures best done in a procedural (text based) language. It is convenient for those who have experience with structured BASIC, Pascal, C or other high-level programming languages.
Graphical Languages	
Ladder Diagram (Relay Ladder Logic — RLL)	Ladder diagram is commonly used on programmable controllers to construct discrete logic programs. Ladder diagrams are designed to resemble the electrical diagram for an equivalent electrical relay logic circuit. The ladder diagram contains two vertical power rails. The left power rail is assumed to be an electrical current source and is energized whenever the program is running. The power rail on the right is assumed to be an electrical current sink. The two power rails are connected by horizontal lines called rungs (like the rungs of a ladder) on which the logical instructions are placed.
Sequential Function Chart (SFC)	SFC is best suited for machine sequencing control and for control applications that have multiple operating modes, such as manual mode and automatic mode. An SFC represents an application program as a series of sequential steps. Steps are connected by links and control is passed between steps via transitions as the program executes. Control logic can be placed in the step or within an associated action attached to the step. The control logic executes when the step becomes active. Control passes to the next step when the transition is cleared.
Function Block Diagram	Function block diagram is best suited for analog signal processing and any control process or algorithm that runs on a continuous basis. Functions and function blocks appear in the FBD language as graphical blocks labeled with their function name and inputs and outputs. Function block diagrams consist of a network of these graphical functions and function blocks connected by signals. This language is currently not supported by PC Control.

Quick Start

Note

You must be logged on as administrator to install or upgrade PC Control software.

1. Install all PC hardware and I/O cards.
2. Start Windows NT operating system.
3. Install PC Control software and I/O drivers.
4. Use the Program Editor utility to create a new project to hold the application program and configuration files.
5. Use the Configuration utility to configure the system hardware, define I/O symbol names for the application programs. The Configuration Utility is run from the File menu of the Program Editor.
6. Use the Program Editor utility to construct the application program.
7. Use the Operator Interface's Screen Editor (located under the Tools menu) to construct the Human/Machine Interface screens.
8. Use the Operator Interface and Program Editor to test the application programs.
9. If desired, configure Windows NT to automatically start the CIMPLICITY® PC Control software and application programs on power up.

Running PC Control Software



For a control system that includes Operator Interface software:

In Program Manager, open the PC Control Applications group. Double click the Operator Interface icon.

Or, if the Program Editor is running, choose *Operator Interface* from the Program Editor *Tools* menu.

Note

If the PC Control runtime subsystems are not active, you are given the option of starting them.

Starting the PC Control Runtime Subsystems



1. From Program Manager, open the PC Control Applications group.
2. Double click the PC Control Runtime icon. When the Runtime subsystems are active the Runtime icon appears minimized at the bottom of the screen.

When the Runtime subsystems are active the Runtime icon appears on the Task Bar or Tray at the bottom of the screen.

If the Runtime icon appears on the Tray, the mouse must be used to shut down the Runtime Subsystems. If the Runtime application also appears on the Task Bar, it can be shut down using the keyboard. To make the Runtime icon appear in the Task Bar, access *System Options* from the Program Editor *Tools* menu and check the option in the *Display Properties* tab.

Shutting Down PC Control Runtime Subsystems

1. Right mouse click on the Runtime icon on the Task Bar.
2. Select Shutdown Runtime.

Starting the Program Editor



1. From Program Manager, open the PC Control Applications group.
2. Click the Program Editor icon.

PC Control Runtime Subsystems

The Program Manager, Program Execution and I/O Scanner, subsystems are visually represented by the PC Control Runtime icon. The Event Log has its own icon. The subsystems consist of the following:

The Program Manager

The Program Manager prepares programs for execution and manages the external interface to Program Execution and the I/O Scanner.

Program Execution

The Program Execution subsystems have real-time process priority, meaning CPU time is given to Program Execution before all normal applications, including: mouse updates and disk access.

I/O Scanner

I/O Scanner subsystems have real-time process priority, meaning CPU time is given to I/O Scanner before all normal applications, including: mouse updates and disk access.

When the I/O Scanner starts up, it searches for I/O cards. If no cards are detected in the PC backplane, a message box is displayed. Push the Simulate button to ignore the missing hardware and run the PC Control software in simulation mode. In simulation mode, the inputs and outputs are resident in a memory table, but the values are not read from or written to the I/O devices. User simulation software can write to the input memory map and read from the output memory map to simulate I/O in the environment.

From within the Operator Interface, you can activate the Program Editor by pushing the appropriate button or selecting the specific menu item from the Tools menu.

Event Log

The Event Log stores time stamped system events, messages and errors. The Event Log is started and stopped automatically by the run-time subsystems. The Event Log must be running for messages to the Output Window to function.

Note

To configure a system that is runtime only, copy an entire project folder from a development system (make sure both have the same path to the program and project files) to the runtime. The other way is to temporarily give the system a developer license, make the desired project active and then go back to a runtime license. The runtime only system cannot change projects.

Program Editor

The Program Editor lets you organize your work on a project by project basis. You can create and manage any number of projects from within the Program Editor.

At any one time only one project can be open. This is called the active project. Each project has an active configuration associated with that project. When a project is opened, the active configuration for that project is activated. When a new project is opened all programs are cancelled.

Access Levels

Access levels and access codes (passwords) are used to control access to application programs, operator interface screens, and configuration data. There are five access levels, with a different access code for each. The following table describes the privileges of each level. The lowest access level is 0; each successively higher access level has the privileges of the preceding levels.

Access Level	Privileges
0	Activate operator screens and use controls. Select and run SFC programs from the Operator Interface.
1	Open, view, run, and stop programs.
2	Edit SFC, structured text, and instruction list programs. Perform project management functions.
3	Edit RLL programs. Modify the operator interface. Modify system configuration files.
4	Change the passwords for access levels 1 to 4.

The default access code is 4567.

Note

If you have the Program Editor open, changing the access level within the Operator Interface does not change the access level of the Program Editor.

Entering an Access Code

Program Editor and Operator Interface require access codes. The Program Editor automatically presents the access level keypad upon startup.

To Enter an Access Code:

From:	Then:
Program Editor	Click the numbers on the keypad that represent your access code and click <i>OK</i> .
Operator Interface	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click <i>Access</i> from the menu bar and select <i>Password</i>. A keypad appears. 2. Click the numbers on the keypad that represent your access code and click <i>OK</i>.

To Set the Access Level to 0:

Click *Cancel* button on the access keypad.

Changing Access Levels

The access code for any level can be changed only from Operator Interface with a level 4 access code. There is one access code for each level.

To change the access level password:

1. Click *Access* from the menu bar and select Enter *Password*. A keypad appears.
2. Click '*' key four times. The message: "Enter Access Level to Change." Appears.
3. Click the number of the access level you want to change and click *OK*.
4. Click the new four digit number. The message: "Enter new password again".
5. Click the new four digit password again and click *OK*. If you verify the new password correctly the password will be changed.

Note

Click *CANCEL* on the keypad to set the access level to zero.





When attaching Control Functions to operator controls (in the operator interface edit mode) an access level can be specified to control the use of the each operator control.

Keyboard Shortcuts for the Operator Interface




Key(s)	Action
<ESCAPE>	Aborts most operations and dialog boxes.
<ENTER>	Edits the selected control.
<DELETE>	Deletes the selected control(s).
<CONTROL> or <SHIFT>	While selecting controls, adds the control to the selection group if the control is not selected or removes the control from the selection group if the control is already selected
any arrow key	Moves the selected control(s) one pixel in the specified direction.









Menu Descriptions

File Menu








Item	Button	Description
New Editor		Creates a new program file.
Open Editor		Opens an existing program file.
Close	-	Closes all the windows associated with the active program file.
Save		Saves the active program file.
Save As	-	Saves the active program under a different name.
Save All	-	Saves all open program files and related project information.
Print...		Prints a program.
Print XRef...	-	Prints program variables and where and how often they are used in the program. This option appears only when a program file is open.
Print Setup	-	Lets you to change the printer and printing options.
New Config	-	Opens the Configuration Utility with a new I/O configuration file.
Open Config	-	Opens an existing I/O configuration file in the Configuration Utility.
Save Config		Saves the active configuration.
Save Config As		Saves the active configuration with a new name or path.
Import CSV to Config		Imports a comma separated configuration file.
Export Config to CSV		Exports the active configuration to a comma separated file that can be accessed by a text editor or spreadsheet.
Recently Used File List	-	List of the last four files accessed by the Program Editor.
Exit	-	Closes the PC CONTROL software. If the unsaved programs are open, you are prompted to save them.

Edit Menu

Item	Button	Description
Undo		Undoes the last action.
Redo		Redoes the previously undone action.
Cut		Cuts the selected object and places it on the clipboard.

Item	Button	Description
Copy		Copies the selected object and places it on the clipboard.
Paste		Pastes the contents of the clipboard.
Delete	-	Deletes the selected object.
Select All		Selects all text in an ST or IL document.
Edit Element...	-	Opens the dialog box for the selected program element.
New Element	-	Insert an SFC or RLL element at the selected point in the program.
New Function Block	-	Inserts a function block element at the selected point in the program. Available only when an RLL program is open for edit.
New SFC Element	-	Inserts a new SFC element.
Step Properties	-	Edits an SFC step.
Insert ST Statement	-	Inserts a Structured Text statement.
Insert ST Function Calls	-	Inserts a Structured Text function or function block.
Insert IL Statement		Inserts an Instruction List statement.
Insert IL Function Calls	-	Inserts an Instruction List function or function block.
Find...		Finds the specified text.
Find Next		Finds the next occurrence of the specified text.
Find Prev.		Finds the previous occurrence of the specified text.
Replace...	-	Replaces the specified text with new text.
Go To...	-	Jumps to the specified rung number. Available only when an RLL program is open for edit.
Trace...		Searches for the next occurrence of an output coil with the same symbol name as a selected contact. Available only when an RLL program is open for edit.
Insert Mode		Inserts new elements before the selected point.
Append Mode		Appends new elements after the selected point.
Boolean Transitions	-	When editing an SFC, sets the default transition for all open SFC programs to the Boolean type, instead of the RLL type. Does not change existing Transitions. Available only when an SFC program is open for edit.
Lock Algorithms	-	When editing an SFC, lets you add password protection to Step algorithms. Available only when an SFC program is open for edit.

View Menu

Item	Button	Description
Toolbar	-	Displays editor commands as icons.
Status Bar	-	Displays the editor window status bar.
Contact/Coil Bar	-	When editing an RLL program, the Contact/Coil bar displays the program elements that can be used in the program. Available only when an RLL program is open for edit.
SFC Bar	-	When editing an SFC program, the SFC toolbar displays the program elements that can be used in the program. Available only when an SFC program is open for edit.
Function Block Palette	-	When editing an RLL program, the Function Block Palette displays the function blocks that can be used in the program. Available only when an RLL program is open for edit.
Application Icon Palette		When editing an SFC program, the Application Icon Palette displays the Icons that can be used in the program. Available only when an SFC program is open for edit.
Accessory Bar		Displays the Structured Text or Instruction List accessory bar that automatically inserts program statements.
Watch/Force Variables		At runtime, this window displays variables and their current values. You can specify (force) new values for them to help in debugging your program. Available only when a program is open for edit.
I/O Faults		Displays the I/O fault window.
Output Window	-	Displays message that occur at runtime appear in this window.
Program Status	-	Opens the Program Status window.
Show Parse Errors		Displays the parser error window.
Program Comments		Displays or hides any program comments that you enter into the program. Available only when a program is open for edit.
Scale to Fit Window		Resizes the program so that it fits into the currently displayed window. Available only when a program is open for edit.
RLL Warnings	-	Turns notification of RLL warnings on or off. Warnings occur during a program parse.
Disp. Symbol Location		Displays the rack/slot/point information for I/O symbols.
Toggle FB Details		Turns On/Off the display of symbol names and real time data in RLL function blocks. Available only when an RLL program is open for edit.
All Steps	-	When editing an SFC program, this option lets you specify that steps be displayed showing their names, descriptions, associated icons, or their program code. Available only when an SFC program is open for edit.
Show Symbol Enumerations		Turns on the symbol enumerations that have been selected in the System Options dialog box.

Project Menu

Item	Description
New	Creates a new project for storing related application programs and configurations.
Open	Opens an existing project.
Copy	Copies an existing project (including all application programs and configuration files) to a new name.
Rename	Renames an existing project. Has no effect on the application programs and configuration files in the project.
Activate Config.	Activates the current configuration file. The current configuration file is displayed on the status bar at the bottom of the screen.


Execute Menu

Item	Description
Parse	Compiles the program
Run	Compiles then executes the program.
Run with Debug	Executes the program until it reaches a Structured Text BREAK statement and then stops executing and put the program in a "Break" status. BREAK statements are ignored if a RUN command is given. Available only when an SFC program is open for edit.
Single Step	Executes one command at a time. Available only when an SFC program is open for edit.
Run with Restart	Marks the program to begin executing every time the runtime is started. A program that has been Aborted or is Faulted will no longer be marked to run with restart.
Stop	Stops executing program where it was stopped. When you restart the program, it begins executing at the point it left off. Available only when an SFC program is open for edit.
Abort	Stops executing program. When you restart the program, it starts executing at the beginning of the program.
Reset Estop and clear I/O Faults	Resets the I/O drivers and reestablishes communication with the I/O hardware.
Startup Runtime Subsystems	Startup the runtime subsystem programs.

Icon Menu

Item	Description
New App Icon	Accesses the Application Icon Step Library allowing you to create predefined Steps in the library.
Edit App Icon	Edits predefined Steps in the Application Icon library.
Delete App Icon	Deletes predefined Steps in the Application library.

Tools Menu

Item	Button	Description
Operator Interface	-	Starts the integrated Operator Interface
Symbol Manager		Accesses the Symbol Manager allowing you to create and edit variables.
Action Manager	-	Accesses the Action Manager allowing you to rename and delete SFC actions.
RLL Transition Manager	-	Accesses the Transition Manager allowing you to rename and delete SFC, RLL transitions
Export Symbols	-	Exports all Global Symbols to a *.SNF file. Available only with the CIMPLICITY HMI interface.
System Options	-	Opens a dialog box that allows you the change the Heap Size and the memory variable Data Table size, display, and symbol enumeration preferences.

License Menu



















Item	Description
Authorize	This option is used to create a software "License" for the PC CONTROL Software. Call or Fax your "Site Code" in to GE Fanuc Automation to receive a "Site Key" to authorize your software. This option is only activated when the software has been started in demo mode.
Upgrade Authorization	When you are ready to increase the functionality of PC CONTROL the Upgrade Authorization option can be used to generate a new "Site Code". This option is only enabled after the software has been authorized.
Register Transfer	Use this option to begin the process of transferring a software license from one computer to another. Place a blank floppy disk in a unauthorized computer and select "Register Transfer" to write a unique signature file for the computer. This option is only active when the software has been started in demo mode.

Item	Description
Transfer Out	Transfer Out is the second step in the process of transferring a software license from one computer to another. After completing the Register Transfer process on the unauthorized computer, place the floppy disk in the authorized computer and select the Transfer Out option. The software license will be removed from the computer and placed on the floppy disk. This software license can only be transferred to the computer that wrote the original signature file to the floppy. This option is only active on an authorized computer.
Transfer In	Transfer In is the last step in the process of transferring a software license from one computer to another. Place the floppy disk in the computer that has had the software license transferred. Select Transfer In to move the software license to the computer. A software license can only be transferred to the computer that wrote the original signature file to the floppy.
Temporary Authorization	<p>Temporary authorization permits you to temporarily provide full development authorization on a run-time only system. Each run-time only system comes with 30 minutes of free temporary authorization; additional time can be purchased. Valid for run-time only systems. To obtain the a free copy of the Temporary Authorization utility, call the phone number given in the Authorization dialog box.</p> <p>Selecting temporary authorization displays the <i>Temporary Authorization</i> buttons and the amount of temporary authorization time remaining:</p> <p><i>OK</i> - turns on temporary authorization and starts the temporary authorization timer (providing there is time remaining).</p> <p><i>Cancel</i> - returns to run-time only.</p> <p><i>Add More Minutes</i> - allows you to purchase additional temporary authorization time for this system. Call the phone number given in the Authorization dialog box and provide your code from the <i>Code</i> field. You will be given a key in return that must be entered in the <i>Key</i> field to add the additional temporary authorization time.</p>
Reset Original Authorization	Turns off temporary authorization and stops the temporary authorization timer. Valid for run-time only systems.
Emergency Authorization	Provides full authorization for all features for four days. After four days, PC CONTROL will return to demo mode. Once it has been selected, you are warned that this is a one-time authorization until the hard drive has been reformatted. If you select to continue, a signature is written to the hard drive.









Toolbars and Status Bar

Tool bars contain push buttons for commonly executed functions.













Standard Toolbar

Button	Tool
	New
	Open
	Save
	Undo
	Redo
	Cut
	Copy
	Paste
	Insert before
	Insert after
	Print
	About
	Context help
	Display Comments
	Scale to fit window
	Symbol Manager
	Watch window
	Boolean transition mode

RLL Toolbar

Button	Tool
	Select
	Contact
	Rung Label
	Coil Tool
	Jump Coil Tool
	Transition Coil Tool
	Branch Tool
	New Rung Tool

SFC Toolbar

Button	Tool
	Selector Tool
	Step
	Macro Step
	Action
	Transition
	Label
	Jump
	Loop
	Select diverge
	Simultaneous diverge
	Application icon
	Add Comment

Status Bar

The Status Bar is located at the bottom of the Program Editor window. The status bar shows the name of the current configuration and the status of:

- NUM lock
- SCROLL lock
- CAPS lock
- keyboard keys
- insert and append modes

Answers to Common Questions

Does PC Control Require a PLC?

- PC Control does not require a PLC device to do logic execution.
- PC Control performs logic execution in the PC without the need for a PLC.
- PC Control can use PC based scanner cards to control PLC style I/O racks, modules and other devices.

Does PC Control Perform Parity Checking?

PCs can be purchased and configured to provide parity checking on all system memory.

The PC Control does not do parity checking on application programs, but it does do background checksum calculations on all running application programs. If an error is detected, the application program is stopped, faulted and the operator is allowed to determine what should be done to recover.

What Happens on a Parity Error?

If a parity error is detected in the system, Windows NT will stop and display a error screen with a blue background indicating a Data Bus Error and the location where the error was detected. The system must be rebooted to continue.

The PC Control system makes use of Watchdog timers and the Safe State I/O features available on some I/O systems to detect loss of PC Control controller activity, and to place the Outputs into a predetermined safe condition.

For more information contact GE Fanuc Automation.

What Happens on Power Loss?

The PC and the I/O system will go to the power loss state. When power is reapplied, the I/O system will assume the state that it normally assumes or has been configured to assume when power and control is lost. When nonvolatile or battery backed memory is available in the system, a PC CONTROL application can restart the I/O and application programs from the point of interruption.

Can PC Control Software be Automatically Started?

Windows NT can be configured to start the PC Control software and the application program automatically upon boot up.

For more information on this topic, refer to “Configuring Programs to Execute Automatically” in Chapter 5

Can PC Control Software Work with an Uninterruptible Power Supply

Windows NT can be configured to work with an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) that can supply power to the system when the AC line is lost. Windows NT is notified with an interrupt when the AC line is lost and can be made to take appropriate actions in response.

PC CONTROL can also use power failure and low battery signals received from the UPS to perform user programmed actions. For more information, see “UPS Configuration” on page 2-30.

Section 2: Working with Projects and Applications

Managing Projects

Project management allows organization of work into logical divisions called projects. Each project contains a group of program, configuration, and operator interface files that are used for a common purpose.

The Program Editor is used to edit RLL, SFC, Structured Text, and Instruction List application control programs. All project management functions are performed from the Program Editor. The following notes pertain to projects:

- The Program Editor can have only one project open at a time.
- The project name should identify the common purpose of the files.
- The active project is displayed on the Program Editor window title bar.

Creating a New Project

1. Start Program Editor.
2. Click *Project* on the menu bar and select *New*. The New Project dialog box appears.
3. Type the name of the new project and click *OK*.

Note

If there was an active project open, it is closed and the new project becomes the active project.

Opening a Project

1. Start Program Editor.
2. Click *Project* on the menu bar and select *Open*. The Open Project dialog box appears.
3. Click the project you want to open and click *OK*.

When a project is opened it becomes the active project. The previously active project is closed along with any open program files. When a project is opened all program files that were previously open in the project are opened again and the configuration file that was last active in that project is activated.

Copying a Project

1. Start Program Editor.
2. Click *Project* on the menu bar and select *Copy*. The Copy Project From dialog box appears.
3. Click the project you want to copy and click *OK*. The Copy Project To dialog box appears.
4. Type the name of the copy and click *OK*.

When a project is copied, all of the program, operator interface and configuration files in that project are copied into the new project and the new project becomes the active project. Program files which were previously open in the source project are copied to the new project and opened. The configuration file which was active in the source project is copied to the new project and activated.

Renaming a Project

1. Start Program Editor.
2. Click *Project* on the menu bar and select *Rename*. The Rename Project From dialog box appears.
3. Click the project you want to rename and click *OK*. The Rename Project To dialog box appears.
4. Type the new name of the project and click *OK*.

After a project is renamed it becomes the active project.

Activating a Configuration

1. Select *Activate* from the *Project* menu. The Select Global Configuration File dialog box appears. It displays a list of configuration files defined for the current project.
2. Select the configuration you want to activate and click *OK*.

Working With Application Programs

Program management lets you create and save Relay Ladder Logic (RLL), Sequential Function Chart (SFC), Structured Text (ST), and Instruction List (IL) programs. You can open many programs at the same time. Use the Window menu to switch between open programs or use the mouse to click on a partially visible program and bring that program's window to the top. The active programs are displayed on the Program Editor title bar.

Creating a New Program

To create a new program in a new window:

1. Click *File* and select *New* or click the new program button on the editor tool bar.



A dialog box is displayed that allows you to specify a new Relay Ladder Logic (RLL) program, Sequential Function Chart (SFC), Structured Text Document, or Instruction List Document.

2. Select the type of program you want to create and click *OK*. A new editor window of the appropriate type opens. The program is given a default name (*RLL1*, for example).

Opening a Program

To open an existing program in a new window:

Click *File* and select *Open* or the open program button on the editor tool bar.



You can open many programs at the same time. Use the Window menu to switch between open programs or use the mouse to click on a partially visible program and bring that program's window to the top. If no project is active when a file open command is executed, the new project or the open project dialog box will be displayed.

Saving a File

To save the active program to its current name and directory:

Click *File* and select *Save* or the Save Program button on the editor tool bar.



When you save a program for the first time, the Program Editor displays the Save As dialog box so you can name your program. If you want to change the name or directory of the active program before you save it, use the *Save As* file command.

To save the file with a new name

Click *File* and select *Save As*. The *Program Editor* displays the Save As dialog box so you can change the name of the program.

Printing a Program

To print an SFC, RLL, ST, or IL program:

Click *File* and select *Print* or the Print Program button on the editor tool bar.



To change the printer setup, click *File* and select *Print Setup* menu command or, from the print dialog box, push the *Setup* button.

When printing a SFC program, the SFC diagram will be printed first. Actions embedded in the SFC are printed alphabetically following the SFC diagram and any embedded Relay Ladder Logic Transitions will be printed alphabetically following the embedded Actions.

Printing Program Cross-References

This lists symbol usage for a program. It lists all symbols in a configuration, the number of times they are used in the program, and their location in the program. For example, the rung number and contact or coil type for an RLL program.

To print program cross-references

- Select *Print Xref* from the *File* menu.

Managing Application Programs

Program management allows you to create and save Relay Ladder Logic (RLL) and Sequential Function Chart (SFC) programs. You can open many programs at the same time. The active program is displayed on the Program Editor title bar.

To access other open programs in Program Editor:

1. Click *Window* on the menu bar.
2. Click the program you want to view.

Note

You can also use the mouse to click on a partially visible program and bring that to the front.

Commands that are executed from the menus or by pushing buttons on the tool bars are performed on the active program.

Closing Application Programs

To close a program:

Click *File* on the menu bar and select *Close*.

or

Click the *Close* button at the upper-right corner of the window.

Viewing Programs

When a program is opened the contents of the program are displayed in a window. You can open many windows of the same RLL, SFC, IL, or ST program.

To access other open programs in Program Editor

- Select the program from the list under the *Window* menu.
- Use the mouse to click on a partially visible program and bring it to the front

Sizing a Program to Fit the Window

Click *View* on the menu bar and select *Scale to Fit Window*.

or

Toggle the view by clicking the Scale to Fit Window button on the tool bar.



Scale to fit window can also be used to scale action or transition RLL programs embedded in a SFC program.

To navigate using the Scale To Fit Window

1. Scale the program to fit the window.
2. Select the desired element.
3. Remove the window scaling. The view will scroll the selected element to the center of the screen if it is not in the last active unscaled view.

Turning Comments On and Off

Descriptive comments can be added to application programs to document functions of the program. The View Comments mode affects all open programs.

To toggle the View Comments mode:

Click *View* on the menu bar and select *Program Comments*.

or

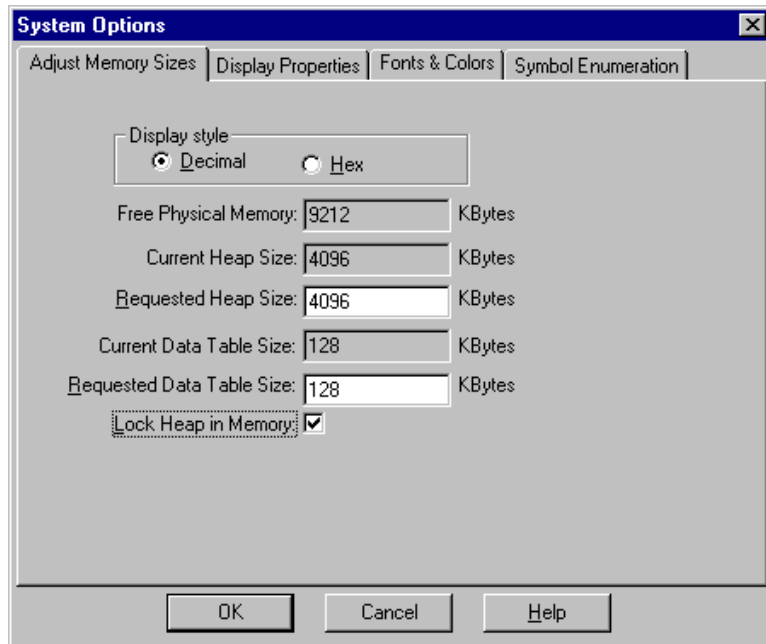
Use the View Comments button on the Tool bar to toggle the View Comments mode.

Note

A check mark next to Program Elements and a depressed View Comments button indicates that comments are visible.

Setting System Options

You can use the System Options dialog box to set parameters that affect the behavior and appearance of the control system.



Adjust Memory Sizes Tab

Field	Description
Display Style	Displays memory size options in Decimal or Hex.
Free Physical Memory	The current free physical memory available on the computer. This cannot be edited, but depends on the type and number of open Windows applications.
Current Heap Size	This shows the current Heap setting and cannot be edited. The Heap is memory allocated (on start-up) for the control system. The Heap is used up by open application programs and symbols. As it is used up, this setting may need to be increased. However, the larger the Heap size, the less memory will be available for other Windows applications
Requested Heap Size	If the Heap needs to be increased (or can be decreased), provide a new Heap size here. The Heap can be larger than physical memory, as it will use virtual memory from the swap file. If you run out of control system memory during an editing session, you will get a message suggesting to increase the Heap Size.

Field	Description
Current Data Table Size	This is memory used for symbols and depends on the symbol data type. For example, large arrays use more data table memory. If you run out of data table memory during an editing session, you will get a message suggesting to increase the data table size.
Requested Data Table Size	If necessary, provide a new data table size.
Lock Heap in Memory	If this field is set, it will improve the determinism of the control system. When the control system is started, it will attempt to lock the Heap into physical RAM; otherwise, it can use virtual memory. You are not given an indication of whether locking the Heap in memory was successful or not; therefore, it is best to start the control system run-time system before any other application to allow as much physical memory for the Heap as possible.

Display Properties Tab

Field	Description
Runtime Tray Icon	If set, displays the Runtime icon in the tray; otherwise, it is also displayed in the task bar. If it is displayed in the task bar, you can access it using keyboard operations; however, if it is displayed in the tray, it is necessary to use the mouse to access it.
Number of Decimal Places	This controls the number of decimal places displayed in the function block details in an RLL program. The more decimal places displayed, the more space is used.
Number of FB Symbol Characters	This controls the length of space for displaying characters in the function block details in an RLL program (not necessarily the actual number of characters). A standard character size of an upper case <i>X</i> is assumed. If characters take up less space (e.g., lower case <i>I</i>), then more characters will appear.
Editor Display Update Time	This controls how often the Program Editor is updated; for example, the values in the Watch Window.
Show IEC Style Locations	If set, displays I/O points in IEC 1131-3 syntax rather than by symbol name.

Fonts & Colors Tab

Field	Description
Fonts	Sets the fonts in the program editors.
Colors	Sets various editor colors.
Reset to Default Colors	Restores all colors to their defaults.

Symbol Enumeration Tab

Enumerations refer to the elements of a complex symbol. That is, a symbol that has elements that can be individually accessed: structures, function blocks, etc. The following check boxes work with the *Show Symbol Enumerations* command on the editor *View* menu. If the associated check box is set and *Show Symbol Enumerations* is enabled, then the respective enumerations are visible in symbol lists. If the check box is reset or *Show Symbol Enumeration* is disabled, the enumerations are not visible in symbol lists.

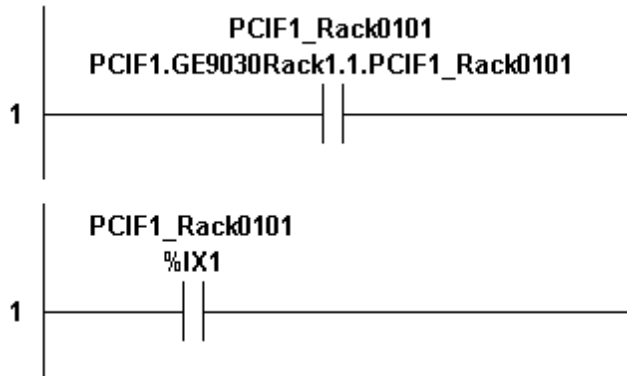
Showing symbol enumerations (depending on the number of symbols) can affect performance as you are using the editors, since more symbols will need to be loaded into the symbol lists.

Note: Even with enumerations off, if you drag a symbol from the Symbol Manager and drop it, a list box appears with that symbol's enumerations from which you can select the enumeration you want to use.

Field	Description
Show Function Block Enumerations	Shows the function block instance inputs and outputs.
Show User Type Enumerations	Shows elements within an instance of a user type.
Show Axis Enumerations	Shows axis element symbols.
Show Axis Group Enumerations	Shows axis group element symbols.
Show System Object Enumerations	Shows the variables associated with instances of timers (TMR), PIDs, and PRGCBs.

IEC Style Locations

The following figure shows an example of normal and IEC 1131-3 style locations for I/O points. (*Display Symbol Locations* must be enabled.) If a symbol is memory mapped variable, **Memory** appears for the symbol location.



The IEC 1131-3 symbol location syntax is as follows:

%	Directly represented variable
I	Input point
Q	Output point
X	BOOL
B	BYTE
W	WORD
D	DWORD


UPS Configuration

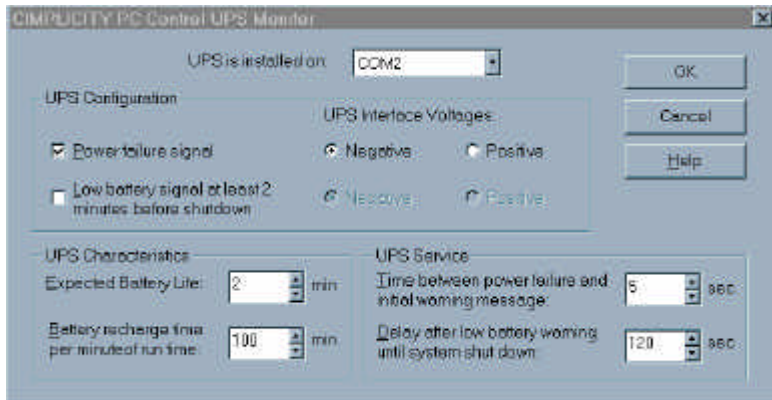
The control system can work in conjunction with a UPS. The control system can receive signals from the UPS in order to prepare an orderly shutdown. The signals appear in the Symbol Manager as:

- RT_POWER_FAIL Power failure detected.
- RT_LOW_BATTERY Low battery detected.

To use the UPS

- Locate the *PC Control Applications* menu from the Windows *Start* menu and choose *UPS Monitor*.

The UPS Monitor icon  appears in the tray. Configure the UPS by double-clicking on the icon. The *PC Control UPS Monitor* dialog box appears.



Item	Description
UPS is installed on:	Select the serial port to which the UPS is connected.
UPS Configuration	Refer to your UPS documentation to fill in these fields.
Power failure signal	Check this option if the UPS provides a power failure signal.
UPS Interface Voltage	If checked, select whether it is a negative or positive voltage.
Low battery signal	Check this option if the UPS provides a low battery signal. If
UPS Interface Voltage	checked, select whether it is a negative or positive voltage.
UPS Characteristics	If the UPS does not provide a low battery signal, you can enter UPS characteristics by referring to the UPS documentation.
UPS Service	You can set these preferences as needed for your system.

To Shut Down the UPS

- Right-click the UPS Monitor icon and choose *Shutdown Memory UPS*.

Backing Up and Restoring Variables

The UPS monitor sets the variable (RT_POWER_FAIL or RT_LOW_BATTERY) when the respective event occurs. You can write application logic to save values to a file on the hard disk and then read those values in on start-up to restore values.

Sample Logic for saving variables:

```
IF RT_LOW_BATTERY THEN

    savedata.int1:= ImportantValue;

    (* repeat for all information to be saved *)

    OPENFILE(FCBVar, FILE:= "Backup.dat");
    WRITEFILE(FCBVar, IN:= savedata );
    CLOSEFILE(FCBVar);

END_IF;
```

Section 3: *Program Operation Overview*

Activate Configuration

Activating a configuration causes the following actions:

- Initializes global memory.
- If outputs are configured disabled, enables interface, sets outputs to disabled state (force won't work) and starts scanning.
- If outputs are configured enabled, sets default state and starts scanning.

First Scan with Active Configuration

The following occurs on the first scan:

- Local and function block variables are initialized.
- RT_FIRST_SCAN set high for first scan of first running program.
- Logic is solved.
- I/O is updated and the sequence repeats.

Power-down Sequence

The following occurs on the last scan :

- The program does not receive any advance notification of an impending shutdown and cannot take any specific action.
- Interface modules set disable state of I/O according to individual design.

Normal Operation

The following occurs during normal operation:

- All actions associated within a step are solved once each scan a step is active (depends on the action qualifier).
- Actions are solved before the structured text within a step is solved.
- If a transition associated with a step becomes TRUE, the I/O is updated again after which all the appropriate actions (not pulsed, inactive delayed, or limited (inactive)) are solved by turning off all output coils except latched coils. Function blocks are not solved. The I/O is updated and then the next active steps are solved the following scan.
- If structured text is used within a step, then the transition is not evaluated until all structured text statements have been completed.
- All structured text statements within a FOR loop are executed one iteration per scan unless a NOWAIT statement is encountered which causes the loop to complete all iterations in a single scan.
- All structured text statements in a step are executed once during the first scan the step is active and are not repeated during subsequent scans.
- All statements within a WHILE loop will continue to be executed until the WHILE condition becomes FALSE.
- The normal execution sequence is: update I/O, solve logic, then repeat.

File Names

The following list describes the file types by extension that are located in the project folder:

_gprog.bbn	Binary global configuration file.
_gprog.st	Structured text version of the global configuration.
CFG	Configuration file
CSV	Comma separated variable file
DAT	Environmental parameters for program files
IL	Extension for Instruction List programs
OPI	Operator interface files.
R**	Extension for RLL programs.
S**	Extension for SFC programs
SBN	Binary file executed by the runtime engine.
SFR	Stores redo information.
SFU	Stores undo information.
SFX	Stores information for canceling online edits.
SNF	Shared name file
SST	Structured text version of the SFC program.
ST	Extension for Structured Text programs
SWC	Stores names of symbols added to the watch window.

Note

Files with RLL, OPI, SFC, CFG, ST, IL extensions constitute the source for programs. Only these files need to be copied to transfer an application.

Chapter 3

Configuring I/O

Once a project has been created, the next step is usually to create a System Configuration for the project. The System Configuration contains a collection of hardware specific information and global variables that are used across all the control programs in a given project.

Ideally before configuring your system's I/O, you will install the I/O interface board(s) and the I/O. But you can configure your system before installing the hardware by clicking the Simulate button at the board level dialog box for the I/O interface board(s) you are using.

For information on installing and configuring interface boards, refer to the following appendices:

I/O System	Board	Cat. No.	Appendix
Genius	PCIM	IC660ELB921 (one port) IC660ELB922 (two ports)	Appendix A
Series 90-30	PCIF1	IC693PIF301	Appendix B
Series 90-30	PCIF2	IC693PIF400	Appendix C

This chapter provides the following information:

- Overview of System I/O Configuration
- Configuring Genius I/O
- Configuring Series 90-30 I/O
- Configuring Other Field Buses
- Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)
- Import/Export Configuration

Section 1: Overview

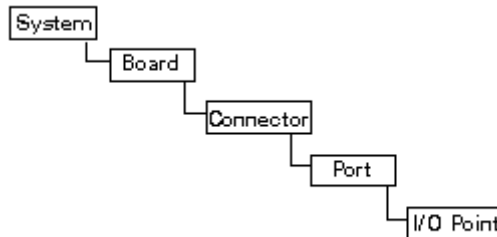
The System Configuration dialog box contains a collection of the hardware specific information and global variables that are used across all the control programs in a given project.

The configuration tells the software what interface cards are in the computer and what I/O are attached to those cards. Using the configuration editor, you can assign symbol names to I/O points. You can also enter comments regarding the function of particular elements.

The configuration editor takes you step by step through the configuration process. You start by naming the system (the computer) you are working on and defining the program scan time. The PC slots follow this on the system and the control system cards (not the basic computer cards) in each slot, and then to each I/O module connected to the card, and finally the I/O points.

If a card is a communications card or I/O scanner, the configuration goes even deeper to describe remote racks, slots, boards etc.

The following figure shows the configuration levels for simple onboard I/O:



Help With Hardware Conflicts

There are several settings that must be properly configured to communicate with most interface cards. The most common are: the data port address, the memory base address, and the interrupt. For the interface card to work properly the jumper setting on the card must match the setting in the Define Board dialog box **AND** not conflict with other hardware in the PC.

IMPORTANT:

The best way to figure out what resources your current hardware devices are taking up is to look in the NT Diagnostics in the Administrative Tools Program Group. The Resources tab will display most of the hardware resources that are in use on your system. Be aware that some devices that are in use may not report this usage to the NT diagnostics, and devices that are not currently in use will not be reported, but **WILL** still cause conflicts. The NT diagnostics are just a good place to start.

For more information on avoiding conflicts, refer to:

I/O System	Board	Cat. No.	Appendix
Genius	PCIM	IC660ELB921 (one port) IC660ELB922 (two ports)	Appendix A
Series 90-30	PCIF1	IC693PIF301	Appendix B
Series 90-30	PCIF2	IC693PIF400	Appendix C

Data I/O Port

The data I/O port is often used by the device driver to communicate with the card.

Some port addresses are standard across most PCs. The following list identifies common port uses:

COM1: 3F8-3FF

COM2: 2F8-2FF

COM3: 3E8-3EF

COM4: 2E8-2EF

LPT1: 378-37A

Floppy: 3F0-3F7

Video: 3B0-3BB and 3C0-3DF

Memory Address

The memory address is used to set-up a shared memory area for the interface card. Normally memory from C8000-DFFFF will be available. This area memory is normally used by special-function cards, such as an interface card. For example: if the card uses 4000 (hex) bytes of shared memory and starts at D0000, it will use D0000-D3FFF.

Interrupt – IRQ

The interrupt is used to communicate with the card. Valid interrupt values are between 0 and 11.

Some interrupt levels are standard across most PCs and should not be used. Here is a list of common uses:

COM1 and COM3: IRQ4

COM2 and COM4: IRQ3

Floppy: IRQ6

LPT1: IRQ7

IRQ1 and 2 are always in use by the system hardware.

Working with Configuration Files

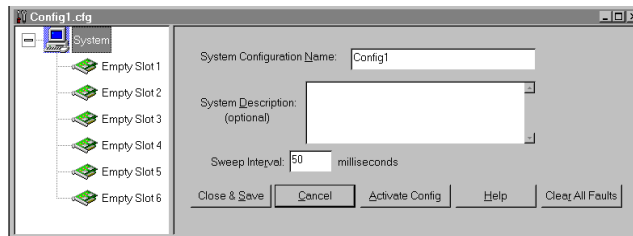
Elements of a Configuration

A configuration allows you to define the I/O structure and assign tag names to I/O points and I/O ports. All configurations have a *.cfg file name.

All configuration operations are performed from the Program Editor.

Creating a New Configuration

1. Start the Program Editor.
2. Click *File* and select *New Config*. The configuration dialog box appears.



Editing an Existing Configuration File

1. Start the Program Editor.
2. Click *File* and select *Open Config*. The configuration dialog box appears.
3. Edit the fields as desired and click *Close* and *Save*.

Activating a Configuration File

Click *Project* and select *Activate Config* to activate a new configuration file for the active project. The name of the active configuration file is displayed on the lower status bar of the Program Editor.

The active file is used by the runtime environment to determine the structure of the I/O systems and global symbol naming. The active configuration file is also used by the Program Editor to make system level Input, Output and Memory symbols available to you while creating programs.

When a new configuration file is activated, active programs may be aborted if information from the previously active configuration does not exist in the new configuration. The activation of a configuration file is recorded in the active project.

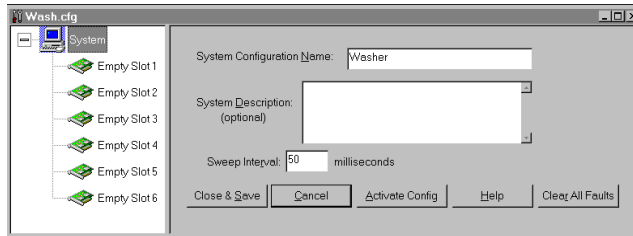
Whenever that project is opened, the active configuration file for that project will be activated.

Navigating Within the Configuration Utility

About the System Configuration Dialog Box

Using the System Configuration dialog box, you can provide a system name to the configuration. The file name must be a valid DOS type eight character name. No spaces are allowed. The system name in the example shown below is “Washer”.

Configuration files are stored by default in the current project directory.



I/O Scan Rate

You configure the I/O scan interval in the System Configuration dialog box. The I/O Scan specifies the intervals at which control programs update the I/O and execute program logic. Lower priority Windows tasks are interrupted by the I/O scan. Each I/O scan active control programs begin execution and run until completion.

Before program logic is solved, the I/O Scanner reads inputs. After the control logic is executed, outputs are written. The executing time of control logic is variable, since the numbers and type of instructions active in any I/O scan interval is variable. Once the outputs are updated, the control task is suspended and other lower priority NT tasks resume execution.

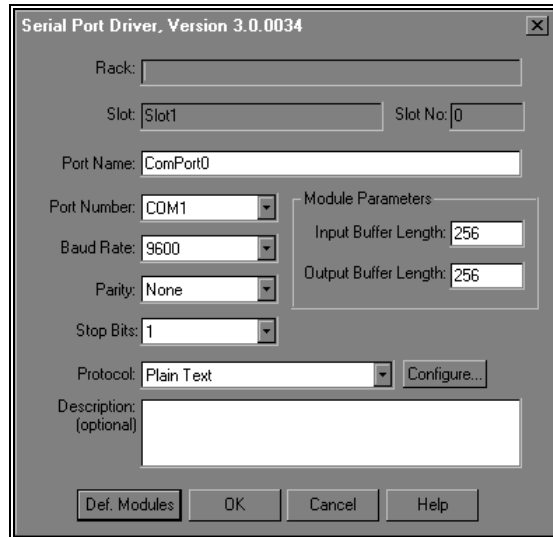
When defining a scan rate, consider:

- Minimum input pulse width - the minimum time an input must maintain a state to be recognized by the software.
- Minimum throughput - the minimum time for the control system to produce a change in state of an output in response to a change in state of an input.
- Maximum throughput - The maximum time for the control system to produce a change in state of an output in response to a change in state of an input.

Using the Define Board Dialog Box

Each type of I/O board has a slightly different dialog box for configuring I/O points. For more specific information about configuring I/O points, see the help file for the driver you are using.

1. From the configuration dialog box, click Define Board.



2. Set the board attributes as appropriate and click *OK*.

Section 2: *Configuring GENIUS I/O*

The PC Interface Module (PCIM)

A PCIM (PC Interface Module) Board is used to establish a connection between a PC and a Genius I/O System. There are two types of PCIM Boards: Single and Dual Port. Each port on a PCIM Board is used to communicate on a given Genius I/O bus. Each Genius I/O bus can support up to 30 I/O Blocks.

The PCIM Board Definition Dialog is used to define the configuration of the PCIM Board's hardware and the I/O Blocks on the connected Genius I/O bus(es).

Configuring the PCIM

1. If you have not configured the PCIM using the PCIM Configuration Utility (PCU), click the Run PCIM Configuration Utility button. This starts up a separate utility allowing you to enter a number of configuration parameters for the PCIM. The Online Help in this utility provides instructions on how to install and configure the PCIM.
2. Once you have configured the PCIM and exited the PCU, click the Read PCIM Params From Registry button. This opens a window containing a list of configured PCIM boards.
3. Select the appropriate PCIM from the Model No list.
4. To test the PCIM configuration, click the Test PCIM Configuration button. Both lights on the PCIM should turn ON.

PCIM Board Definition Dialog Box

Name

The Name field is used to specify the 'name' of the PCIM Board in the configuration. The Name is used to describe the Board in the I/O Point locations in the rest of the software.

Model No

There are two valid models, Single and Dual Port. The Single Port Board only supports one Genius I/O bus while the Dual Port model will support two buses. The PCIM Board Definition Dialog will only let you define the I/O and hardware

configuration for Port 1 on a Single Port Board. Ports 1 and 2 can be configured for the Dual Port Board. No I/O can be defined for the NULL Board type.

Board OK Bit

If a name is entered in this field, a BOOL with that name will be created. This BOOL will be TRUE when no modules are faulted. If any modules are faulted, this BOOL will become FALSE.

Cfg Mismatch

If a name is entered in this field, a BOOL with that name will be created. This BOOL will be TRUE if the modules actually attached to the bus do not match the blocks set up in the configuration.

Description

The Description is a free format text description for the Board. This is an optional field in the configuration.

Disable outputs when no programs are running

If this box is checked, all outputs will be 0 when there are no programs running.

Port 1/Port 2

Simulate Check Box

The Simulate Check Box will cause the port I/O to be disabled. The fault and configuration information will be ignored. This feature is useful if the I/O for the port is not being used. Any faults which are generated by the Genius I/O Blocks will cause the I/O Scanner to ESTOP the active programs if the I/O is not simulated.

Network Number

You must select an arbitrary network number between 1 and 9. The network number is used to link the desired physical I/O bus to the logical port defined through this Dialog.

Caution

**The PCIM I/O driver cannot support more than 9 I/O buses.
Each network number in a configuration MUST be unique.**

Interrupt Number

The PCIM I/O Driver uses the interrupt specified in this field to handle fault reporting and configuration change notification for the I/O scanner. The value specified here must match the value specified for the board.

Shared RAM Address

The shared RAM Address field specifies the location of the 16K buffer used to communicate with the specified port on the PCIM Board. Only legal values are presented for selection. Each location must be unique in a configuration, two ports cannot share the same RAM buffer.

The entire Shared RAM Address Space must not be used by any other device on the PC. Conflicts can occur which prevent the PCIM Board from working correctly. The value specified here must match the value specified by the DIP switch settings on the Single Port Board or in the Configuration Program for the Dual Port Board.

Note

The shared RAM address is set in the PCIM Configuration utility (PCU), and is displayed here. Any changes to the Shared RAM Address should be made in the PCU.

I/O Port Address

This field specifies the starting location of the four bytes used to configure and control the port. The second two bytes are the bytes which are specified by the DIP switches on the Dual port board (e.g. a value of 0x222 would be mapped to 0x220).

The I/O Port Address must match the value specified by the DIP switches for the Single Port Board and be 2 less than the value specified by the DIP switches in the Dual Port Board.

PCIM Bus Address

This field specifies the serial bus address for this port.

Test Port Configuration Button

The Test Port Configuration Button is used to validate the values specified in the Interrupt Number, Shared RAM Address, and I/O Port Address fields by trying to start the PCIM board. The board must be present for this operation to have any meaning.

Auto Configure Network Devices

The Auto Configure Network Device button causes the PCIM Driver to scan the Genius I/O bus for all of the devices which are on-line. The devices are automatically entered into the configuration.

Setup Global Data Button

This button allows you to setup global data for the port. Opens the Global Data Setup dialog box.

Define PCIM I/O Button

The Define PCIM I/O Button opens the Genius Bus Address Definitions dialog box, which is used to specify the devices on the Genius I/O bus.

OK Button

The OK Button will save any changes and terminate the entire edit session for the configuration. You will be returned to the main menu of the configuration utility.

Cancel Button

The Cancel Button will abort any changes and terminate the ENTIRE edit session for the configuration. You will be returned to the main menu of the configuration utility.

Global Data Setup Dialog Box

On the Genius Bus, each device can send up to 128 bytes of data each scan, and can receive 128 bytes of data from each other device on the bus. In this dialog box, check the Enable Global Data box next to each device you wish to receive global data from. If the PCIM will be sending global data to other devices, check Enable Global Data for the device matching the PCIM's bus address.

Setup Global Data

Press this button to set up I/O tags to be associated with the global data for this bus address. The Global Data: Device dialog box for the selected device will appear.

Global Data: Device

This dialog box allows tag names to be assigned to the global data that can be sent and received through the PCIM. Each word within the 128-byte global data area can be assigned its own tag, and each bit within each word can be assigned a tag. The current tag names for the first 16 words are displayed on the screen. To edit the names for the rest of the words, use the Next 16 Words and Previous 16 Words buttons. Beside each tag name is a check box. To assign tag names to individual bits within the words, check the Name Bits box by the word whose bits must be named, and then press the Edit Bit Names button. The Global Data: Device, Word dialog box will appear.

Global Data: Device, Word

This dialog box allows you to assign tag names to individual bits within the selected word.

Genius Bus Address Definitions

The Genius Bus Address Definition dialog box is used to enter and edit the I/O Blocks defined on a Genius I/O bus. Each I/O Block is defined in a address location on the Genius I/O bus. The legal addresses range from 0 to 31. The defined blocks are listed in the view scroll region.

Using the Genius Bus Address Definitions Dialog Box

Enable Device Configuration Table for this port

Enables the device configuration table.

Enable Datagrams for this port

Enables datagrams for this port. For more information, refer to “Sending Datagrams with the PCIM Driver.”

Bus

Displays the bus ID.

Block Type

This field displays the defined I/O Block type. (The default Block type for Bus ID 31 is PCIM and cannot be changed.)

Block Name

This field displays the name for the given I/O Block.

Select I/O Device

This button opens the Block Information dialog box which allows you to change the type of I/O Block at the address currently selected. To remove an I/O Block from the bus, select the block, press this button, and select NULL as the new block type.

Define Ports Button

The Define Block Button causes the Dialog Box associated with the currently selected I/O Block to be displayed. This Dialog Box will let you edit the I/O Points for the specified I/O Block. Double-clicking on a block has the same effect as selecting the block and pressing this button.

Back to Board Button

The Back to Board returns you to the PCIM Board Definition Dialog.

OK Button

Saves your changes and terminates the entire edit session for the configuration. You will be returned to the main menu of the configuration utility.

Cancel Button

Displays the Confirm Abort dialog box. If you answer yes, the edit session will be ended and your configuration changes will not be saved.

Discrete Point Information

The Discrete Point Information Dialog is used to define the I/O Points associated with the Genius I/O Block.

Status Bit Name

If a name is entered in this field a BOOL by this name will be created. If the block is healthy, this BOOL will be TRUE. If the block is faulted, the BOOL will be FALSE.

Whole Block Input/Whole Block Output

One or both of these fields may appear. If a name is entered in this field, a variable of the appropriate size and type to cover the entire block will be created. For example, if the block is a 16-bit Discrete input, an input WORD will be created. In the case of modules with configurable point directions, only the bits that correspond to input points should be read from the Whole Block Input symbol, and only bits corresponding to output points should be written to in the Whole Block Output.

Bit

Display of the bit numbers in the I/O Block. The values go from 1 to 16. You cannot edit these values, they are for reference only.

Name

The Name field contains the user defined name for the I/O Point. The name must comply with IEC-1131 standard naming conventions. The name must start with a letter and may contain alphanumeric characters and underscores. There can be no blanks in the I/O Point name. Note that the names are case sensitive.

Direction Button

Clicking on the Direction Button will cause the button to toggle between 'Input' and 'Output' if the block type allows point direction to be configured

Back to Bus Button

Clicking on the Back to Bus Button will cause the edit changes to be saved. You will be returned to the Genius Bus Address Definition Dialog.

Analog Point Information

The Analog Point Information Dialog is used to define the I/O Points associated with the Genius I/O Block.

Status Bit Name

If a name is entered in this field a BOOL by this name will be created. If the block is healthy, this BOOL will be TRUE. If the block is faulted, the BOOL will be FALSE.

Name

The Name field contains the user defined name for the I/O Point. The name **MUST** comply with IEC-1131 standard naming conventions. The name must start with a letter and may contain alphanumeric characters and underscores. There can be no blanks in the I/O Point name. Note that the names are case sensitive.

Direction Button

This button is for informational purposes only. The direction of analog points is fixed by the type of I/O block.

Back to Bus Button

Clicking on the Back to Bus Button will cause the edit changes to be saved. You will be returned to the Genius Bus Address Definition Dialog.

Sending Datagrams with the PCIM Driver

In the Bus Address Definition Dialog, there is a checkbox that says Enable Datagrams for this port.

If this box is checked, 11 symbols will be created in the .cfg file. They will have a prefix of:

<Your Board Name>_Network<your network number>_

These symbols correspond to the command block on the μ Geni board of the PCIM board as described in Chapter 10 of the *μ Geni Board User's Manual*, GFK-0845. The only commands that should be issued in this way are Transmit Datagram and Transmit Datagram with Reply.

All fields should be filled in before DGramStatus is set to 1. After this, the DGramStatus variable will behave as described in the *μ Geni Board User's Manual*. For information on datagram data formats, see the *Genius I/O System and Communications User's Manual*, GEK-908486-1.

Symbol	Description
DGramStatus	Status
DGramCmdType	Command Type (02=Transmit Datagram, 03=Transmit with Reply)
DGramDestAddr	Destination Bus Address
DGramFunc	Function Code
DGramSubFunc	SubFunction Code
DgramHdrByte5	See explanation below.
DgramHdrByte6	See explanation below.
DgramHdrByte7	See explanation below.
DgramHdrByte8	See explanation below.
DGramData	Array of BYTE (Outgoing data)
DGramReplyData	Array of BYTE (Reply data)

When issuing a Transmit Datagram command, HdrByte5 is the Priority and HdrByte6 is the Length.

When issuing a Transmit Datagram with Reply command, HdrByte5 is the reply datagram subfunction code, HdrByte6 is the Priority, HdrByte7 is the Transmit Data Buffer Length, and HdrByte8 is the Reply Data Buffer Length (set by the μ Geni Board).

Section 3: Configuring Series 90-30 I/O

PC Control software supports the following Series 90-30 I/O boards.

Designation in PC Control	Catalog Number	Installation Details
PCIF1	IC693PIF301	Appendix B
PCIF2	IC693PIF400	Appendix C

The PC Interface (PCIF)

A PCIF (PC Interface) Board is used to establish a connection between a PC and a Series 90-30 I/O System. The PCIF Board Definition Dialog is used to define the configuration of the PCIF Board's hardware and Series 90-30 I/O.

Using the PCIF Board Dialog

Board Name

Enter a name for this card. You may leave the default name or enter a different one. This name is displayed in the symbol manager to help identify the location of the I/O points.

Port Address and Board Number

Use these spinners to enter the base I/O address and board number of your PCIF card in the PC. The base address must match the settings of the DIP switches on the card. Each PCIF must have a unique board number starting with 0. See Appendix B (PCIF1) or Appendix C (PCIF2), or click the Help button next to the Base Address field for information on installing the PCIF and selecting an appropriate base I/O address.

Simulate Check Box

Check this button to run application programs without accessing the I/O system. This is useful for testing and development when the PCIF card or I/O racks are not available.

Disable Outputs When No Programs are Running

Check this box to clear all outputs when no programs are running. This can be an important safety feature. Clear this box if you wish to leave outputs active after programs complete or if you want to be able to force outputs on with no programs running.

Abort Program Upon Error

If this box is checked, any faults will be reported on the screen, and the status bits will still be set correctly, but any programs that are running will continue to run. If this box is not checked, programs will be aborted if a fault occurs.

Cfg Mismatch Bit Name

If a name is entered in this field, a BOOL will be created. This BOOL will be set to TRUE if the configuration does not match the actual hardware.

Status Bit Name

If a name is entered in this field, a BOOL will be created. This BOOL will be TRUE if all of the modules attached to this board appear to be healthy, and will become FALSE if any module is faulted.

Description: (optional)

This space is provided for an optional description of the I/O card.

Racks

These buttons open up dialogs for configuring I/O modules on each rack. PCIF1 supports four racks; PCIF2 supports seven racks. The buttons are grayed until each rack is defined.

Define 90-30 Racks

This button opens a dialog box for defining the I/O racks attached to the PCIF card.

Auto Configure

This button activates the Auto Configuration feature. If the I/O racks and modules are in place and powered up, and if the Runtime subsystem is not active, you can use this feature. When you click the Auto Configure button, the software activates the PCIF card and reads in information about attached racks and modules.

Set and Test Board

This button communicates with the PCIF card to verify the installation is correct. (The Runtime subsystem must not be active.) A Board Test dialog box containing the message “PCIF2 Board found, shared RAM access successfully found” should appear. If this message does not appear, you should try configuring a different block of shared RAM.

The Rack Definition Dialog

The Rack Definition dialog box permits manual configuration of the rack attached to the PCIF card. Simply enter a rack name and select the type of rack.

The module buttons bring up the module definition dialogs for the associated rack.

The Module Dialog

Module Name

Enter a descriptive name for this module. This name is displayed in the symbol manager to aid in locating a particular I/O symbol.

Module Position

This is the physical slot number in the rack. Use the Next Module and Prev. Module buttons to move between modules on the same rack.

Module ID Code

Enter the module ID Code for the module in this particular slot. Press the Lookup button to display the modules model number in the description field.

Ports Button

This button opens a dialog for defining the individual ports on this module.

Defining Digital Port Connections

Enter symbol names for each I/O bit used. Use the Next Conn and Prev Conn buttons to move between groups of I/O on this module.

The box at the top of the dialog identifies the direction of I/O either Input or Output.

Module Health Bit

If a name is entered in this field, a BOOL will be created. This BOOL will be TRUE when the module is healthy, and will become FALSE if the module is faulted.

Defining Analog Port Connections

Enter descriptive names for each analog port listed. Each name must be unique to the entire global symbol database.

Module Health Bit

If a name is entered in this field, a BOOL will be created. This BOOL will be TRUE when the module is healthy, and will become FALSE if the module is faulted.

Section 4: *Configuring Other Field Busses*

PC Control supports connections to widely used field bus types. This section describes how to configure parameters for connection to DeviceNet and Profibus.

Configuring DeviceNet I/O

The DeviceNet driver allows you to communicate with up to 63 nodes on a DeviceNet network. The driver has an open configuration interface that supports all ODVA approved devices. There are a wide variety of I/O devices available to meet your control needs.

The DeviceNet driver uses the S-S Technologies 5136-DN scanner board. This card performs the scanning of the I/O devices on the network.

Capabilities

DeviceNet supports up to 64 nodes. With one MAC ID reserved for the 5136-DN board, 63 nodes are available for application use. The driver supports both the Polled I/O and Bit Strobed I/O connections. Explicit messaging is not supported. 125, 250, and 500 Kbaud network speeds are supported.

The driver configures the 5136-DN scanner card to operate as a DeviceNet Master. A DeviceNet Master "owns" the Slaves whose MAC ID's appear in its scan list. Except for the duplicate MAC ID check, a Slave cannot initiate any communication before being told by the Master to do so. The 5136-DN is setup as an I/O scanner, servicing all of the enabled devices in the driver configuration.

Installing and Configuring Devices on the DeviceNet Network

Refer to the operator's manual for each device for details on how to install the unit on the DeviceNet network. Be sure to set each device's MAC ID correctly to avoid addressing conflicts. Many simple devices are DIP switch configurable. However, more sophisticated devices are configured online via the network. Such devices require a DeviceNet management utility to be properly configured. GE Fanuc recommends that you use an ODVA approved software package to configure your device. Contact your DeviceNet distributor for a list of network management software vendors.

There are a variety of dialog boxes used to configure your DeviceNet network. This section summarizes the dialog boxes and their function. Refer to your online help for detailed information about each dialog box.

Dialog Box:	Description
Board Dialog Box	The board dialog box allows you to configure the 5136-DN scanner board for your DeviceNet network.
Fault Detection Dialog Box	The Fault Detection dialog box allows you to choose the network and device errors to fault on:
Edit DeviceNet Nodes Dialog Box	The Edit DeviceNet Nodes Dialog box allows you to select and edit each of the devices on the network.
Device Edit Dialog Box	The Device Edit Dialog box allows you to edit a DeviceNet device at the specified MAC ID:
I/O Stream Editor Dialog Box	The I/O Stream Editor Dialog allows you to define the exact format of the input or output stream for the selected device. It also allows you to attach symbolic information to each stream component:
Stream Component Edit Dialog Box	The Stream Component Edit Dialog allows you to assign a symbolic name for the selected stream component and define its type.
Global Variables	When certain symbol names are defined in the DeviceNet configuration, the driver will automatically provide a set of global variables that will report status and error information. If a board name is provided, the driver will create a set of global variables that provide status and error information on the CAN bus. If a device symbol name is defined, then the driver will provide a variable that reports the status of the device.
CAN Bus Global Variables	If a board name is provided in the Board Dialog, the driver will automatically create a set of global variables that provide status and error information on the CAN bus. Symbolic information is appended to the end of the board name to create each global variable. Deleting the board name in the dialog disables the creation of these variables.
Device Status Global Variables	If a device name is defined in the Symbol Name field of the Device Edit Dialog, then the driver will automatically create a device status variable. Symbolic information is appended to the end of the device name to create the global variable. Deleting the Symbol Name in the Device Edit Dialog disables the creation of this variable.

Configuring Profibus I/O

PC Control communicates with a Profibus fieldbus network using a Hilscher CIF30/CIF104, CIF30_FMS, or CIF30_PB card.

Configuration of the Profibus driver is a two-step process. First, it needs to be configured in the SyconDP Configuration software, which is Synergetic Microsystem's creation. Second, all the configuration information needs to be completed in PC Control in a similar fashion. The process to configure a Profibus network in the SyconDP software is described in greater detail below:

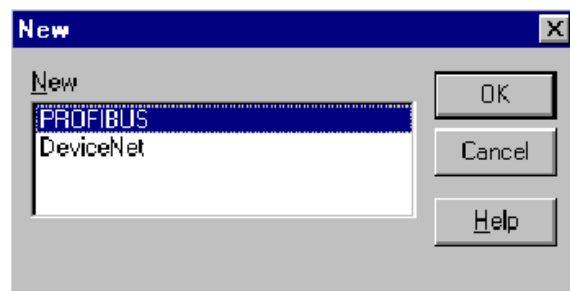
Before beginning, make sure that the .GSD files that will be used have been installed in the appropriate directory:

Program Files\Hilscher GmbH\SyCon\Fieldbus\Profibus\GSD

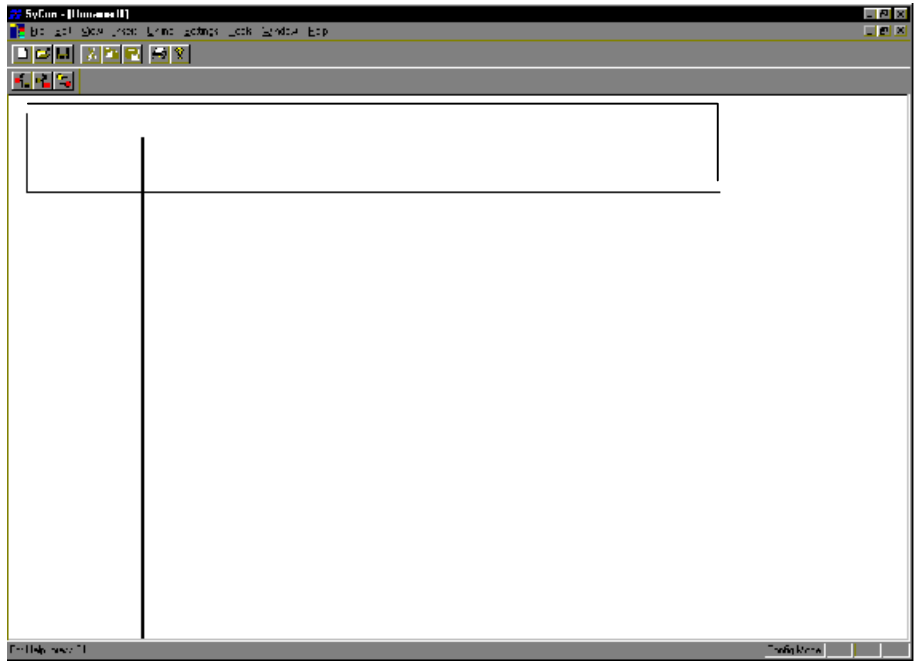
The files needed are:

gef_0534.gsd	Hil_7506.gsd
Hil_7501.gsd	Hil_7507.gsd
Hil_7502.gsd	Hms_1002.gsd
Hil_7503.gsd	UN_COMBI.gsd
Hil_7504.gsd	UN_DP.gsd
Hil_7505.gsd	VMXM0534.gsd

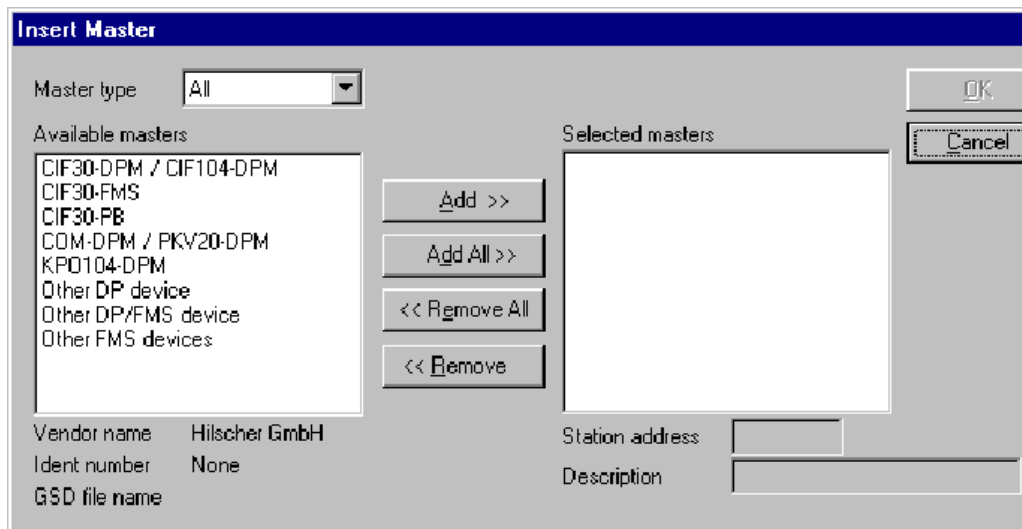
1. Start the SyCon SYstem CONfigurator software and create a new file. The New dialog box will appear.



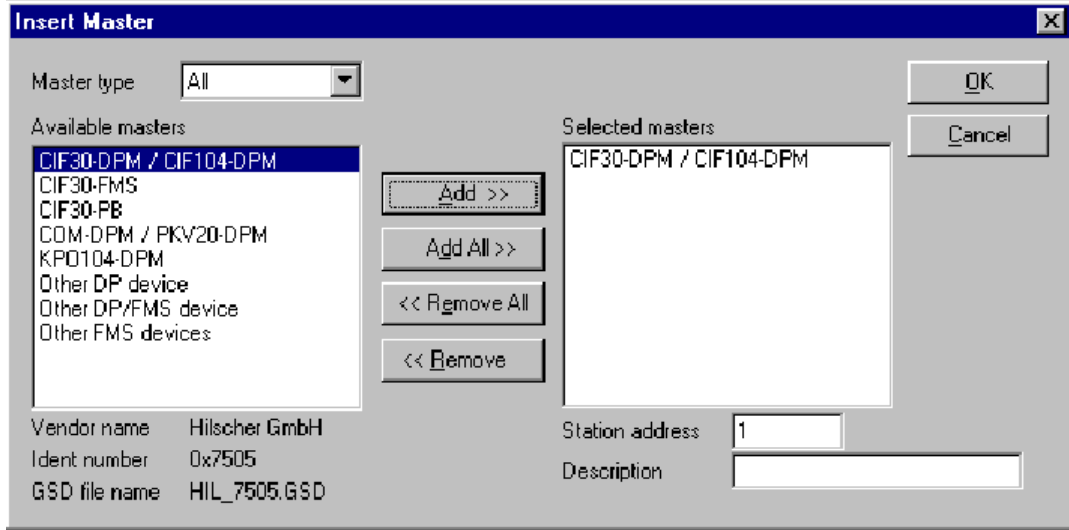
- Highlight the PROFIBUS selection and press OK. The main network screen will appear.



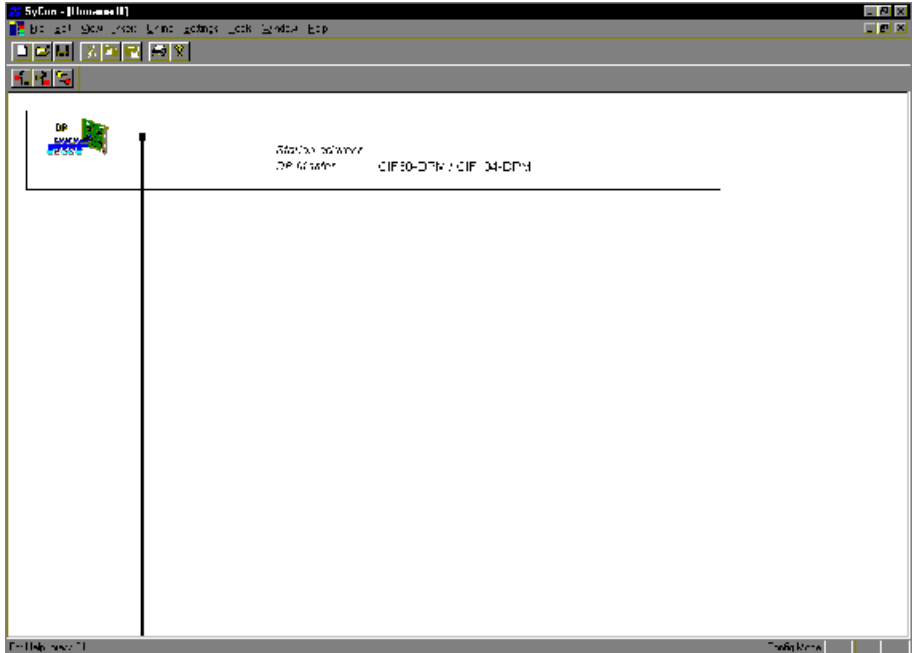
- Select the leftmost toolbar button to Insert Master or choose Insert, then Master from the pull down menu. Position the cursor over the rectangular box and click the left mouse button. The Insert Master dialog box will appear.



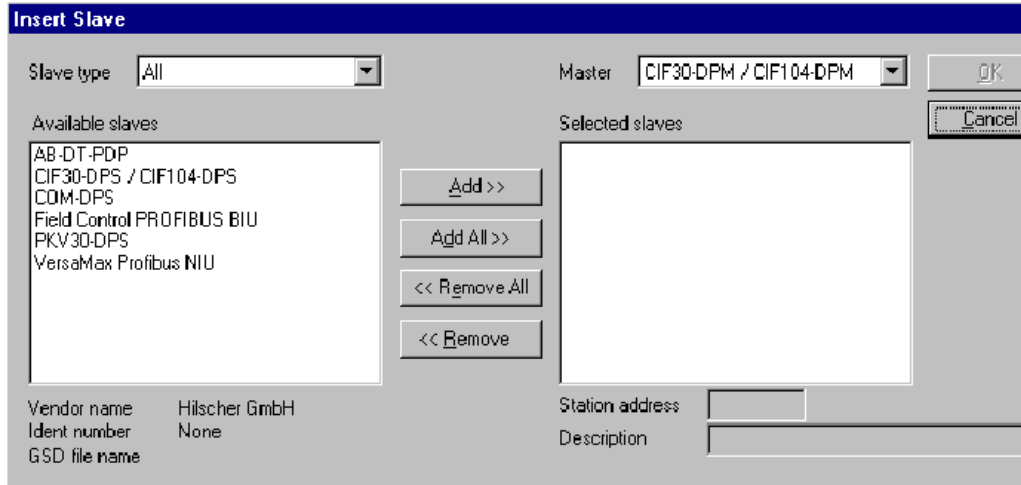
4. Select your master card and click the Add button, then click OK.



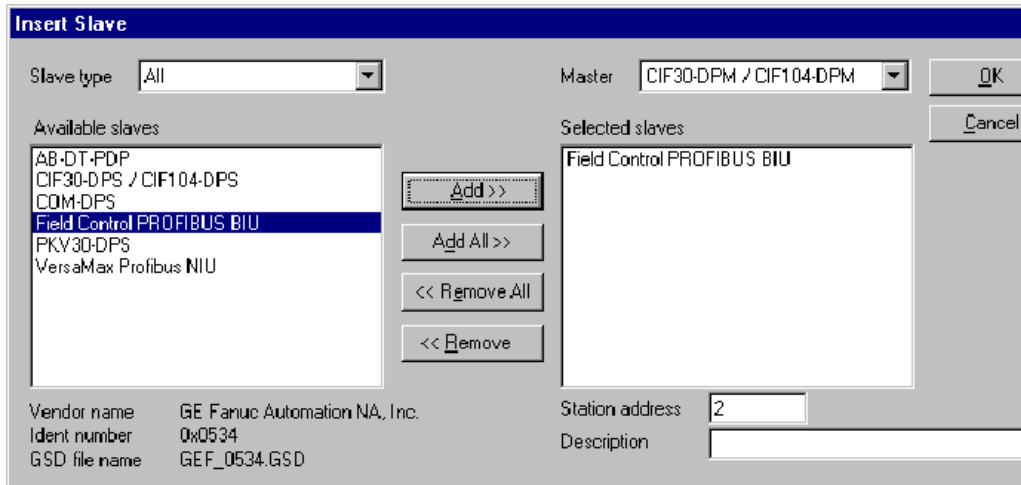
You should now see the following network screen with the Master card you selected displayed.



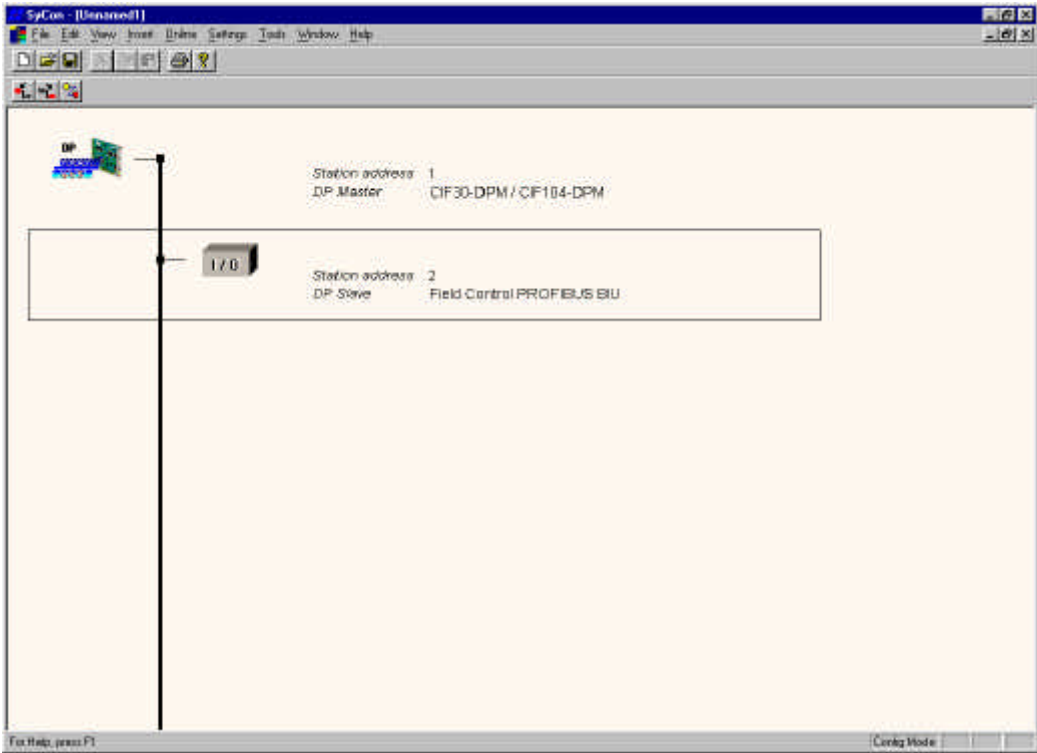
- Select the toolbar button to Insert Slave or choose Insert, then Slave from the pull down menu. Position the cursor below the rectangular box and click the left mouse button. You should now see the following screen with available slaves for all the GSD files that you placed in the \Profibus directory.



- Select the appropriate slave device and press the Add button. The address for the device on Profibus will be automatically incremented to the next available address. You can now edit the address to match the address of the actual slave.



After selecting OK, you should see the following network screen. Repeat this step for every slave device you have in your system.



7. You can now edit the configuration of your slave device(s). Double click the device that you want to edit and a dialog box similar to the following should appear. The data in your dialog box should match the GSD file for the slave you selected.

Slave Configuration

General

Device: Field Control PROFIBUS BIU Station address: 2

Description:

Activate device in actual configuration

Enable watchdog control GSD file: GEF_0534.GSD

Max. length of in-/output data: 260 Byte Length of in-/output data: 0 Byte

Max. length of input data: 130 Byte Length of input data: 0 Byte

Max. length of output data: 130 Byte Length of output data: 0 Byte

Max. number of modules: 17 Number of modules: 0

Module	Inputs	Outputs	In/Out	Identifier
IC670PBI001 Profibus BIU Slot0			1 Word	0x70
IC670MDL643,5/12VDC,In,16pt	1 Word			0x50
IC670MDL640,24VDC,In,16pt	1 Word			0x50
IC670MDL644,24VDC,Fast In,16pt	1 Word			0x50
IC670MDL641,48VDC,In,16pt	1 Word			0x50
IC670MDL240,115VAC,In,16pt	1 Word			0x50
IC670MDL642,125VDC,In,16pt	1 Word			0x50
IC670MDL241,240VAC,In,16pt	1 Word			0x50

Idx	Module	Type	I Addr.	Type	O Addr.

Assigned master
Station address 1
1 / CIF30-DPM / CIF104-DI

Actual slave
Station address 2
2 / Field Control PROFIBUS

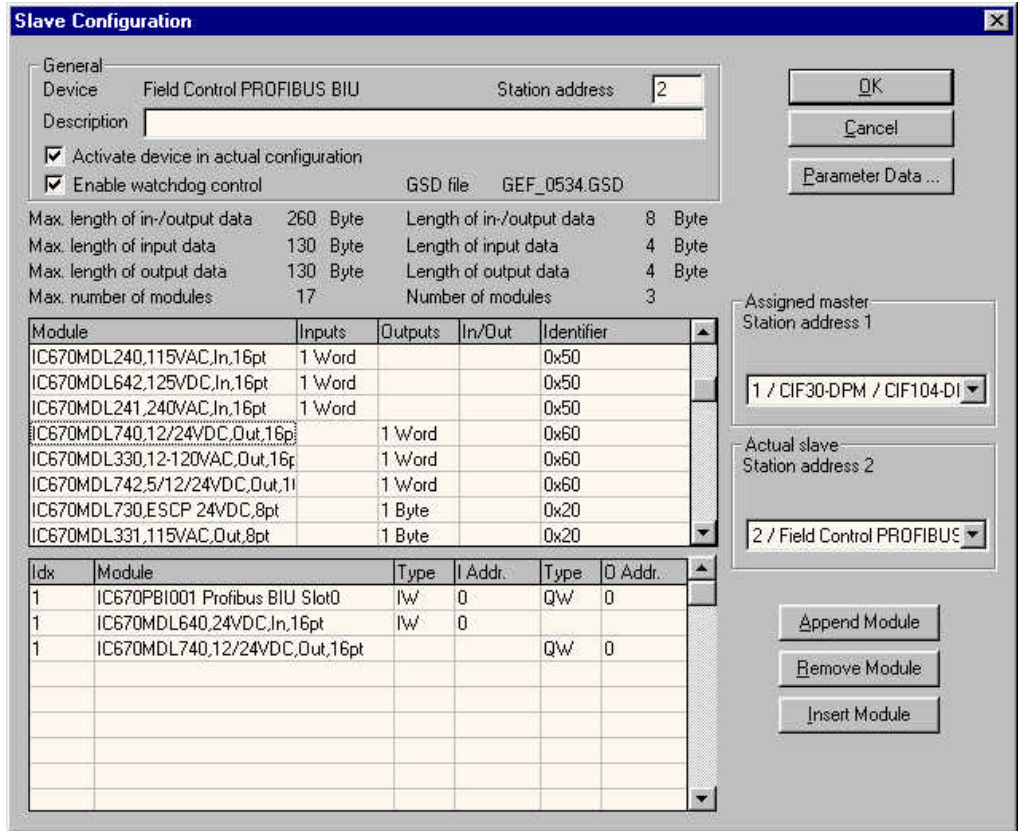
Buttons: OK, Cancel, Parameter Data ..., Append Module, Remove Module, Insert Module

In this example, the slave device is a modular Field Control BIU and the individual I/O modules need to be added to set the amount of I/O data that will be exchanged with the Master. In the case of Field Control, you must select the Profibus BIU Slot0 configuration first. Then select the individual I/O modules in slot order.

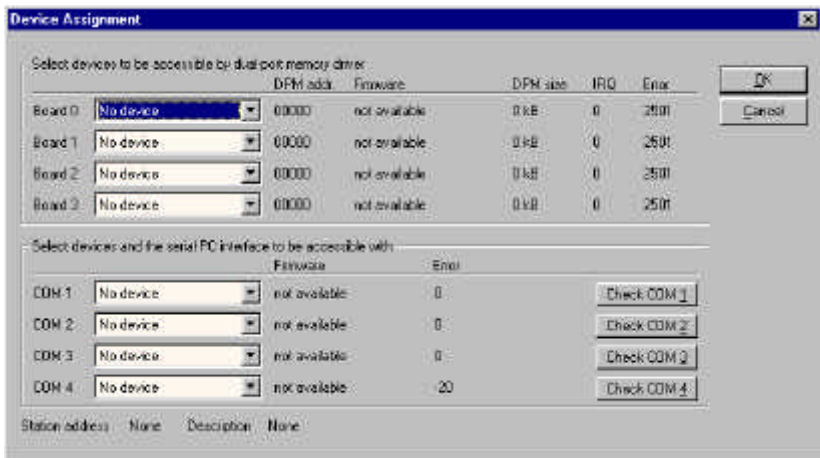
Note

For intelligent modules you will see two entries for each module. If you are using the auto configuration feature of Field Control, you will need to select the Status/Control configuration before selecting the I/O portion of the configuration.

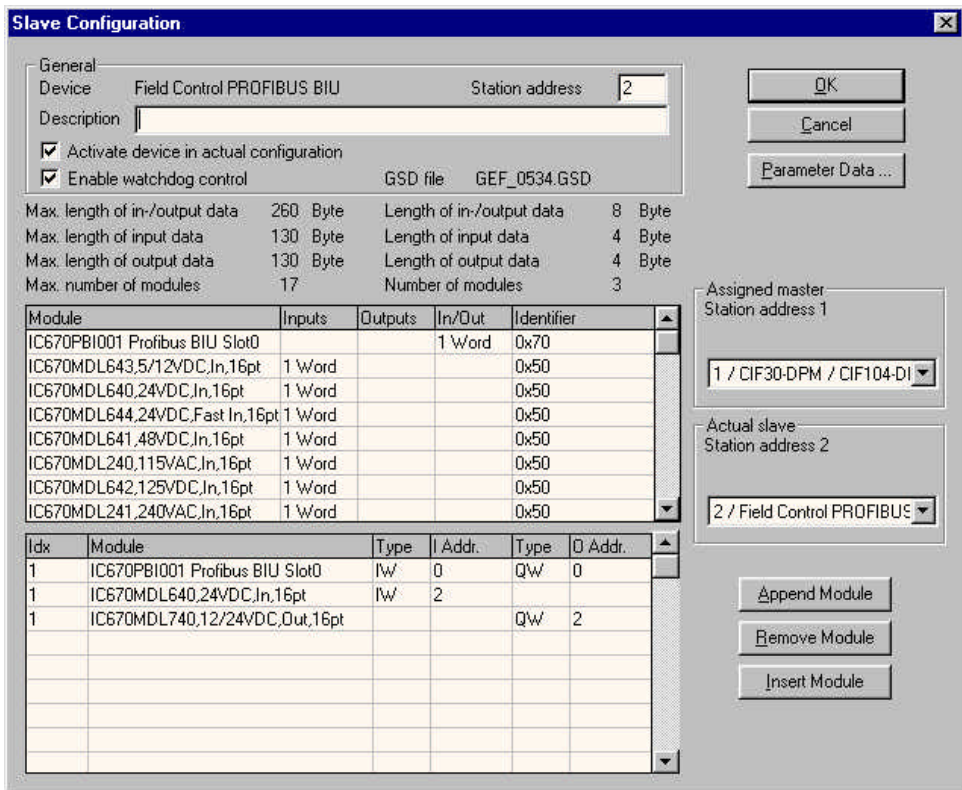
You should now see a dialog box similar to the following.



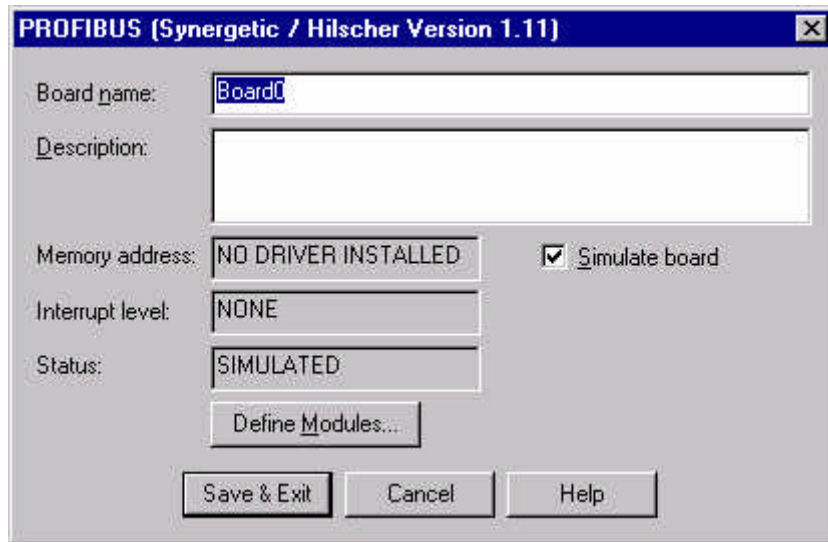
8. Press the OK button to return to the main network screen.
9. To download the generated configuration to the master card, select Download from the Online menu. The Device Assignment dialog box will appear. Select the Board 0 pull down list and choose the CIF30-DPM module. To start the download, click OK.



- After the download has completed, you should view the Slave Configuration for each slave module and record the I Addr and Q Addr for each of the I/O modules. In the screen below these addresses are 2. You will need this information will when building the configuration under PC Control.



11. Start the PC Control application, Program Editor.
12. Generate a new configuration. (Select New Config from the File pull down menu.)
13. In the first empty slot, configure a Profibus-DP (Hilscher CIF30-DPM) module.
14. To configure the I/O for the network that is connected to this card, click the Define Board button. The following dialog box will appear.



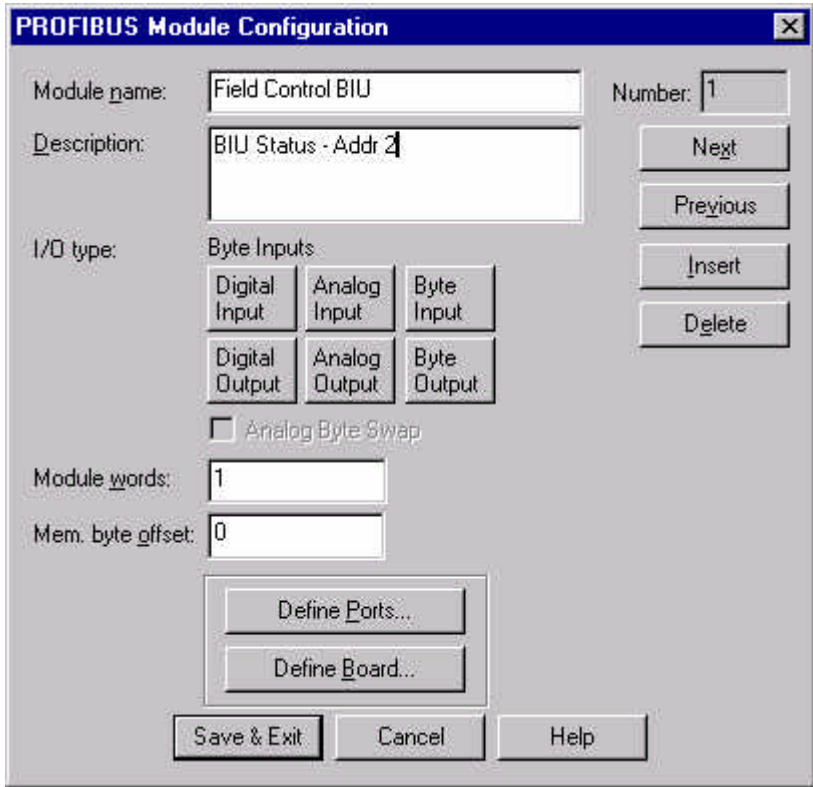
You can give the board a meaningful name at this point or leave the default as displayed.

15. To define the actual mapping of the network I/O data to PC Control variables, select the Define Modules button. The PROFIBUS Module Configuration dialog box will be displayed.

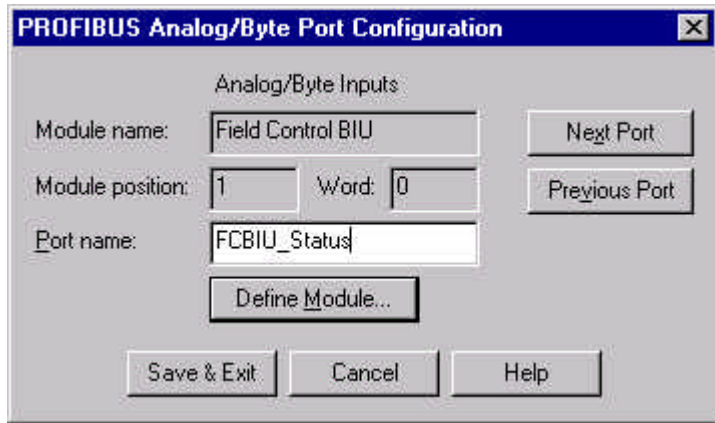
You must create a module configuration for each piece of I/O received or sent to/from the Master. First define a name and description for each piece of data. Then define the type of data, the length, and the offset into the Master cards memory. (This is the offset that you recorded earlier.) Below are sample screens for a Field Control BIU with one 16 point input and one 16 point output module.

Note

The Field Control BIU status/control and discrete modules with 16 points are defined to be Byte Input or Byte Output with Module words equal to 1.



- 16. You must also define a unique Port name for each piece of data being defined. After defining the Module configuration, press the Define Port button. You can give the port any name that you want at this point or use the defaults. Because you will use this name to reference the data in your program, choosing a name with a logical meaning is helpful. The screen for defining the port for the BIU status word is shown below:



Note

For modules with multiple words of data, you will need to define a port definition for each piece. An example of this is an 8 channel analog module. There would be 8 port definitions defined. You can move through the various ports by pressing the Next Port button.

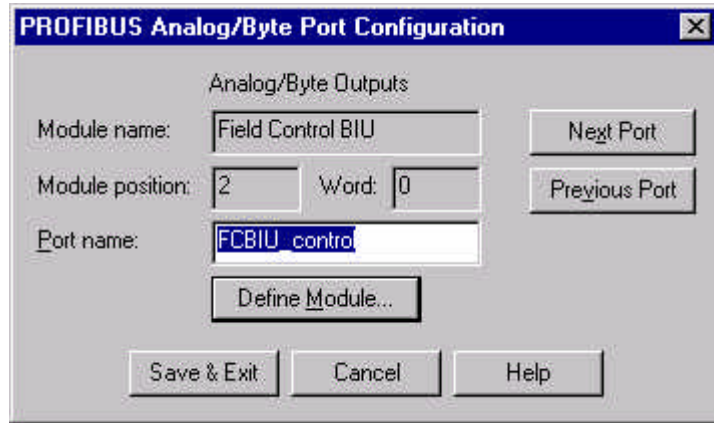
Below are sample module and port configuration screens for the rest of the BIU and module data.

Module Configuration for BIU Control Word

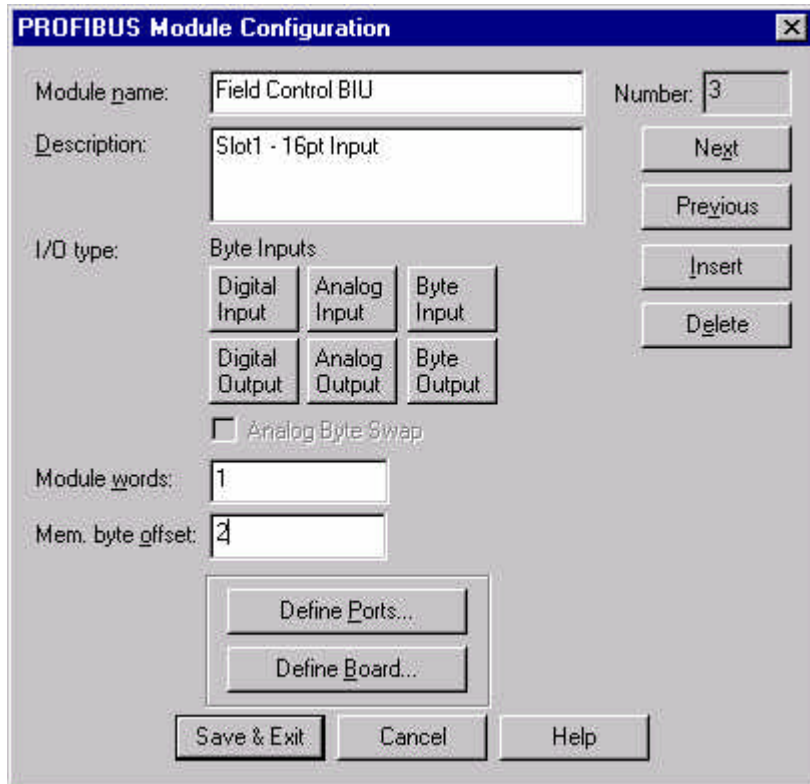
The screenshot shows the 'PROFIBUS Module Configuration' dialog box. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Module name:** Field Control BIU
- Number:** 2
- Description:** BIU Control Word - Addr 2
- I/O type:** Byte Outputs
 - Digital Input
 - Analog Input
 - Byte Input
 - Digital Output
 - Analog Output
 - Byte Output (highlighted with a dotted border)
- Analog Byte Swap
- Module words:** 1
- Mem. byte offset:** 0
- Buttons:** Next, Previous, Insert, Delete, Define Ports..., Define Board..., Save & Exit, Cancel, Help

Port Configuration for Control Word



Module Configuration for 16-point Input



Port Configuration for 16-point Input

The screenshot shows the 'PROFIBUS Analog/Byte Port Configuration' dialog box. It has a title bar with a close button. The main area is titled 'Analog/Byte Inputs'. It contains several input fields and buttons:

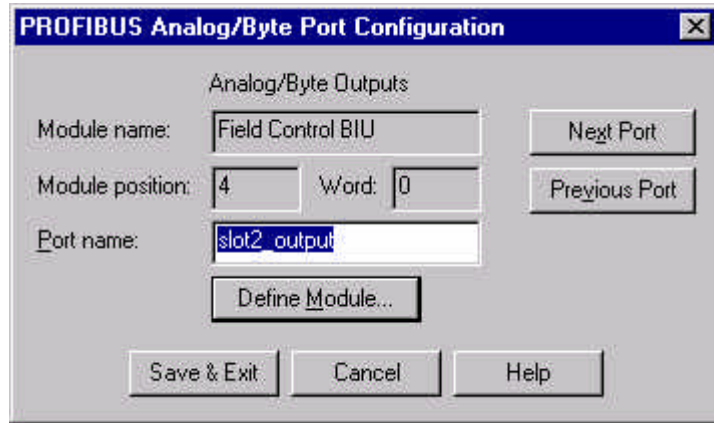
- Module name:** Field Control BIU
- Module position:** 3
- Word:** 0
- Port name:** slot1 input
- Buttons:** Next Port, Previous Port, Define Module..., Save & Exit, Cancel, Help

Module Configuration for 16-point Output

The screenshot shows the 'PROFIBUS Module Configuration' dialog box. It has a title bar with a close button. The main area is titled 'PROFIBUS Module Configuration'. It contains several input fields and buttons:

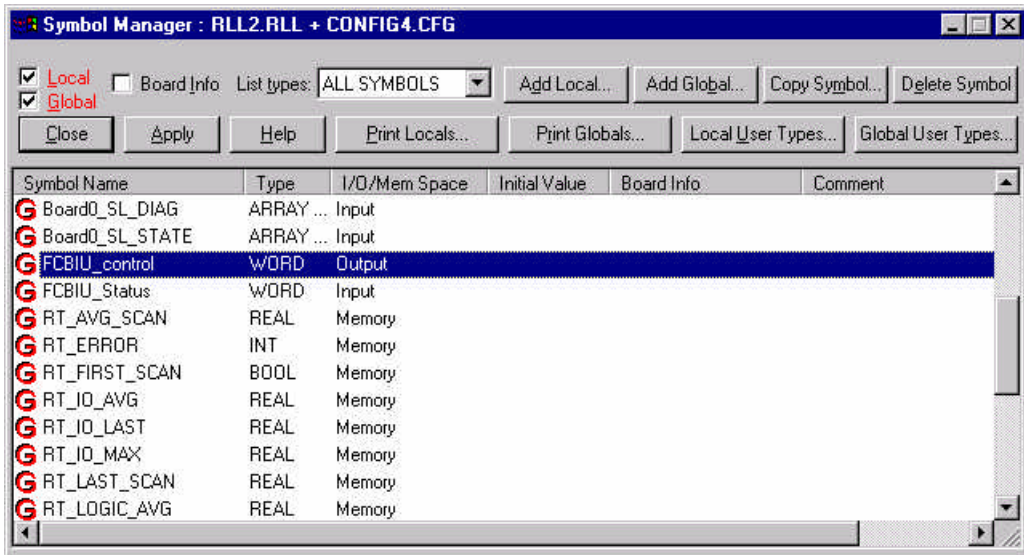
- Module name:** Field Control BIU
- Number:** 4
- Description:** Slot 2 - 16 pt Output
- I/O type:** Byte Outputs (Digital Input, Analog Input, Byte Input, Digital Output, Analog Output, Byte Output)
- Analog Byte Swap:**
- Module words:** 1
- Mem. byte offset:** 2
- Buttons:** Next, Previous, Insert, Delete, Define Ports..., Define Board..., Save & Exit, Cancel, Help

Port Configuration for 16-point Output

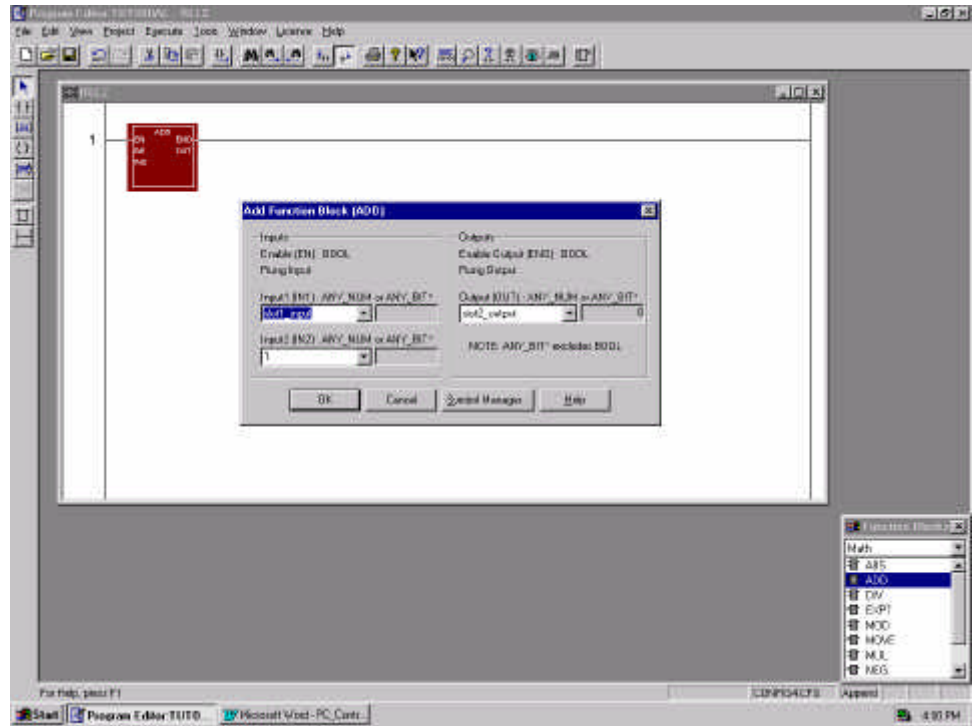


17. The final step for setting up the configuration is to Save and Activate the configuration.

If you now enter your program editor, you are able to access the ports that you have defined through the symbol manager.



Below is an example of using the 16 point input module located in slot 1 in an ADD function block.



Section 5: *Dynamic Data Exchange*

About the DDE Interface

PC Control software allows a DDE interface option to third party software to communicate with the control system software through a DDE interface. When the DDE interface is enabled, PC Control accepts external program commands and read/write requests from/to the control system I/O and global memory variables.

DDE Communication with Microsoft's Excel Software

You can use the DDE features in Microsoft Excel software to transfer data to and from global symbols. Using Excel you can transfer data from the control system for summary and analysis. You can also transfer data from Excel to PC Control for controlling control system program execution or to provide features such as a low level recipe management system.

Transferring Data to Excel

To transfer the value of a global symbol to a cell in a Excel Spreadsheet, enter a formula like the following into the cell that is to receive the value:

```
=ProgMgr|'_main _main'!VariableName
```

or

```
=ProgMgr|'_main _main'!'ArrayName[4]'
```

The string '_main _main' is the DDE topic and will allow you to fetch global variables. Make sure that you type one and only one space between the two "_main" as shown in the formula above. Replace the *VariableName* with the name of the global variable that you wish to transfer. The *VariableName* must use the same case and spelling as used in the control system application. Array elements can be accessed by using the second format to address the appropriate element in any array, but because of the square brackets ([]), the element name must be enclosed within single quotes.

This formula will establish a Hot DDE link to the control system that will update the value in the Excel spreadsheet whenever the variable in the control system is changed. For a detailed example, refer to "Transferring Data to Excel" in the online help. For more information about entering formulas in an Excel spreadsheet, refer to the Excel user documentation.

Transferring Data to the Control System

Transferring a value from Excel to a control system global variable requires a DDE transaction routine coded in an Excel macro similar the following:

```
Sub transfer()  
  
    Dim x  
  
    x = Application.DDEInitiate("ProgMgr", "_main _main")  
  
    Set rangeToPoke = Sheets("Sheet1").Cells(7, 11)  
  
    Application.DDEPoke x, "VariableName", rangeToPoke  
  
    Application.DDETerminate x  
  
End Sub
```

This routine, when executed, transfers the value of the cell in row 7, column 11 (K7) to the global variable called `VariableName`. Make sure that you type one space between `_main` and `_main` as mentioned above. Replace `Sheet1` with the name of your worksheet that contains the value to be transferred.

Transferring Values to the Control System Upon Request

Transferring values from Excel to the control system upon request from the control system requires a DDE transaction routine coded in an Excel macro similar to the following:

```
Dim TimeSet As Double

Sub RunMeFirst()

    TimeSet = Now + TimeValue("00:00:05")

    Application.OnTime TimeSet, "Transfer"

End Sub

Sub Transfer()

    Dim x, y

    Dim z As Variant

    x = DDEInitiate("ProgMgr", "_main _main")

    z = DDERequest(x, "Trans1")

    y = Val(z(1))

    If y = 1 Then

        Set rangeToPoke = Sheets("Sheet1").Cells(2, 3)

        DDEPoke x, "Data1", rangeToPoke

        Set rangeToPoke = Sheets("Sheet1").Cells(3, 3)

        DDEPoke x, "Data2", rangeToPoke

        Set rangeToPoke = Sheets("Sheet1").Cells(4, 3)

        DDEPoke x, "Data3", rangeToPoke

        Set rangeToPoke = Sheets("Sheet1").Cells(1, 3)

        DDEPoke x, "Trans1", rangeToPoke

    End If

    DDETerminate x

    RunMeFirst

End Sub
```

When executed, this macro will check a global variable called `Trans1` every 5 seconds. If `Trans1` is set to 1 it will then transfer the value of the cell in row 2, column 3 (C2) to the global variable called `Data1`, likewise C3 to `Data2`, and C4 to `Data3`. It will then transfer C1, which was preset to 0, to `Trans1` resetting the transfer request. Make sure that you type one space between `_main` and `_main` as mentioned above. Replace `Sheet1` with the name of your worksheet that contains the values to be transferred. The time interval may be changed from 5 seconds by changing the `TimeValue` in the `RunMeFirst` function.

Section 6: Import/Export Configuration

The import/export features provide the following capabilities:

- For drivers that do not allow cut and paste capabilities, you can export the configuration; use a text editor to cut and paste the configuration; and then import the configuration back into the control system.
- Offline editing of the configuration. Instead of using the control system to edit configurations, you can use a text editor or comma separated variable (CSV) compatible utility (such as Microsoft Excel) to edit the configuration. Or, you can write your own dialog based configuration software (using VB, VC++, etc.) to create CSV files. You can then import the CSV into the control system.
- You can create your own application to automate the generation of customer specific configurations.

The following configuration information types are supported for CSV import and export: Global symbols, Yaskawa I/O driver, GE 90/30 driver, PCIM driver.

The configuration is exported as a CSV file that can be read by a text editor or spreadsheet.

To export configuration to a CSV file

1. Open the configuration to be exported.
2. Select *Export Config to CSV* from the *File* menu. A file selection dialog box appears.



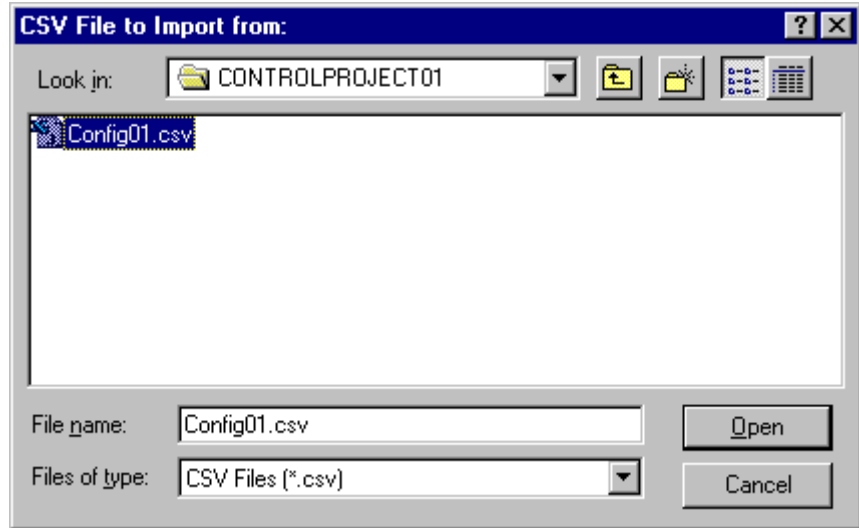
3. Select or type a file name for the export and click *Open* to continue. The *Export Config to CSV* dialog box appears.



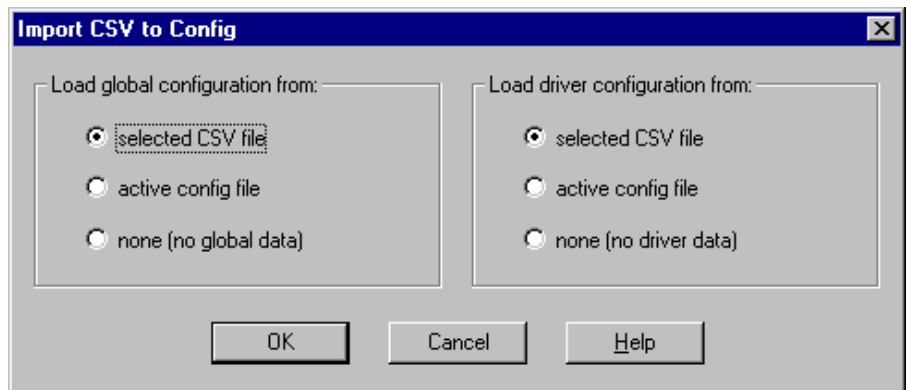
4. Select export options as needed and click *OK* to proceed. The configuration is saved to the designated file.

To import a CSV file to a configuration

1. Select *Import CSV to Config* from the *File* menu. You are prompted to close the currently open configuration.
2. A file selection dialog box appears.



3. Select or type the file name of the configuration file to be imported and click *Open* to continue. The *Import CSV to Config* dialog box appears.



4. Select import options as needed. You can choose to import either global symbols and/or driver information, use the global symbols or driver information from the active configuration, or start the configuration without global symbols or driver information.
5. Click *OK* to proceed. The configuration data is imported and becomes the active configuration.

Chapter 4

Creating Application Programs

The Program Editor is used to develop, debug, parse, and execute application programs. Whenever you start the Program Editor, you will be prompted to enter an access level password. The default password for unlimited access is "4567".

This chapter provides the following information:

- How to configure symbols
- How to structure and create RLL application programs
- How to structure and create Sequential Function Charts
- How to create Structured Text application programs
- How to create Instruction List application programs
- Motion Programming
- Online editing

Section 1: Configuring Symbols

About Symbols

The PC Control programming tools allow you to define and use symbols, which are internal memory locations that contain information. The content of the information is defined by the data type and can be real numbers, integers, strings of characters, etc. Use the Symbol Manager to define a symbol, assign it a symbolic name and data type, and designate its scope as local or global. Global symbol definitions are stored in the active configuration file. Local symbol definitions are stored within the application program file (SFC, RLL, Structured Text, or Instruction List).

I/O points and system and run-time symbols are predefined and can be viewed and used in programs, but not edited. They appear as global symbols.

Symbol Scope

The scope of a symbol can be local to a program or global.

Local symbol

A local symbol can be referenced only within the program in which it is defined or in macro steps called by the program. The program must be open for you to define local symbols to be used within it. You cannot access a local symbol within the Operator Interface for DDE operations. Local symbol definitions are stored in the application program file.

Global symbol

A global symbol can be referenced by all programs within a project. You can use global symbols within the Operator Interface and for DDE operations. Global symbol definitions are stored in the active configuration file.

I/O Points

I/O points are external locations. Because you can reference them in a program just like symbols, I/O points appear in the Symbol Manager and are listed as global symbols.

I/O points function like global symbols: you can reference them from any program, and you can use them within the Operator Interface and for DDE operations. I/O symbols can only be edited from the Configuration Utility, you cannot edit an I/O point from within the Symbol Manager.

Function Blocks

Most function blocks need to be instantiated. To be used in Structured Text or Instruction List programs, an instance of the function block type must be explicitly declared in the Symbol Manager.

System Objects (PID, PRGBC, and TMR)

These need to be instantiated. To be used in Structured Text, an instance of the system object type must be explicitly declared in the Symbol Manager.

Identifiers

Identifiers are used for symbol names. Identifiers have the following characteristics:

- Consist of upper and lower case letters (A—Z and a—z), numerals (0—9), and the underscore (_) character.
- Must begin with a letter or single underscore character.
- Case is considered.
- For uniqueness of an identifier, every character position is considered.
- Cannot contain multiple, sequential underscore characters.
- Cannot contain spaces.
- A maximum of 100 characters are allowed.
- Cannot be a system reserved keyword. Refer to “Keywords” for a list of keywords.
- Must be unique within its scope.

Examples of valid identifiers are:

```
_Sym1
Sym_Two_A
SYM      (SYM and sym are considered unique identifiers)
Sym
A         (A and AA are considered unique identifiers)
AA
```

Examples of invalid identifiers are:

```
1A       (begins with a numeral)
Sym__Two (multiple sequential underscores)
Sym Two  (contains a space)
Sym&One (contains an invalid character)
END      (a reserved identifier)
```


Literals

Literals are used to define or represent data values. For example, literals can be used as inputs to functions or function blocks, to assign values to variables and constants, and within program statements. There are four types of literals: numeric, character string, time duration, and time-of-day and date.

Numeric Literals

Numeric literals are either integer or real. Integer literals can be decimal, base 2, base 8, or base 16. Examples of numeric literals:

0	456	+34	-7_000	integer literals
0.0	0.11			real literals
2#1010_1010	(170 decimal)			base 2 literal
8#252	(170 decimal)			base 8 literal
16#AA	(170 decimal)			base 16 literal
FALSE	0	TRUE	1	Boolean literal

Numeric literals have the following characteristics:

- A numeric literal can contain single underscore (_) characters, which do not affect the value of the literal.
- Real literals contain a decimal point.
- Decimal based numeric literals can contain a leading + or - sign.
- The keywords FALSE and TRUE correspond to Boolean 0 and 1, respectively.

Character String Literals

A string literal is a string of 0 or more characters delimited by single quotation marks ('). The \$ (dollar sign) character has a special use in a string literal. If it is followed by two hexadecimal digits, it is interpreted as the hexadecimal representation of the eight-bit character code. It also is used in two-character strings to represent the dollar sign (\$), single quote (') and specified unprintable characters.

Examples of character string literals:

"	the empty string
'XYZ'	a three-character string
' '	a space
'\$41 \$42 \$43'	a five-character string 'A B C'
'\$\$'	dollar sign
'\$' '	single quote
'\$L' or '\$l'	line feed
'\$N' or '\$n'	new line
'\$P' or '\$p'	form feed
'\$R' or '\$r'	carriage return
'\$T' or '\$t'	tab

Time Duration Literals

Time duration literals are prefixed by the keyword T#, TIME#, t#, or time# and followed by one or more units of time. Examples of time duration literals:

T#1D1H1M1S	1 day, 1 hour, 1 minute, 1 second
Time#1d_1h_1m_1s	same as preceding
time#25h1ms	25 hours, 1 millisecond
t#1m_2.5s	1 minute, 2.5 seconds

Time duration literals have the following characteristics:

- The time units can be written in upper or lower case. D, d=days; H, h=hours; M, m=minutes; S, s=seconds; and MS, ms=milliseconds.
- An underscore (_) can be used to separate the time duration units.
- The most significant unit of a time duration literal can overflow.
- The least significant unit of a time duration literal can be written as a real number (with no exponent).

Time of Day and Date Literals

Time of day and date literals are prefixed by one of the following keywords and followed by time of day and date in the appropriate format.

DATE#YYYY-MM-DD	date only
D#YYYY:MM:DD	same as previous
TIME_OF_DAY#HH:MM:SS.MS	time only
TOD#HH:MM:SS.MS	same as previous
DATE_AND_TIME#YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM:SS.MS	date and time
DT#YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM:SS.MS	same as previous

Examples of time of day and date literals:

DATE#1998-02-13
D#1998-02-13
TIME_OF_DAY#12:00:00
TOD#12:00:00.01
DATE_AND_TIME#1998-02-13-12:00:00.01

- The date and time keywords can be abbreviated. DATE or D; TIME_OF_DAY or TOD; DATE_AND_TIME or DT.

Data Types

Data types must be assigned to symbols (variables and constants). Characteristics of the elementary data types are given in the following paragraphs. Generic data types are described in “Generic Data Types”. User-defined data types are described in “User-Defined Data Type”.

In the following descriptions:

- Generic type gives the generic types for which this data type can be substituted.
- Size is the amount of memory that one instance of the data type occupies (for example, the single-bit Boolean type is really stored as a byte).
- Range is the range of values an instance of this type can take on.
- Default is the default initial value given to an instance of this type if an initial value is not otherwise specified.

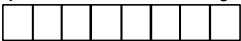
BOOL (Boolean)

A BOOL can have one of two states: 0 or 1, corresponding to FALSE or TRUE.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_BIT.
Size	1 bit.
Range	0 (FALSE), 1 (TRUE).
Default value	0

BYTE

A BYTE is a bit string of length 8.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_BIT.
Size	1 byte.
Range	Not applicable.
Format	MSB LSB
	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; width: 100%;"> 7 0 </div> 
Default value	00000000

DATE

This data type is used to represent a date (only) in the format YYYY-MM-DD.

If you create an expression of DATE data types, all values must be of the same type, and the result must be a date.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_DATE.
Size	4 bytes
Range	-
Default value	D#0001-01-01

DINT (Double Integer)

The DINT is a signed integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0—9) and cannot contain a decimal point.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_NUM, ANY_INT.
Size	4 bytes.
Range	-2147483648 to +2147483647.
Default value	0

DWORD (Double WORD)

A DWORD is a bit string of length 32.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_BIT.
Size	4 bytes.
Range	Not applicable.

Format



Default value 0

INT (Integer)

The INT is a signed integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0—9) and cannot contain a decimal point.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_NUM, ANY_INT.
Size	In an enhancement to the IEC 1131-3 specification, the INT is 4 bytes.
Range	-2147483648 to +2147483647.
Default value	0

REAL

A REAL number data type is a 64-bit value composed of one or more of the digits (0—9), is signed, and contains a decimal point.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_NUM, ANY_REAL.
Size	8 bytes.
Range	-3.402823 E38 to -1.401298 E-45 (negative), +1.401298 E-45 to +3.402823 E38 (positive).
Default value	0.0

STRING

ASCII character string of variable length.

Generic type	ANY.
Size	64 bytes.
Default value	" (empty string)
Format	String of ASCII characters in single quotation marks. Example: ' This is a valid string. '

TIME

This data type is used to represent a time duration in the format T#[nD][nH][nM][nS][nMS], where n is the number of Days, Hours, Minutes, Seconds, or Milliseconds.

If you create an expression of TIME data types, all values must be of the same type, and the result must be a time.

Generic type	ANY.
Size	-
Range	-
Default value	T#0S
Format	

TOD (TIME_OF_DAY)

This data type is used to represent the time of day (only) in the format HH:MM:SS.

If you create an expression of TOD data types, all values must be of the same type, and the result must be a TOD.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_DATE.
Size	4 bytes.
Range	00:00:00 to 23:59:59
Default value	TOD#00:00:00
Format	HH:MM:SS (hours:minutes:seconds).

UINT (Unsigned Integer)

A UINT is an unsigned integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0—9) and cannot contain a decimal point.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_NUM, ANY_INT.
Size	2 bytes.
Range	0 to 65535.
Default value	0

WORD

A WORD is a bit string of length 16.

Generic type	ANY, ANY_BIT.																
Size	2 bytes.																
Range	Not applicable.																
Format	MSB LSB																
	15 0																
	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; text-align: center;"><tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr></table>																
Default value	0																

Generic Data Types

The following table shows the data type and generic type hierarchy. The generic types are those prefixed by `ANY_` and are used in the function or function block descriptions where applicable (instead of detailing a long list of data types).

For example, if a function input accepts a data type of `ANY_NUM`, then a symbol having a data type of `REAL`, any of the integer types (`INT`, `DINT`, etc.), or any of the bit string types (`WORD`, `DWORD`, etc.) can be assigned to the function input. If a function input accepts a data type of `ANY_BIT`, then only a symbol having a data type of `WORD`, `DWORD`, etc. can be assigned to the function input.

Data Type Hierarchy						
ANY_ OR_ DERIVED	ANY	ANY_NUM	ANY_REAL	REAL		
			ANY_INT_OR_BIT	ANY_INT	DINT, INT, UINT	
				ANY_BIT	DWORD, WORD, BYTE, BOOL	
		STRING				
		ANY_DATE			DATE, TIME_OF_DAY	
		TIME				
	Derived					

User-Defined Data Type

For more sophisticated data handling you can create your own structured data types. A structure can contain several members of different base types or user-defined structured types. Consider a user-defined structure named `UserStructure01` having and integer type `USInt` member, a Boolean type `USBool`, and a string type `USString`. The individual members can be accessed in the following manner:

```
UserStructure01.USInt:=101;
UserStructure01.USBool:= TRUE;
UserStructure01.USString:="ABC";
```

User-defined types are valid any place that accepts an `ANY` or `USER-DEFINED` data type. Refer to “Editing User-Defined Data Types” for more information.

Arrays

To access a particular element of an array enter the symbol name followed by square brackets with the number of the element you wish to access. For example, to access the fifth element of an array symbol called `Myarray`, you would type `Myarray[5]`. This is assuming you have defined the lower bound of the array as 1. You can also index into an array by placing a symbol name of type `INT` inside the square brackets.

Pointer Symbols

Warning

Pointers should be used by experts only. Misuse can result in unpredictable operation and great difficulty in debugging.

Structured text has two pointer operators: the pointer reference `&` operator and the pointer dereference `*` operator. These operators are used in indirect addressing operations. Information for advanced users on the use of pointers is provided in Appendix E.

Symbol Manager

The Symbol Manager is used to view, create, edit, copy, and delete variables and constant symbols, and function block instances. I/O points and system symbols can only be viewed. The Symbol Manager displays a list of local symbols defined in the active file and global symbols defined in the active configuration.

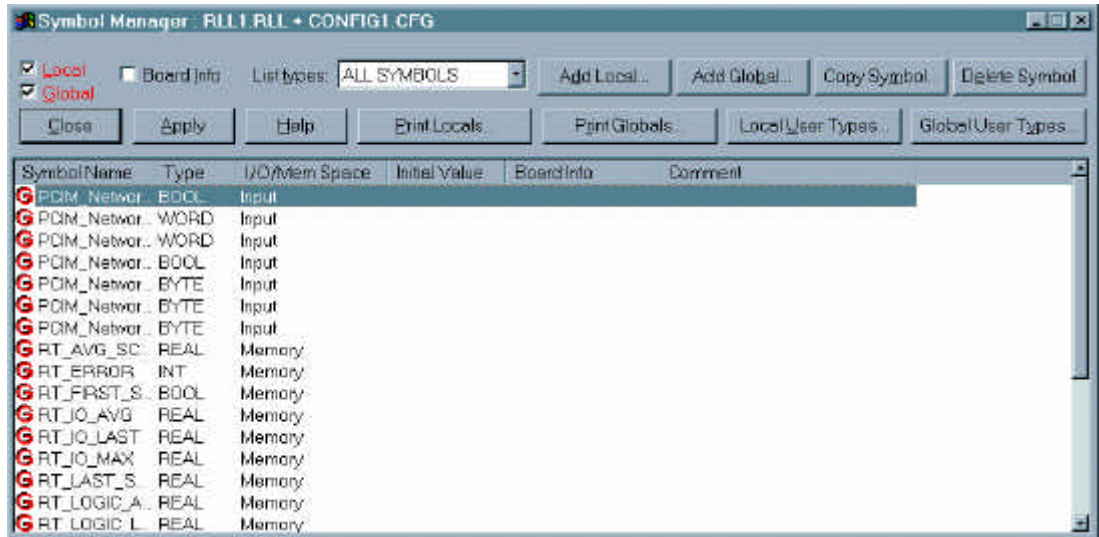
You can use drag and drop in the Symbol Manager to add symbols to Structured Text program statements, Instruction List program statements, or RLL program contacts and coils. You can also drag and drop symbol information to other OLE capable software programs, such as Microsoft WordPad, Word, Excel and others. Symbols can also be selected from lists in various dialog boxes.

Opening the Symbol Manager

To open the Symbol Manager, select Symbol Manager from the Program Editor or Operator Interface Editor *Tools* menu.

- The Symbol Manager can also be opened from various dialog boxes in the editors.
- You cannot have the Symbol Manager open in both the Program Editor and Operator Interface Editor.

The following figure shows an example of the Symbol Manager. The description of I/O and memory symbols is displayed in table format. In front of each symbol name is a G for global symbols or an L for local symbols. An asterisk (*) preceding the symbol name indicates it is a pointer symbol. If the symbol name corresponds to an I/O point, the board information is displayed in the appropriate column.



Symbol Manager Controls

Control	Description
Local	If checked, the corresponding symbol type is displayed in the symbol list.
Global	
Board Info	If checked, the board info is displayed (interface board, rack, etc).
List Types	Filters the symbol list by data type and function block type.
Add Local	Create and add a local symbol.
Add Global	Create and add a global symbol.
Copy Symbol	Copy the currently selected symbol.
Delete Symbol	Delete the currently selected symbol.
Close	Close the Symbol Manager.
Apply	Makes symbol edits visible outside the Symbol Manager.
Help	Displays Symbol Manager help.
Print Locals	Prints a list of local symbols.
Print Globals	Prints a list of global symbols.
Local User Types	Creates a local user type.
Global User Types	Creates a global user type.

Creating a Symbol

To create a new symbol, click either the *Add Local* or *Add Global* button, or use the context menu within the symbol list. The *Symbol Details* dialog box appears. Enter the appropriate information in the *Symbol Details* dialog box and click *OK*. The new symbol will appear in the symbol list.

If a program is not open, you can create only global symbols. If any program is open, you can create both local and global symbols. A local symbol can be used only by the program that is open (active) when you define the symbol.

Note

When done editing symbols, be sure to click *Apply* to make the changes visible outside the Symbol Manager.

Editing a Symbol

1. Select the symbol you want to edit and press **Enter**, or double-click on the symbol.
2. The *Symbol Details* dialog box appears.
3. Modify information and click *OK* to accept changes.

Symbol Details

Field	Description
Symbol Name	Any valid identifier can be used for the symbol name.
Type	The elementary or user-defined structure data type, or function block type of the symbol. Refer to “Data Types” for more information.
Edit User Type	If the symbol is defined as a user type, this button is enabled and the user type can be edited. Refer to “Editing User-Defined Data Types” for more information.
Array	If checked, defines the symbol as an array. Provide upper and lower bounds for the array. Refer to Arrays for more information.
Pointer	If checked, defines the symbol as a pointer. Refer to Pointer Symbols for more information.
Indexed Bit	The indexed bit feature lets you reference a specific bit within a byte, word, or double word symbol. Refer to Naming a Bit in a Symbol.
Initial Value	Used to provide an initial value for the symbol. A local symbol is reset to its initial value each time the program is run. A global symbol is assigned its initial value when the configuration is activated.
Comment	A short description that appears within the Symbol Manager.
Description	The description does not appear in the Symbol Manager, only in the Symbol Details dialog box.

Copying a Symbol

You can quickly create a new symbol with the same properties as an existing symbol by using the copy command.

1. Select the symbol you want to copy.
2. Click the *Copy Symbol* button or use the context menu. The *Symbol Details* dialog box opens with all the parameters filled in exactly as in the selected symbol.
3. A new symbol name must be entered. Type a new symbol name, make any other needed changes, and click *OK*.

Note

When done editing symbols, be sure to click *Apply* to make the changes visible outside the Symbol Manager.

Deleting a Symbol

Select the symbol you want to delete and click the *Delete Symbol* button or use the context menu.

Naming a Bit in a Symbol

The indexed bit feature lets you reference a specific bit within a byte, word, or double word symbol. You can index a global symbol only with a global bit and a local symbol with a local bit.

1. Open the Symbol Manager and click the *Add Global* or *Add Local* button. The Symbol Details dialog box appears.
2. Enter the name of the bit in the *Symbol Name* field.
3. Select the BOOL data type in the *Type* field.
4. The *Indexed Bit* check box is only enabled if you have at least one symbol of type BYTE, WORD, or DWORD already defined. Select the *Indexed Bit* check box. The *Source* and *Bit #* fields become active.
5. The *Source* list shows all defined symbols of BYTE, WORD, and DWORD data types (for either Global or Local symbols). Select the symbol that you want to index in the *Source* field.
6. Enter the bit number in the *Bit #* field. Valid values are 0—7 for bytes, 0—15 for words, and 0—31 for double words.

7. Enter the optional description into the *Description* field.
8. Click on the *OK* button. The indexed bit appears in the *Symbol List* field.

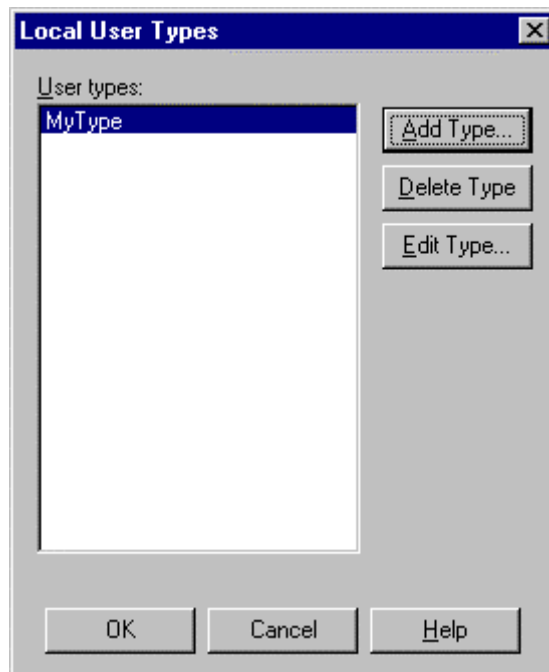
Editing User-Defined Data Types

You can custom-define a data type. A user-defined data type consists of a group of data type members (integers, real numbers, strings, etc.) that operate as a group. Data type members do not have to be of the same data type. For example, you can define a data type called *Report*. It consists of three members called *Year*, *Task*, and *ItemNumbers*. *Year* and *ItemNumbers* are integers and *Task* is a string. You can then use a symbol of the *Report* data type in any program, and the data it contains consists of three members that represent a year, a task name, and a number.

User-defined data types can be global or local. A local data type can be used only by the program that is open (active) when you define the data type.

To edit user-defined data types:

1. Open the Symbol Manager
2. Click on *Local User Types* or *Global User Types*. The respective *User Types* dialog box appears. It lists defined user types (either local or global) and provides buttons to add, edit, and delete user types.



3. Do any of the following:

- To create a new type, click *Add Type*. The *Edit User Type* dialog box appears.
- To edit a user type, select the type name and click *Edit Type*. The *Edit User Type* dialog box appears.
- To delete a user type, select the type name and click *Delete Type*.



Field	Description
Type Name	Displays the user type. If adding a user type, enter the type name.
Ordered member list	Displays a list of the type members.
Add Member	Adds a new member. Displays an <i>Edit Type Member</i> dialog box in which to assign a name and data type to the member.
Delete Member	Deletes the selected member.
Edit Member	Edits the selected member. Displays an <i>Edit Type Member</i> dialog box in which to assign a name and data type to the member.
Move Up	Moves the selected member up or down in the ordered list.
Move Down	

Using Symbols

You can manually enter symbol names where needed by typing the symbol name. However, they can be more easily added using symbol list boxes that appear (for example in the RLL editor), or dragging them from the Symbol Manager (into Structured Text or Instruction List documents).

Drag-and-Drop

Drag-and-drop features of the Symbol Manager allow you to do the following:

- You can drag a Boolean symbol onto an RLL rung. You are prompted to add the symbol as a contact or a coil. When you select contact or coil, the standard *Edit Contact* or *Edit Coil* dialog box appears.
- You can drag a Boolean symbol onto an existing RLL contact or coil. You are prompted to replace the existing contact or coil symbol with the one you have dragged from the Symbol Manager.
- You can drag symbols from the Symbol Manager directly into a location in a Structured Text or Instruction List document.

Enumerations

For symbols that have member elements (structures, function blocks, and system objects), when a symbol of that type is dragged from the Symbol Manager into a Structured Text document (for example), the Select Symbol Members list appears. You can then drag-and-drop the member element you want to use from this list. This also works when adding symbols (that have member elements) to the Watch Window, described on page 4-102.

System Symbols

Predefined System Symbols

The system software automatically creates the following symbols that can be used with application programs.

Symbol	Description
TODAY	Contains the current system date. The TODAY system symbol is a DATE data type that contains the current system date and can be used to determine when an event takes place. The following operators can be used with the TODAY symbol: EQ, LT, GT, LE, GE, and NE. Use the assignment statement or MOVE command to define a value for TODAY. Use the ADD command to add a time duration to TODAY.
NOW	Contains the current system time. The NOW system symbol is a TOD data type that contains the current system time and can be used to determine when an event takes place. The following operators can be used with the NOW symbol: EQ, LT, GT, LE, GE, and NE. Use the assignment statement or MOVE command to define a value for NOW. Use the ADD command to add a time duration to NOW.
NULL	Used to set a pointer symbol to a null value or to compare a pointer symbol (equal or not equal) to a null value.
TMR Variables	These variables contain status information for the TMR data type.
Counter Variables	These variables contain status information for RLL counters (CTD, CTU, and CTUD). These symbols are Local to the application program.
Timer Variables	These variables contain status information for RLL timers (TOF, TON, and TP). These symbols are Local to the application program.
"stepname".X	Contains the active/inactive status of an SFC step. These symbols are Local to the application program.
"stepname".T	Contains the elapsed execution time of an SFC step. These symbols are Local to the application program.
Motion Control	These variables contain status information for the axis, axis variables group, program control, and spindle
File Control Block	These variables contain status information for file operations.
Program Control	These variables contain the status information for the PRGCB data type.

Run-Time Symbols

The following symbols are automatically created by the system software. These symbols are accessible from the Symbol Manager or the Watch Window and can be used in user application programs

Symbol Name	Description
RT_ERROR	(INT) Math errors: 0 = no error 1 = divide by zero 2 = negative square root RT_ERROR must be cleared by the user.
RT_FIRST_SCAN	(BOOL) set to TRUE on the first scan of the first program running in the PC Control Runtime engine. After all programs are aborted, RT_FIRST_SCAN will be set again for the first scan of the first program to run.
RT_SCAN_OVERRUN	(BOOL) set to TRUE when I/O scan + logic scan exceed scan rate.
RT_MAX_SCAN	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of maximum runtime engine scan.
RT_LAST_SCAN	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of last runtime engine scan.
RT_AVG_SCAN	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of average runtime engine scan (runtime scan= logic + I/O + overhead). Rolling average calculated over the last 100 scans.
RT_LOGIC_MAX	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of maximum logic scan.
RT_LOGIC_LAST	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of last logic scan.
RT_LOGIC_AVG	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of average logic scan. Rolling average calculated over the last 100 scans.
RT_IO_MAX	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of maximum I/O scan.
RT_IO_LAST	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of last I/O scan.
RT_IO_AVG	(REAL) duration in milliseconds of average I/O scan. Rolling average calculated over the last 100 scans.
RT_MEM_PCT	(REAL) contains remaining percentage of system RAM (heap space) allocated for the programmable control system software.
RT_LOW_BATTERY	(BOOL) low battery signal from UPS.
RT_POWER_FAIL	(BOOL) power fail signal from UPS.
RT_SCAN_RATE	(REAL) configured scan rate of (in milliseconds) as set in the active configuration.

Keywords

The identifiers listed in the following table are reserved system symbols (keywords). Do not create user symbols using these identifiers. Note that all system symbols are in uppercase letters. This list is subject to change on future releases of the product. To avoid future conflicts, user created symbols should be of mixed case or lower case.

Keyword Listing

ABORT_ALL	ABS	AC
ACCEL	ACOS	ACTION
ADD	ADD_NOFLY	AND_SLOWFLY
AND	AND_BITS	ANDN
ANDT	ANDTN	ANY
ANY_BIT	ANY_DATE	ANY_INT
ANY_NUM	ANY_REAL	APPENDFILE
ARRAY	ARRAY_TO_STRING	AS
ASIN	AT	ATAN
AXIS	AXISGRP	AXSJOG
BCD_TO_INT	BEGIN	BEGIN_IL
BEGIN_RS274	BOOL	BREAK
BY	BYTE	CASE
CAL	CALC	CALCN
CD	CLK	CLOSEFILE
CONCAT	CONFIGURATION	CONSTANT
COPYFILE	COS	CTD
CTU	CTUD	CU
CV	D	DATE
DATE_AND_TIME	DELETE	DELETEFILE
DINT	DIV	DO
DS	DSPMSG	DT
DWORD	ELSE	ELSEIF
EN	END	END_ACTION
END_CASE	END_CONFIGURATION	END_FOR
END_FOR_NOWAIT	END_FUNCTION	END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
END_IF	ENDIF	END_IL
END_RS274	ENO	END_PROGRAM
END_REPEAT	END_RESOURCE	END_STEP
END_STRUCT	END_TRANSITION	END_TYPE
END_VAR	END_WHILE	END_WHILE_NOWAIT

Keyword Listing

EQ	ESTOP	ET
EXIT	EXP	EXPT
F	FALSE	FB
F_EDGE	FILE	FIND
F_EDGE	FNAME	FOR
FROM	F_TRIG	FTYPE
FUNCTION	FUNCTION_BLOCK	G
GE	GLOBAL	GOTO
GT	H	I
IF	IN	IN1
IN2	INCLUDE	INIT
INITIAL_STEP	INSERT	INT
INTERVAL	INT_TO_BCD	INT_TO_REAL
INT_TO_STRING	IP	J
JMP	JMPC	JMPCN
JOGCONT	JOGDIR	JOGDIST
JOGHOME	JOGINCR	JOGMINUS
JOGPLUS	JOGSPD	JOGTYPE
K	L	LD
LDN	LDT	LE
LEFT	LEN	LIMIT
LINT	LL	LN
LOG	LREAL	LT
LWORD	M	MACROSTEP
MAX	MC	MID
MIN	MOD	MOVE
MOVEAXS	MS	MSGWND
MUL	MULP	MUX
N	NAME	NE
NEWFILE	NIL	NOT
NOW	NT	NULL
		OF
ON	OPENFILE	OR
OR_BITS	ORN	ORT
ORTN	OUT	P
PID	POSTN	POW
PRGCB	PRIORITY	PROGRAM
PT	PV	PW
Q	QU	QD

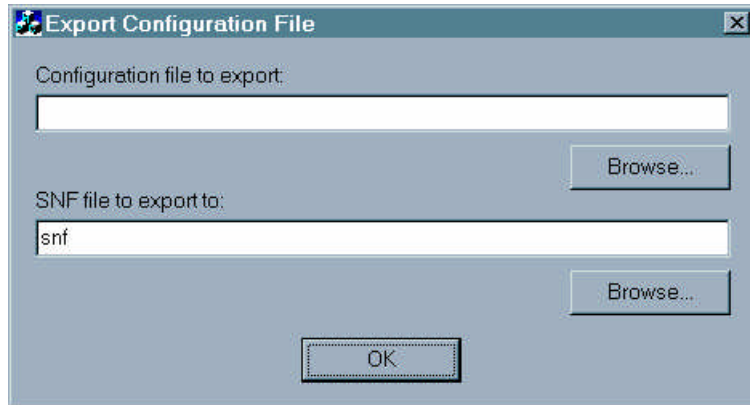
Keyword Listing

R	R1	READFILE
READ_ONLY	READ_WRITE	REAL
REAL_TO_STRING	R_EDGE	REPEAT
REPLACE	RESET_ESTOP	RESOURCE
RET	RETC	RETCN
RETAIN	RETURN	REWINDFILE
RIGHT	ROL	ROR
RS	RTC	R_TRIG
RUNG	S1	SCAN
SD	SEL	SEMA
SET_LOADSIZE	SHL	SHR
SIN	SINT	SL
SR	SQRT	ST
STT	STN	STTN
STEP	STOPJOG	STRING
STRING_TO_ARRAY	STRUCT	SUB
T	TAN	TASK
THEN	TIME	TIME_OF_DAY
TMR	TO	TOD
TODAY	TOF	TON
TP	TRANS	TRANSITION
TRUE	TRUNC	TYPE
UDINT	UL	ULINT
UNTIL	USINT	VAR
VAR_ACCESS	VAR_EXTERNAL	VAR_GLOBAL
VAR_INPUT	VAR_IN_OUT	VAR_OUTPUT
VEL	WHILE	WRITEFILE
WITH	WORD	XOR
XOR_BITS	XORN	XTON
XTOF	XTP	ZZZZ

Exporting Symbols for CIMPLICITY HMI

Symbols can be exported in Shared Name File (.snf) format, which is a GE Fanuc PLC-specific form of CSV.

To export the symbol file, go to the Tools menu in the Program Editor and choose Export Symbols for CIMPLICITY HMI. The Export Configuration File dialog box will appear.



Use the Browse buttons to select the configuration file (.cfg) that you want to export from and the path for the .snf file that you want to export to.

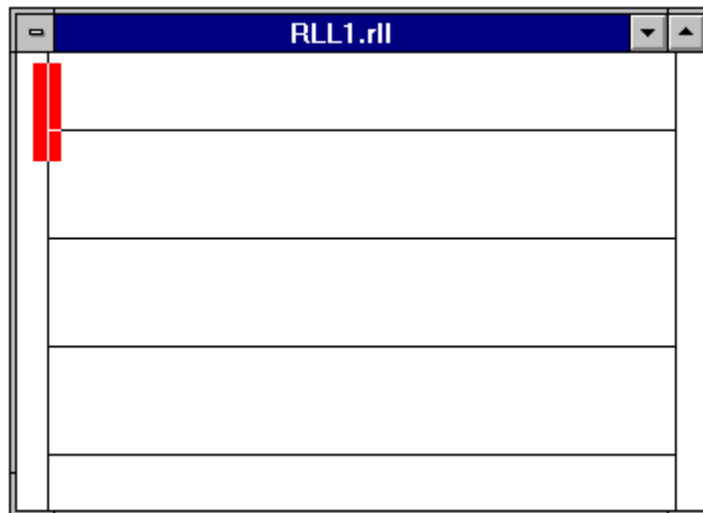
For details on the .snf file format, refer to the *CIMPLICITY HMI for Windows NT and Windows 95 Base System User's Manual*, GFK-1180.

Section 2: RLL Programming

Overview of Relay Ladder Logic Diagrams

Relay Ladder Logic (RLL) diagrams are commonly used on programmable controllers to construct continuous logic programs. RLL diagrams are designed to resemble the electrical diagram for an equivalent electrical relay logic circuit.

The RLL diagram contains two vertical power rails. The left power rail is assumed to be an electrical current source and is energized whenever the RLL program is running. The power rail on the right is assumed to be an electrical current sink. The two power rails are connected by horizontal lines called rungs (like the rungs of a ladder) on which the logical instructions are placed.



The basic RLL program instructions, contact and coils, represent actual hardware components (limit switches, solenoid coils, lights, etc.) and single-bit internal memory locations.

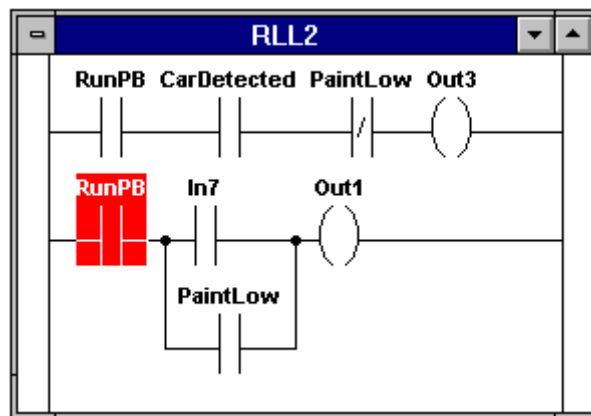
RLL diagrams use input contacts to represent Boolean input symbols (variables). These contacts act as:

- normally open (active high), which means that current passes to or energizes the RLL element to its right when the symbol associated with it is high (1 or on)
- normally closed (active low) relay contacts, which means that current passes to or energizes the RLL element to its right when the symbol associated with it is low (0 or off)

These inputs usually have the name of the Boolean symbol they represent located above the graphical element. They are variations of the input contact, including transition sensing contacts that pass current to the next element for only one scan of the RLL program.

RLL diagrams use output coils to represent Boolean output variables. If the logic to the left of an output coil is energized (set true), the Boolean symbol represented by the output coil receives a Boolean 1 (high); otherwise, it receives a Boolean 0 (low). Variations of the coil element exist, including inverting and pulsed (single scan outputs). Some output coils are latching and only set (or reset) the output variable to true (or false) if the logic to the left is true.

RLL logic elements that reside on the same horizontal rung are assumed to be logically ANDed together. Function blocks are provided to facilitate complex operations that use more than one Boolean symbol.



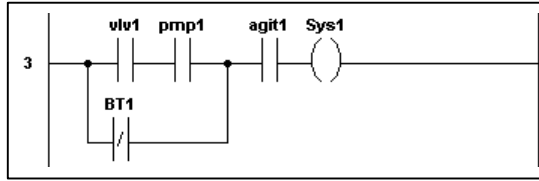
How RLL Application Programs are Solved

This topic explains how RLL programs using simple relays and function block are solved.

How Simple Relay Logic is Solved

After the system writes to the physical outputs, it reads physical inputs and then solves the RLL logic. Power flow and solving of the program logic is always from top to bottom and from left to right. In the following example, power flow begins at the left power rail. If contact vlv1 is on, power flow continues to contact pmp1. The three contacts, vlv1, pmp1, and agit1 are in a series and represent the logical ANDing of the three contacts. Contact bt1 is in parallel with contacts vlv1 and pmp1, representing the logical OR of bt1 with vlv1 and pmp1. If contact BT1 is on, power

flow continues to agit1, even if vlv1 is not on. If power flow continues to coil Sys1, then it turns on the circuit, completing power flow to the right rail.

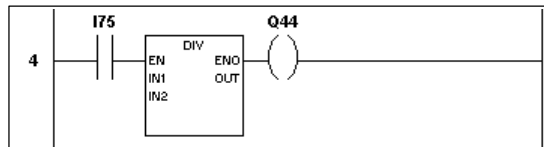


How RLL Logic is Solved When Function Blocks Are Used

Function blocks provide a mechanism for solving more complex operations not easily handled by contacts and coils, such as:

- math operations
- logic functions
- counter and timers, etc.

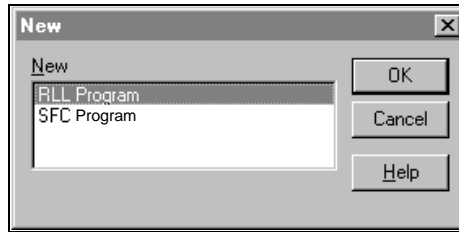
Function block inputs receive power flow from the rung and transfer power flow to the next element on the rung through their outputs. They can also read and write data from their internal inputs and outputs. In the following example, the division function block (DIV) is enabled by its rung input EN, which receives power flow when contact I75 is enabled. It receives divisor and dividend data through two internal inputs (IN1, IN2). The function block writes the quotient to an internal output (OUT) and transfers power flow to the next program element, Q44, through its rung output (ENO).



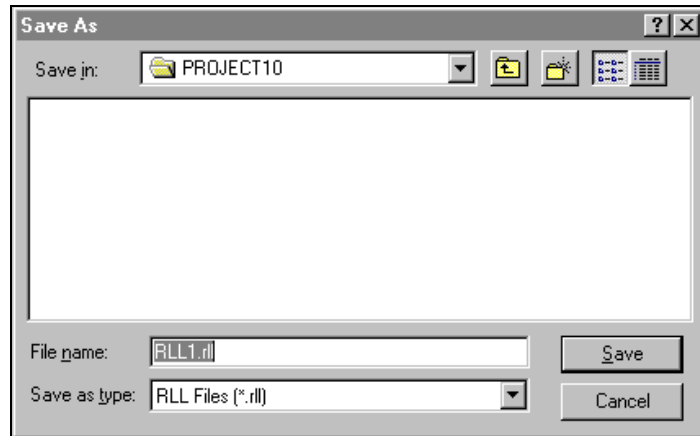
Creating a Relay Ladder Logic Program

To open the RLL editor and begin creating a program, you need to enter the Program Development environment.

1. Start the Program Editor.
2. Click on *File* and select *New Editor*. The *New* dialog box appears.



3. Select *RLL Program* and click on *OK*. The *Save As* dialog box appears.

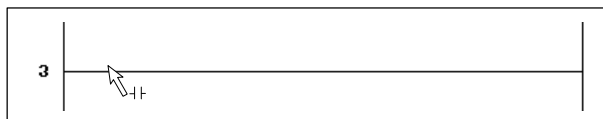


4. Choose the default or a new name for the program and click *Save*. The default extension *.rll* is appended when the file is saved in your project. The RLL editor displays a new RLL file with the two power rails and one rung.

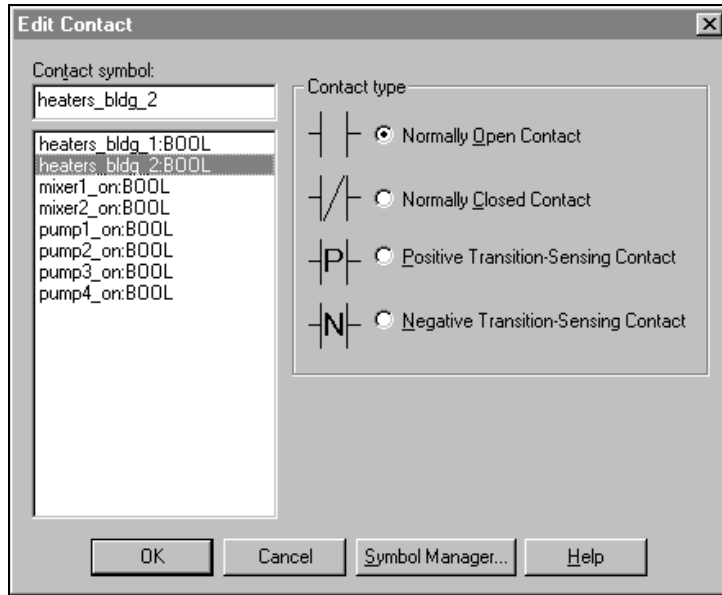
Adding Program Elements

Adding a Contact

1. Click on the *Contact Tool* on the *RLL toolbar*. The cursor changes into the contact cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location on the rung where you want to place the new contact.



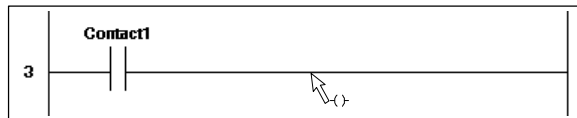
3. Click the left mouse button. The **Edit Contact** dialog box appears.



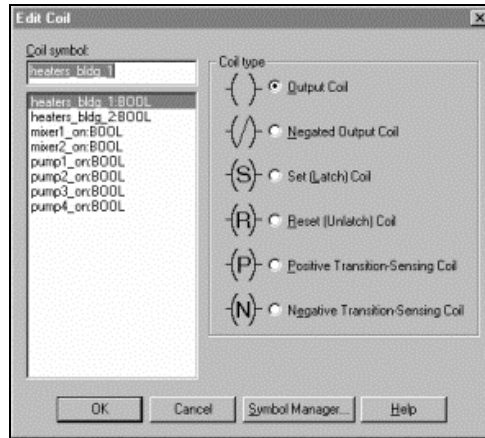
4. If you have already defined the symbol names for your system, click on the symbol to represent the contact (heaters_bldg_2 in the figure).
5. If you have not defined the symbol names, or if you want to define a new symbol, you need to access the Symbol Manager and fill in the symbol data for the contact.
6. Select the contact type (Normally Open, Normally Closed, etc.) and then click on **OK**. The new contact appears on the rung at the location you specified.

Adding a Coil

1. Click on the *Coil Tool* on the *RLL toolbar*. The cursor changes into the coil cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location on the rung where you want to place the new coil.



3. Click the left mouse button. The **Edit Coil** dialog box appears.

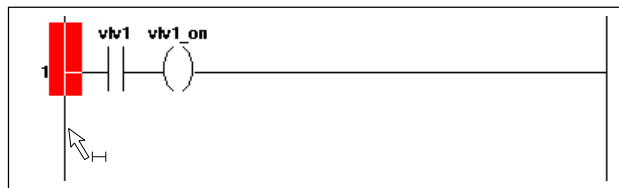


4. If you have already defined the symbol names for your system, click on the symbol to represent the coil.
5. If you have not defined the symbol names, or if you want to define a new symbol, you need to access the Symbol Manager and fill in the symbol data for the coil.
6. Select the coil type (Output, Negated Output, etc.) and then click on *OK*. The new coil appears on the rung at the location you specified.

You can place an Output Coil anywhere on a rung, including to the left of an input or within an OR branch. An Output coil stores the logical result of the logic evaluated up to its location on the rung.

Inserting a New Rung

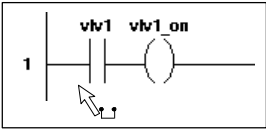
1. Click the *Rung Tool*. A rung symbol attaches to the mouse pointer.
2. Move the cursor to the location on the left power rail where you want to insert the new rung.



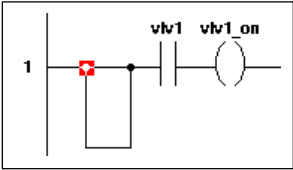
3. Click the left mouse button. The editor inserts the rung at the specified location.

Adding a Branch

1. Click on the *Branch Tool* on the *RLL toolbar*. The cursor changes into the Branch Tool cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location on the rung where you want to insert the branch.




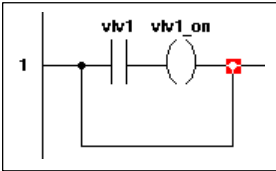
3. Click the left mouse button. The editor inserts the branch at the specified location.



4. After inserting the branch, you can adjust the contact points as necessary.

To move the contact points of a branch:

1. Click on the *Select Tool*.

2. Move the cursor over the contact point that you want to move and press the left mouse button.
3. With the mouse button depressed, move the cursor and the contact to the new location on the rung and release the button. The editor connects the branch at the new location on the rung.

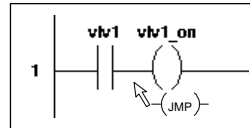


You can insert a branch that contains no logic (a shunt). You can use a shunt to temporarily disable a section of logic without deleting it from the program. Used with a contact that turns off power flow to the logic in question, the shunt maintains power flow across the rest of the rung. This feature is useful for debugging your program.

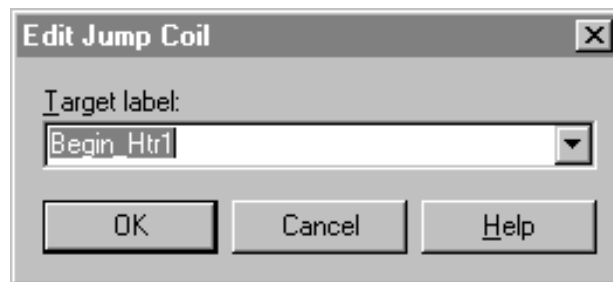
You can also move a contact point from rung to rung without deleting the logic contained within the branch.

Adding a Jump Coil

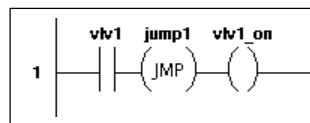
1. Click on the *Jump Tool* on the *RLL toolbar*. The cursor changes into the Jump cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location on the rung where you want to place the new jump.



3. Click the left mouse button. The **Edit Jump Coil** dialog box appears.



4. Enter a target label and click on *OK*. A target label name cannot contain any spaces. The editor inserts the jump at the specified location.



Adding a SFC Transition Coil

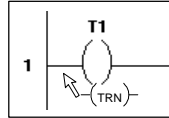
The SFC transition coil is an RLL program element that you can use only under specific conditions (within an SFC action) in an SFC program.

Note

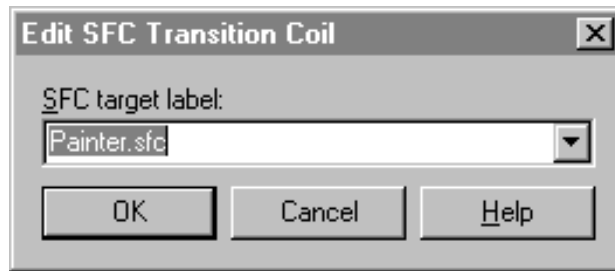
To add an SFC transition coil to the program, you must be editing an action in an SFC program.

To add an SFC Transition Coil:

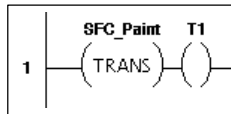
1. Click on the *SFC Transition Coil* tool on the RLL toolbar. The cursor changes into the SFC Transition Coil cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location on the rung where you want to place the SFC Transition Coil.



3. Click the left mouse button. The **Edit SFC Transition Coil** dialog box appears.



4. Type the name of the SFC target and click **OK**. An SFC name cannot contain any spaces. The editor inserts the SFC Transition Coil at the specified location.

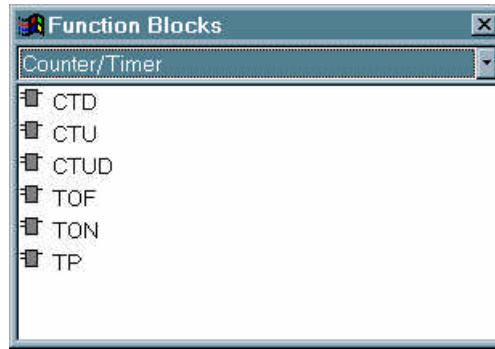


Adding Function Blocks

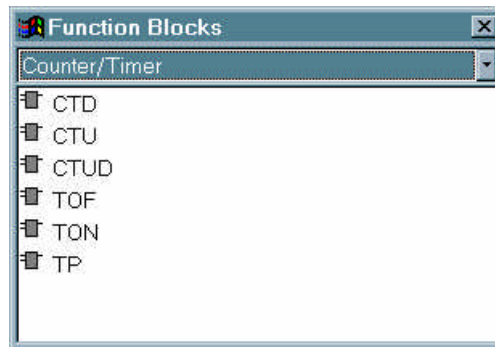
Several predefined algorithms exist that are called function blocks that you can use in an RLL program. You can enable function blocks with inputs from an RLL rung, have them do operations such as trigonometric, math, logic functions, bit shift operations, file operations, etc., and then send the results to an output that feeds into another element on the RLL rung.

To Add a Function Block:

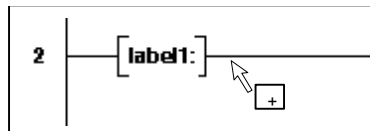
1. If the Function Blocks palette is not displayed, select *View/Function Block Palette* from the menu bar. The editor displays the Function Blocks palette.



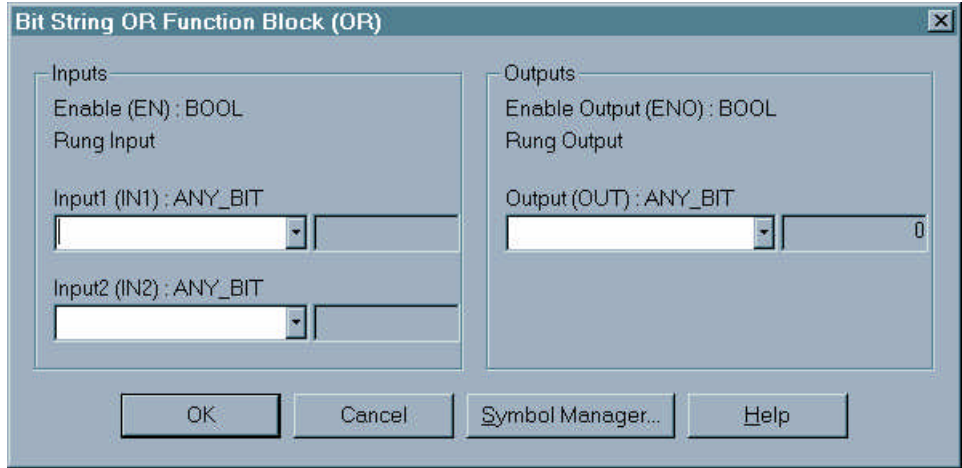
2. Select the type of function block that you need from the drop-down list. The Function Blocks palette changes to display the selected function block types.



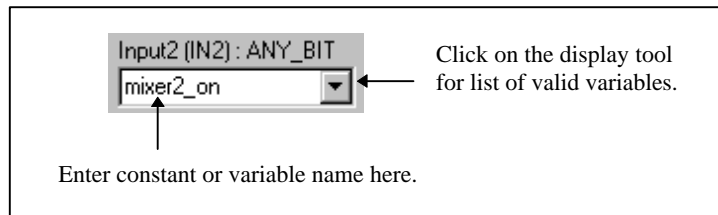
3. Click on the specific function block that you want to add, such as an OR Bitwise block.
4. Drag the function block to the location on the rung where you want to place it.



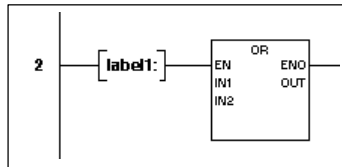
- The dialog box for the function block appears when you release the left mouse button.



- Fill in the appropriate information for the function block.
- To enter a constant (an integer, real number, characters of a string, etc.) type the value directly into the field. To enter a symbol, either type the symbol name into the field, or click on the display tool for a list of valid symbols from which to select.



- When you have finished filling out the dialog box, click on *OK*. The editor inserts the block at the specified location.



Moving and Editing Program Elements

Selecting Program Elements

To select elements with the keyboard:

Use the arrow keys to select the next element in the desired direction. A beep will sound if the selection cannot be made.

To select elements with the mouse:

1. Select the *Selector tool* from the *RLL Tool Bar* or the *SFC Tool Bar*.



2. Move the cursor to the desired element and press the left mouse button. The element will highlight in the select highlight colors.

Special Notes about Single Element Selection

To select a select diverge or simultaneous diverge in a SFC program, select the top or bottom bar of the diverge.

To select a rung in a SFC program, select the left or right power rail of the rung.

To select multiple elements at one time:

1. Select the *Selector tool* from the *RLL Tool Bar* or the *SFC Tool Bar*.



2. Move the cursor to the top and left of the top, leftmost element in the desired group (be sure the cursor is not over any element).
3. Press and hold the left mouse button and drag the cursor. As the cursor is dragged, a selection box will appear.
4. When the desired elements are in the selection box, release the left mouse button. All elements entirely inside of the selection box will be selected.

Special Notes about multiple selection

To select a branch connector in an RLL program, both connectors and all elements on the branch must be inside of the selection box.

To select a rung in an RLL program, the left and right power rails and all elements on the rung must be inside of the selection box.

To select a loop in a SFC program, the topmost loop arrow, all loop transitions and all elements contained in the loop must be inside of the selection box.

To select a jump in a SFC program, the jump diamond, all transitions and all target labels must be inside of the selection box.

To select a select diverge or a simultaneous diverge in a SFC program, the top and bottom bars and all elements in the diverge must be inside of the selection box.

Moving a Branch

1. Select the *Selector tool* from the *RLL Tool Bar* or the *SFC Tool Bar*.



2. Move the cursor over the desired branch connector. Press and hold the left mouse button.
3. Drag the branch connector to the desired location (the cursor will change to a branch connector cursor).
4. Release the left mouse button to drop the branch connector at the desired location.

To cancel the drag operation press the <ESCAPE> key.

If the target location for the branch connector is on the same rung and not inside of any embedded branches or outside of any nested branches, the dragged branch connector will be located at the drop position and the other end of the branch will remain in its current position. However, if the target location for the branch connector is on a different rung, inside of an embedded branch or outside of a nested branch, both ends of the branch will be moved to the target position (the entire branch will be moved).

Moving Program Elements

1. Select the desired element(s) and move the cursor over one of the selected elements.
2. Press and hold the left mouse button and drag the selected elements to the desired location. When dragging begins the elements being dragged will be blanked out and the cursor will change to represent the element being dragged. If multiple elements are being dragged the cursor will be changed to the group drag cursor. Release the left mouse button to drop the element(s) at the desired location.

To cancel the drag operation press the <ESCAPE> key.

Editing Program Elements

1. Click on the *Select Tool*.
2. Double click on the element (Step, Transition, label, etc.). The dialog box appropriate for the element (**Edit Step**, **Select RLL Transition Logic**, **Bypass Jump Transition Logic**, etc.) appears.
3. Make changes in the dialog box as needed.

Deleting a Branch

The operation of the Cut tool is based on your selecting an object and then clicking on the Cut tool to delete the object. To delete the branch, however, follow one of these procedures.

To Delete a Branch without any elements:

1. Click on the *Select Tool*.
2. Place the cursor in the middle of the branch and click.
3. Click on the Cut tool to delete the branch.

To delete a Branch that contains one or more elements:

1. Click on the *Select Tool*.
2. Drag an area that includes the entire branch and its connection points.
3. Click on the Cut tool to delete the branch.

Undoing/Redoing Edits

Click the *Undo* button on the *Tool bar* to undo an operation.

Documenting RLL Application Programs

A program comment can consist of any meaningful description that you want to display on a Rung. You can choose whether the system displays the comments or hides them.

Adding and Editing Rung Comments

1. Click on the **Comment Tool** on the RLL menu bar.



When no comment is associated with a rung, the comment displayed is (* **Rung Comment** *).

2. Move the cursor to the Rung in the program where you want to edit the comment and double click. The **Program Comments** dialog box appears.
3. Enter the comment and click on OK. The comment appears on the Rung specified.

Adding and Editing symbol descriptions

1. Open an RLL or SFC program.
2. Click on Symbol Manager Tool.



The Symbol Manager dialog box for local/global symbols appears.

3. Add or change information as desired.

Section 3: SFC Programming

Overview of Sequential Function Charts

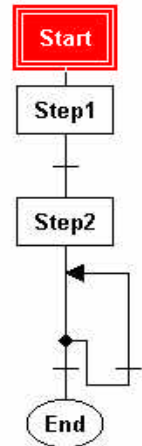
A sequential function chart represents an application program as a series of sequential steps. You associate control logic with these steps called actions. The logic in the action executes when the step becomes active.

Steps are connected by links and control is passed between steps via transitions. Transitions can be a Boolean expression or a single RLL rung.

You can manage multiple control paths using divergences. A select divergence lets you choose one path to be active from two or more control paths; whereas, a simultaneous divergence lets you activate multiple control paths simultaneously in parallel.

Other program flow capabilities exist. You can include control loops that let you repeat a series of steps or transfer control flow to another location using a Jump and Label structure.

You can create SFCs with multiple paths, and it is possible for more than one SFC to be active at a time.



About Steps

A step represents a condition in which the behavior of the system follows a set of rules defined by the actions and functions associated with the step. A step is either active or inactive. At any given moment, the state of the system is defined by the set of active steps and the values of its internal and output variables.

A Step is graphically represented within an SFC as a box containing the Step name, which identifies the step. Program flow into and out of the Step is through a vertical line entering the top of the box and another line exiting from the bottom of the box.

When you create a new SFC, the system automatically generates the:

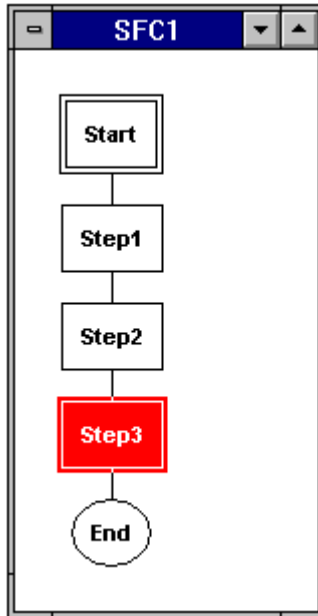
- first Step, labeled Start,
- last Step, labeled End.

You cannot edit these Steps; they simply represent the initiation and termination of the SFC.

Typically, you separate Steps in an SFC with Transitions, which are program elements. As an enhancement to the IEC-1131-3 specification, the PC CONTROL software lets you place a Step immediately before or after another Step, at runtime the system inserts the required "dummy" transition for you.

SFC steps can have one or more Actions attached to them. An Action can contain one or more rungs of ladder logic and uses special Action Qualifiers to control the execution of the Action.

From within a single step you can call another entire SFC (the child) for execution—a Macro Step. When the child SFC has completed, program control returns to the macro step that made the call.



Step Properties

To create a Step, you must configure properties about the step in the Edit Step dialog box. This table summarizes the items that may be configured:

Field/Button:	Description:
Motion/Process Commands	Contains the program code for the Step.
Structured Text	Selects the Structured Text programming language.
RS-274D	Selects the RS-274D programming language. (For more information, see appendix E.)
Link File	Links the Step to a file containing the program code
Edit Linked File	Opens the linked file of program code for the Step and displays it in an editor.
Symbol Manager	Accesses the Symbol Manager.
Display (Click on one.)	
Step Name	Displays the Step name within the Step.
Motion/Process Commands	Displays the code (Structured Text or Motion Control) within the Step.
Step Description	Displays the Step description within the Step.
Icon	Displays an icon within the Step.
Width	Sets the width in pixels for the Step description.
Icon...	Accesses the Icon palette.
Remove	Deletes an icon from the Step, if one is assigned.

Using the Step System Symbols

Each SFC Step has two system symbols (.X and .T). You can use these system symbols in any expression, contact or coil instead of a symbol of the same type. Reference the system symbols by typing the Step name followed by a period and the symbol suffix.

Symbol	Definition	Example
X	Boolean Step-is-active Step active symbol X is TRUE when the Step is active and FALSE when the Step is inactive.	STEP1.X refers to the Step active symbol for Step STEP1.
T	Step time. Step time symbol T contains the current elapsed time of the Step in milliseconds. When a Step is inactive, T contains the total elapsed time of the Step. T is set to zero when the Step becomes active.	STEP1.T refers to the Step time symbol for Step STEP1.

About Actions

Actions contain relay ladder logic. Actions are graphically represented as a rectangular box containing the Action's name. This box is connected to the step with a horizontal line. You can associate more than one action to a step.

Actions associated with a step are invoked when the step becomes active. You can specify when an action is executed relative to when the step becomes active by using an action qualifier.

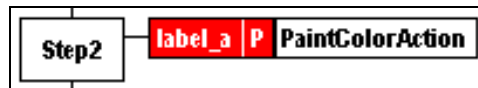
- The Action qualifier determines when the RLL runs relative to the activation of the step, which can be either Structured Text or Motion Control language. You can use an action qualifier with or without a motion qualifier.. For a list of Action qualifiers, see page 4-46.
- Motion qualifier—determines when the RLL runs relative to the execution of the Motion Control code within the step. For a list of Motion qualifiers, see page 4-46.

Using a program label can also affect when an action is executed. The action does not run until the label in the step code is encountered.

The action qualifier is shown as a box containing an abbreviation attached to the right side of the action.

Action Function

In the example below, the Action called PaintColorAction consists of several rungs of RLL that are executed when Step2 becomes active. In this particular example, the RLL execution does not begin until code execution in the Step encounters the Label called label_a. The P code is the Action qualifier and means that the RLL is executed one time, i.e., it is pulsed.



You can associate zero or more Actions with a Step, and you can associate one Action with more than one Step by referencing the Action's name.

The SFC transition coil used in an Action associated with a Step or a Macro Step provides the following program flow controls:

- Associated with a Step—When the SFC transition coil receives power flow, the Structured Text within the Step is canceled, and program execution jumps to the SFC label specified in the SFC transition coil.
- Associated with a Macro Step—When the SFC transition coil receives power flow, the child SFC called by the macro step is canceled, and program execution

in the parent SFC (the SFC with the macro step) jumps to the SFC label specified in the SFC transition coil.

Action Parameters

To create an Action, you must configure Action parameters in the Edit Action dialog box. This table summarizes the parameters.

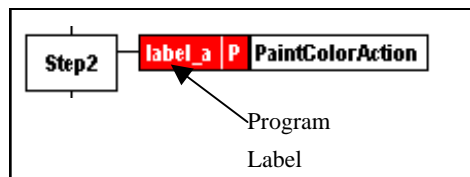
Field/Button	Description
Program Label	(Optional) The RLL code does not begin running until the code in the Step encounters the Label.
Action Qualifier	Specifies an Action qualifier.
Motion Qualifier	Specifies a motion qualifier. Select None for no qualifier. For more information, see “Motion Qualifier.”
Time Duration	(Action qualifier only) Specifies the time duration for Limited and Delay qualifiers. If the Action qualifier does not actually use the time duration, any value entered for this parameter is ignored.
Specify Duration	Accesses the Define Time Duration dialog box.
Action Name	Specifies the name of the Action.

Program Label

If you specify the optional program Label, the RLL code in the action does not begin running until the code in the Step encounters the Label. The Action and the program Label must be in the same SFC. No cross-reference between programs is allowed. If no Label is in the Step with which the Action is associated, then the Program Label parameter is ignored.

The Labels in a Macro Step SFC cannot be referenced from the parent SFC, and the Labels in the parent SFC cannot be referenced by the macro SFC.

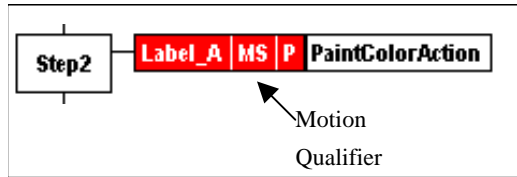
For a Step with Structured Text, the Label consists of a Label name followed by two colons, e.g., LabelA::For a step with Motion Control code, the label is an N followed by a block number, e.g., N45. If you enter a Label, it appears within the Action as shown below.



Motion Qualifiers

Note: Not all motion qualifiers are supported by all motion cards. Refer to the motion card documentation for supported motion qualifiers.

Motion Qualifiers specify motion constraints that must be satisfied before the RLL begins running. If you use a program Label, the motion constraint applies to the motion block following the program Label. Qualifiers appear within the Action as shown below.

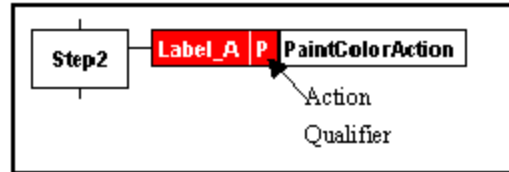


Choose from the following qualifiers. Leave a blank for no qualifier.

If you do not want the RLL to begin running until the:	Use this qualifier:
motion starts	Motion Started (MS)
acceleration profile is complete	Acceleration Complete (AC)
motion reaches the target speed	At Speed (AS)
motion begins the deceleration profile	Deceleration Started (DS)
motion is finished	Motion Complete (MC)
motion is finished and all axes associated with the motion are within the In Position tolerance of the programmed endpoint	In Position (IP)
move command is finished	End of Block (EB)

Action Qualifiers

Action Qualifiers specify constraints on the execution of the RLL code. Qualifiers appear within the Action as shown below.



If after the Step becomes active, you want the	Use this qualifier
RLL to begin running and stop when the Step becomes inactive.	Non Stored (N)
RLL to begin running and continue to run until reset by the Reset qualifier.	Stored (S)
RLL to execute once.	Pulsed (P)
RLL to begin running after a delay* The RLL stops when the Step becomes inactive.	Time Delayed (D)
RLL to begin running and stop when the time limit* expires or the Step becomes inactive.	Time Limited (L)
RLL to begin running after a delay* and continue to run until reset by the Reset qualifier. If another Action qualifier resets the RLL, during the delay, the reset has no effect because the RLL has not yet been stored. If the Step becomes inactive before the delay completes the RLL is never stored and does not run at all.	Delayed and Stored (DS)
RLL to begin running after a delay* and continue to run until reset by the Reset qualifier. If an Action is reset during a delay, then the RLL does not execute.	Stored and Time Delayed (SD)
RLL to begin running and after the specified time* stop. A Reset qualifier is required to reset the RLL. Otherwise, without the reset, the RLL does not run again. If the Step becomes inactive, the RLL continues to run until the duration times out. A Reset qualifier is not required, but one can be used to stop the RLL execution.	Stored and Time Limited (SL)
RLL begins running and stop after the specified time* expires. If the Step becomes inactive, the RLL continues to run until the duration times out. A Reset qualifier is not required, but one can be used to stop the RLL execution.	Pulse Width (PW)

The RLL that was started by the Stored qualifier is terminated by the Reset qualifier (R). You can use the Reset qualifier in another Action that is associated with the same Step or in an Action associated with another Step. The RLL continues to run

between Steps. If the Action is associated with another Step, the Action must have the same name as the Action that is to be reset.

Time Duration

You can enter the duration directly or click on **Specify Duration** and enter time intervals in the dialog box. Refer to the rules and examples below for details on entering time duration.

- If you enter the duration directly, follow the IEC 1131-3 specification:
- T#, TIME#, t#, time#, followed by time in days, hours, minutes, seconds.

Time	Format	Time	Format
14.7 days	T#14.7d	4 seconds	Time#4s
2 minutes 5 seconds	T#2m5s	1 day 29 minutes	t#1d29m
74 minutes*	Time#74m	1 hour 5 seconds 44 milliseconds	T#1h5s44ms

*The IEC 1131-3 specification allows overflow of the most significant unit in a duration.

If you prefer to use the dialog box, enter the time into each field as appropriate.

Note

If you specify a duration for an Action and choose an Action qualifier that is not time dependent, the duration is ignored.

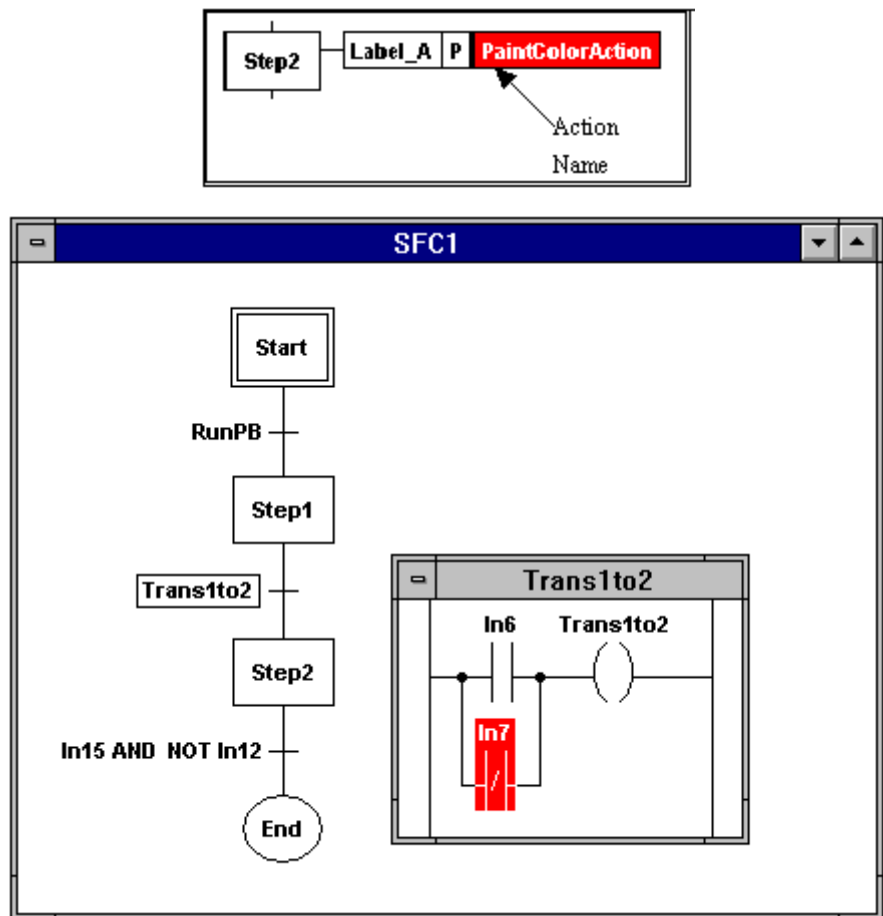
For an Action that has both a program Label and a duration specified, duration does not begin timing down until after the Step code encounters the program Label.

Action Name

The action name is used to identify the name of the action. Use this name if you refer to the Action from another Action, such as resetting an Action that was stored in another Action.

An Action can have the same name as an RLL Transition. However, the RLL logic for Actions and for RLL Transitions is scoped differently. Therefore, using the same name for an Action does not mean that the same RLL logic is executed for the RLL Transition, and vice versa.

The Action name appears within the Action as shown in the following figure.



Action Manager

Use the Action Manager (select Action Manager from the Tools menu) to manage the actions that are attached to SFC steps. The Action Manager displays a list of all actions that in the active SFC file and lets you rename and delete those actions.

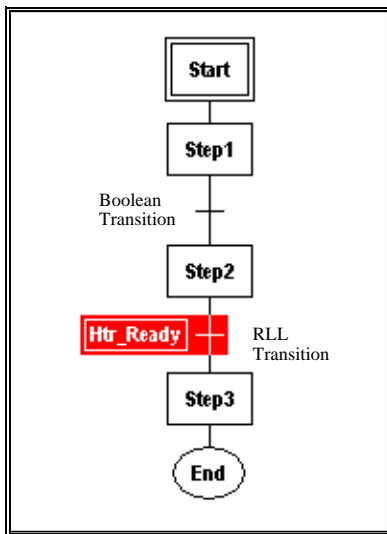
About Transitions

A Transition represents the condition that lets program flow to pass from one or more Steps preceding the Transition to one or more Steps following the Transition along the corresponding directed link. Each transition has an associated transition condition that is the result of the evaluation of a single Boolean expression. When the system evaluates the code of a Transition, the result must be either TRUE or FALSE.

A transition condition can be a:

- **Boolean Transition** - Boolean expression in the Structured Text language. It is represented as an unlabeled horizontal line
- **RLL Transition** - named RLL object containing a single rung with an output coil that has the same name as the transition object. It is represented as a labeled line (RLL Transitions) containing the name of the RLL output coil.

The step that follows a transition cannot execute until the transition before it evaluates as true.



In this figure, program flow has passed the Boolean Transition and Step2, which follows it, and is currently at the RLL Transition.. Until the RLL Transition evaluates to TRUE, Step3 cannot execute.

Program flow into and out of the Transition is through a vertical line extending through the horizontal line.

The IEC 1131-3 standard specifies that a SFC diagram must have a transition between every step, and a step between every transition. As an extension to the standard the SFC editor allows you to place one step immediately after another or one transition after another. However, at runtime the necessary "dummy" steps or "dummy" transitions are inserted automatically.

Transition Parameters

Transition	Parameters
RLL	Transition name RLL Logic
Boolean	Boolean expression containing operators and symbols

About the RLL Transition Manager

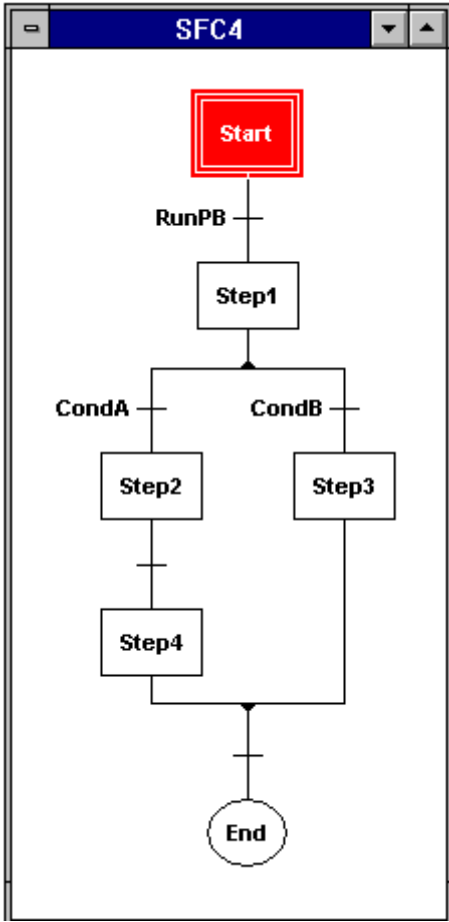
Use the RLL Transition Manager to manage the RLL actions that are embedded in a SFC program. The RLL Transition Manager displays a list of all RLL transitions that are embedded in the active file and lets you rename and delete those RLL transitions

About Divergences

You can control multiple paths in an SFC using divergences. Divergences can be a selected divergence or a simultaneous divergence.

Selected Divergence

A select divergence lets you choose from two or more control paths. Each path begins with a transition condition that determines which control path is activated. At some point in the SFC diagram, all paths within the select diverge must converge into a single path.



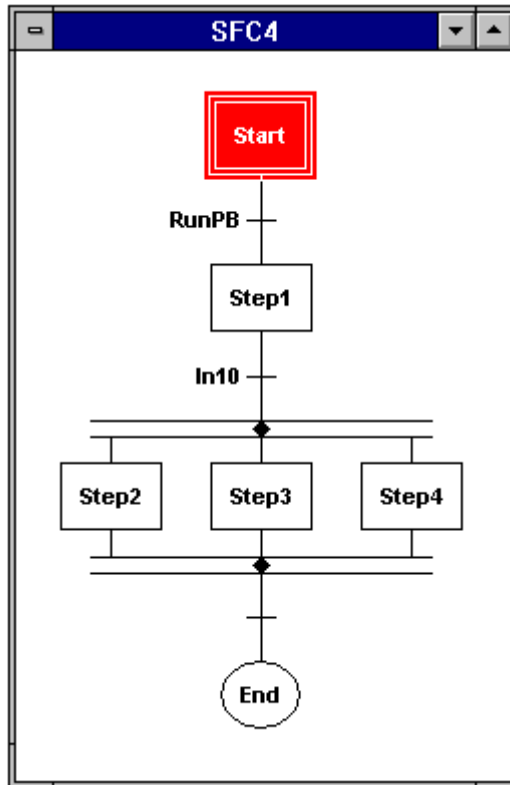
Simultaneous Divergence

A simultaneous divergence lets you execute multiple control paths simultaneously in parallel. All the control paths in the simultaneous divergence are activated as soon as power flow enters the divergence. At some point in the SFC diagram, all paths within the diverge must converge into a single path, but the convergence must wait until all the paths have been executed and all the paths have:

- been executed
- arrived at the point of simultaneous convergence.

The simultaneous diverge is represented as single control path entering at the top and a double horizontal line with two or more control paths exiting from below.

Simultaneous convergence is represented as two or more control paths at the top, a double horizontal line, and a single control path exiting at the bottom.



To help ensure proper convergence, do not use Labels to jump:

- outside a simultaneous divergence
- into a simultaneous divergence
- to another path within a Simultaneous Divergence

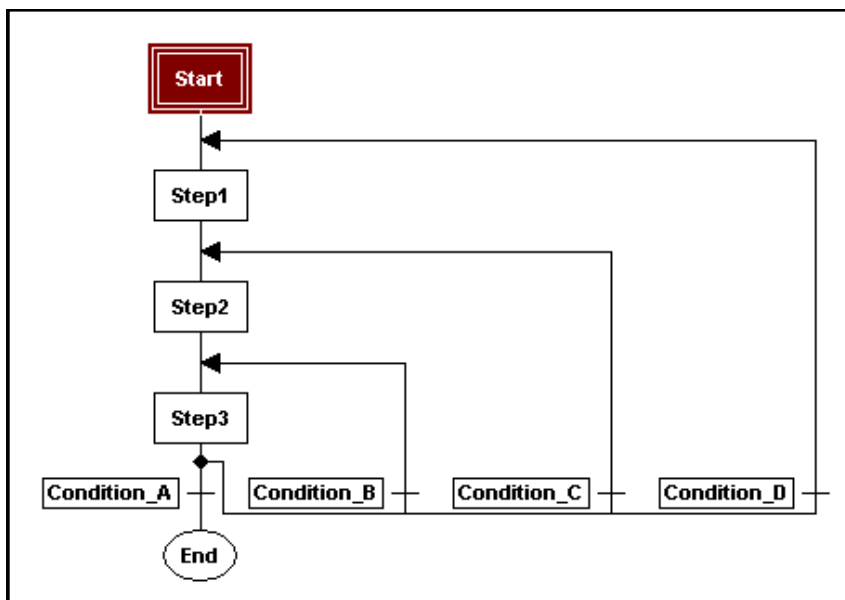
About Program Flow Control Features

You can use Control Loops and Jump and Label constructs to control flow within an SFC diagram.

Control Loops

In an SFC, program flow usually proceeds from top to bottom. Control loops let you go back to a previous location to repeat a Series of steps. A control loop consists of two transitions: one to continue in the downward direction and one on a directed link that loops back in the upward direction. An arrow at the top of the control loop indicates the point at which power flow re-enters the control path.

In the figure below, program flow continues to the End when Condition_A is TRUE. When Condition_B is TRUE and Condition_A is FALSE, program flow returns to the point above Step3. When Condition_C is TRUE and Condition_A and Condition_B are FALSE, program flow returns to the point above Step2. When Condition_D is TRUE and Condition_A, Condition_B and Condition_C are FALSE, program flow returns to the point above Step1.



With multiple branches, logic evaluation takes place from left to right. If all Transitions are FALSE, program flow halts until one Transition becomes TRUE.

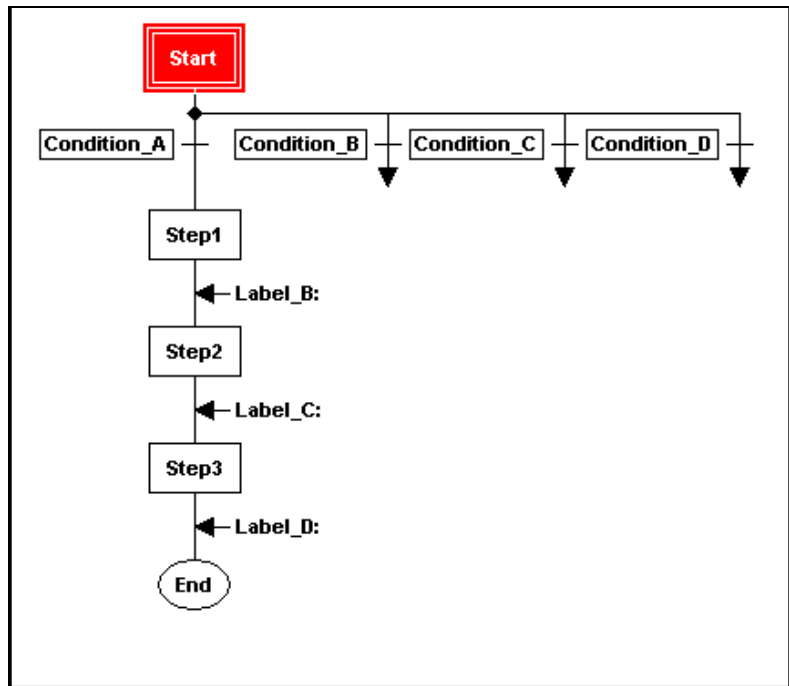
You can define the Transitions for the Loop by either of the following methods.

- A Boolean Transition consisting of a Boolean expression that is composed in Structured Text.
- An RLL Transition consisting of a single RLL rung with an output coil having the same name as the Transition itself.

Jump and Label

You can transfer flow to any part of an SFC using a Jump and Label construct. The Jump element is represented by two transitions: one to continue downward and one to transfer to a label identifier. The label element is represented by a directed arc to the left that identifies the point where power flow re-enters the control path and a label identifier followed by a colon.

In the following figure, program flow continues to Step1 when Condition_A is TRUE. When Condition_B is TRUE and Condition_A is FALSE, program flow jumps to Label_B, bypassing Step1. When Condition_C is TRUE and Condition_A and Condition_B are FALSE, program flow jumps to Label_C, bypassing Step1 and Step2.



With multiple branches, logic evaluation takes place from left to right. If all Transitions are FALSE, program flow halts until one Transition becomes TRUE.

You can define the Transitions for the Jump by either of the following methods.

- A Boolean Transition consisting of a Boolean expression that is composed in Structured Text.
- An RLL Transition consisting of a single RLL rung with an output coil having the same name as the Transition itself.

Jump and Label Parameters

Field	Description
Jump Target Label	Specifies Label to which program flow is transferred.
Label Name	Specifies point in SFC where program flow resumes.

Labels must start with an alphabetical character and be followed by any alphanumeric characters and/or an underscore.

How SFCs are Solved

Program flow in an SFC moves from top to bottom. The code within each Step is executed. When the code has completed, program flow moves to the next program element.

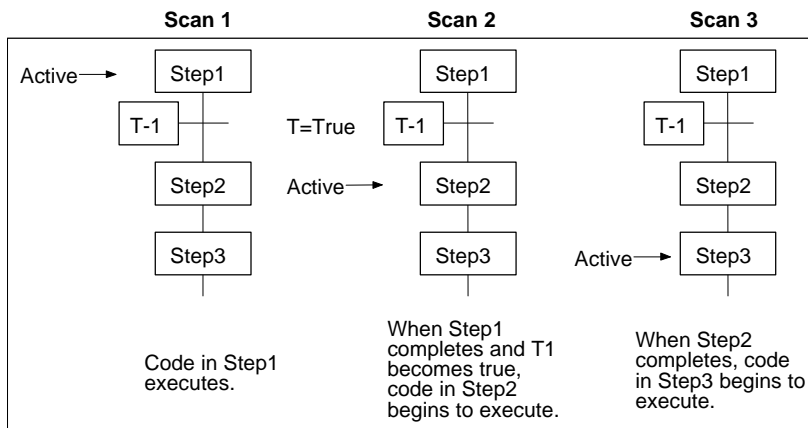
If the next element is a:	Then:
Step	the code within that step is executed
Transition	program flow continues when the transition becomes true

Any step in an SFC takes a minimum of two I/O scans to complete. In the first scan, any actions attached to the step are evaluated. If there are no looping structures (i.e. FOR, WHILE, REPEAT) any Structured Text logic is solved to completion. The transition is tested after all the logic has been solved (in the second scan).

If looping occurs in a Structured Text program, the program is solved to the end and loops back at the start of the next I/O scan. A transition is not tested until the Structured Text has been solved to completion. You can use the Structured Text constructs END_FOR_NOWAIT and END_WHILE_NOWAIT to finish looping in one I/O scan.

Even though the SFC editor lets you place one step immediately after another, each step still takes a **minimum of two I/O scans** to complete, because parsing the program creates “dummy” transitions between the steps. These transitions are always evaluated true. These transitions are required to be there per the IEC 1131-3 standard. The SFC editor helps reduce your programming effort by automatically including these transitions in the parsed program.

In the following example, one step follows another. Program flow still moves from top to bottom, and execution of a program element does not begin until the preceding element has completed. After the first transition becomes true, Step2 becomes active. After the Step2 logic is complete Step3 becomes active.



The software lets you execute multiple programs of multiple types. For example, you can run two RLL program at the same time as three SFC programs. You can coordinate program execution through global symbols, which are recognized by all program types.

How Transitions are Evaluated

All Structured Text or RS-274D logic within a Step must be completed before the system evaluates a Transition. This is a further extension to the IEC-1131-3 specification, which only requires all preceding Steps to be active before a Transition can be evaluated.

Transitions can follow transitions without steps in between. Once a transition condition is satisfied, the transition is disabled, and next SFC element, step or transition, is activated. At runtime a "dummy" step is inserted (per the IEC standard) between two consecutive transitions. The dummy step performs no logic however it takes two I/O scans for the dummy step to activate and deactivate, just like a normal step.

Evaluation of a transition occurs as follows:

For this transition:	The transition becomes true when:
RLL transition	Power flow on the rung reaches the output coil and turn the coil on.
Boolean transitions	The Boolean expression resolves to true.

Transitions must be evaluated as true before program flow can continue to the next step.

If the transition is:	Then:
True	At the next I/O scan, the RLL associated with the action is solved with power off to turn off outputs. Then at the subsequent I/O scan, power flow activates the next step.
False	The step remains active and any RLL logic is solved. As long as the step is active, any RLL logic is solved; however, Structured Text logic is solved only once and at the first I/O scan.

If a transition is false and remains false, the system does not re-execute the Structured Text or motion code in the steps that precede the transition. However, RLL logic is re-executed. Program flow remains at the transition until the transition becomes true.

Using Simultaneous Divergences

When creating simultaneous divergences:

- Do not reference the same symbol as outputs in different paths of the divergence.
- Do not call the same child SFC from Macro Steps in different paths of the divergence.

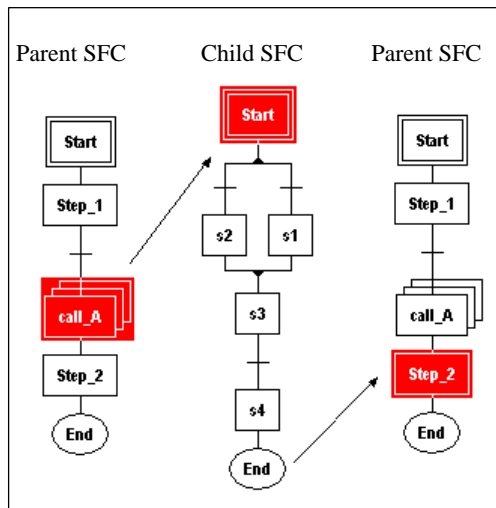
To help ensure proper convergence, do not use Labels to jump:

- outside a simultaneous divergence
- into a simultaneous divergence
- to another path within a Simultaneous Divergence

Using Macro Steps

Macro Steps call one SFC for execution from a Step in another SFC. Program flow transfers to the SFC that was called (child SFC). When the child SFC has completed execution, program flow returns to the parent SFC and resumes after the Macro Step.

In the following figure, call_A is the Macro Step in the parent SFC that calls the child SFC for execution. When the child SFC completes execution, program flow resumes at Step_2 in the parent SFC.



Representation of a Macro Step is similar to a Step, multiple boxes containing an identifier. Program flow into and out of the Macro Step is through a vertical line entering the top, and another line exiting from the bottom.

You can use another program element, called an Action to help coordinate the execution of code within a Macro Step with other program code.

If a local symbol is defined in a parent SFC, the child SFC can see the local symbol. However, you cannot see this local symbol when viewing the Symbol Manager for the child SFC.

Extensions to IEC 1131-3

PC Control includes several optional extensions to the IEC-1131-3 standard Ladder Diagrams and Sequential Function Charts.

Extensions to RLL

- Output Coils can be placed anywhere on a rung.
 - They store the partial Boolean result evaluated up to that point.
 - They pass power on to the next element to the right.
- "OR" branches that do not contain any logical elements are acceptable.
 - They can be used to "shunt" around a block of logic without deleting it.
 - They generate compiler warnings that signal possible omission of elements.

Extensions to SFC

- Step boxes can include RS-274D or Structured Text commands. These commands within a step box will be executed sequentially. The execution of a step is not completed until all the commands within a step are completed. The transition conditions following a step are not evaluated until the contents of the step have been executed.
- Steps can be represented by a box containing the step name identifier, a box containing the command list with the step, or an Icon which consists of a bit mapped picture and up to two lines of text.
- An Icon Palette contains a collection of predefined steps that consists of an Icon and a list of commands within the step. These predefined steps can be used for library or canned routines.
- Files may be marked for inclusion into the command list within a step box. Multiple files can be included. Program commands may be intermixed with the file include statements.
- Steps can follow steps without a transition in between. As soon as the contents of a Step have been executed and no transition follows, the step is deactivated, and the next step is activated. At runtime a "dummy" transition is inserted (per the

IEC standard) between two consecutive steps. The dummy transitions is always evaluated true.

- Transitions can follow transitions without steps in between. Once a transition condition is satisfied, the transition is disabled, and next SFC element, step or transition, is activated. At runtime a "dummy" step is inserted (per the IEC standard) between two consecutive transitions. The dummy step performs no logic however it takes two I/O scans for the dummy step to activate and deactivate, just like a normal step.
- A Transition Coil (TRANS) has been added to the Action logic elements that will terminate execution of any commands within a step, stop any motion in progress, deactivate the step, and cause an immediate transition to a label with the same identifier as the transition coil.
- Macro Step boxes may be used to include an entire SFC diagram within a SFC Macro Step. When the Macro Step is activated, the included SFC diagram will begin execution at the Start step. When the included SFC diagram executes the End step, the Macro Step will be complete.
- Actions can be attached to Macro Steps and will be executed as long as the Macro Step is active.

Creating Sequential Function Charts

Creating an SFC Program

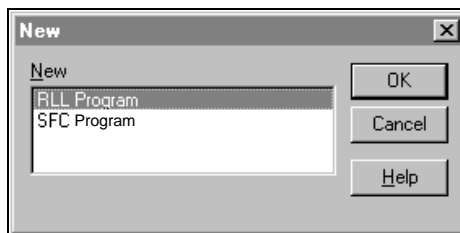
After starting the **Program Editor**, you can create a new SFC program or edit an existing one.

To create a new SFC program:

1. Click on the *New File* on the *Program Editor* tool bar.



The new program menu appears.



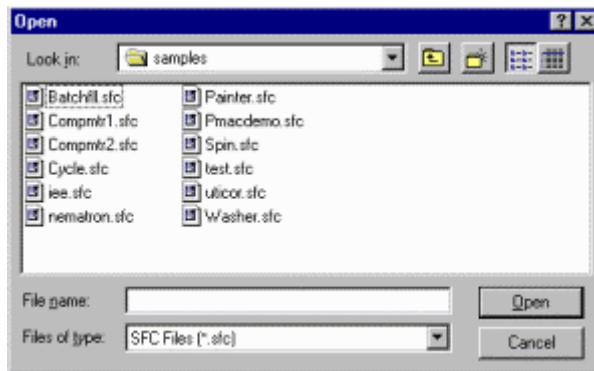
2. Select *SFC Program* and click on *OK*.

A new SFC file appears, showing a starting Step and an end Step.

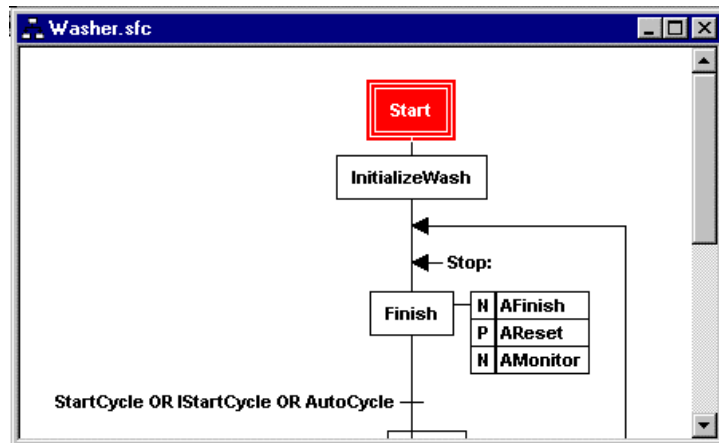


To edit an existing SFC program:

1. Click on *File Open* tool on *Program Editor tool* bar. The list of existing programs appears.



2. Click on the program to open. You may need to select the SFC program type in the **Files of Type** field first. The SFC program that you selected appears.















3. Begin editing the program elements.

Using the SFC Tool and Menu Bar

The SFC toolbar contains all the tools that you need to create an SFC program.



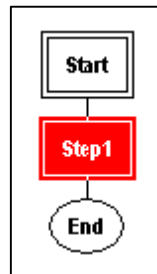
Icon	Tool bar Option	Function
	—	Allows you to select program elements.
	<i>Insert/Step</i>	Adds a Step to the program.
	<i>Insert/Macro Step</i>	Adds a Macro Step to the program.
	<i>Insert/Action</i>	Adds an Action to the program.
	<i>Insert/Transition</i>	Adds a Transition to the program.
	<i>Insert/Label</i>	Adds a Label to the program.
	<i>Insert/Jump</i>	Adds a Jump to the program.
	<i>Insert/Loop</i>	Adds a Loop to the program.
	<i>Insert/Select Diverge</i>	Adds a selected Divergence to the program.
	<i>Insert/Simultaneous Diverge</i>	Adds a Simultaneous Divergence to the program
	<i>Insert/ New App Icon...</i>	Adds a predefined program Step from the library to the program
	<i>Insert/Comment</i>	Allows you to add comments to the program.

Working with Steps

A Step represents a condition in which the behavior of the system follows a set of rules defined by the Actions and functions associated with the Step. After adding a step to a program, you must configure it.

Adding a Step

1. Click on the *Step Tool* on the SFC toolbar. The cursor changes into the Step cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the new Step and click. The new Step appears in the program at the location you specified.




3. Configure the step.

Configuring a Step

To configure a step, you must:

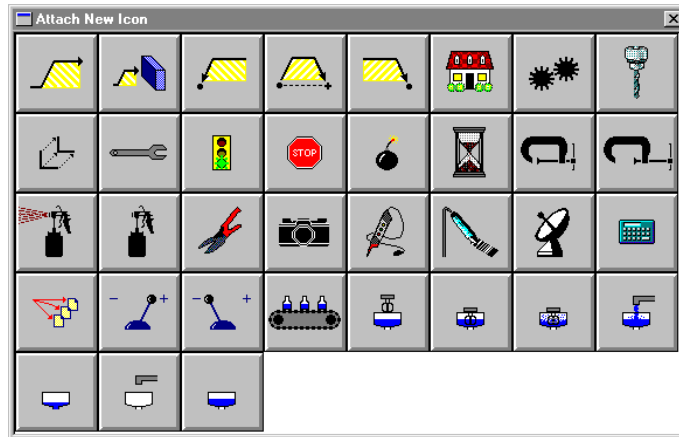
- Specify the programming language you want to use for the Step
- Select what information you want to display in the Step. (i.e. Step Name, Step Description, Process Commands, or Icon)
- Enter program code for the Step or link a file containing the program code to the Step.

1. Click on the *Select Tool*  and then double click on the Step. The *Edit Step* dialog box appears.
2. Enter the appropriate information for configuring and programming the Step, using the information in the table below. Then click on **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog box.

To:	Do This:
Select the RS-274D programming language	Click RS-274D.
Select the Structured Text programming language.	Click Structured Text.
Add program code for the Step.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click on Process Commands. 2. Enter the program code, or link a file.
Link the Step to a file containing the program code	Click Link File.
Open the linked file containing program code for the Step and display it in an editor.	Click Edit Linked File.
Access the Symbol Manager.	Click Symbol Manager Display.
Display the Step name within the Step.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Step Name. 2. Type a Step name in the edit box.
Display the code (motion control or Structured Text) within the Step.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. ClickMotion/Process Commands. 2. Enter the code or link a file. <p>All the programming code for the Step appears within the Step. For a long series of commands, this can enlarge the size of the Step significantly.</p>
Display the Step description within the Step.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Step Description. 2. Click Edit Description. 3. Enter a Step Description in the Edit Description box.
Set the width in pixels for the Step description.	In the Width field, enter the number of pixels for the Step description.
Display an icon within the Step.	Click Icon.
Access the Application Icon palette.	Click Icon. . . .
Delete an icon from the Step, if one is assigned.	Click Remove.

Displaying a Step as an Icon

1. Edit a Step.
2. From the Edit Step dialog box, click Icon. The Icon palette appears:



3. From the Icon Palette, click on the icon and enter a title when the system prompts you for it.
4. Click OK to return to the Edit Step dialog box. After you finish editing the Step, the icon and title appear within the Step box.

Adding an Application Icon Step

An Application Icon Step is a Step containing a code template, which is predefined for a specific function, and an icon, which is appropriate for the function. PC Control software provides a library of several Steps or you can create your own, that can be used within an SFC.

To add an Application Icon Step

1. Access the Application Icons by clicking on the *Icon Tool* on the SFC toolbar.
2. Drop the Application Icon into the SFC.
3. After placing an Application Icon Step into an SFC, edit it in the same way as you edit a normal Step.

Since the code is a template, you need to modify the code to suit your application. You can also make other changes to the Step options.

Once you customize an Application Icon Step, you can add this customized Step to the library. Then whenever you need to use a copy of the customized Step within an SFC, access it from the library.


Working with Transitions

A Transition is a graphical element in the SFC programming language that represents a single Boolean condition that must be satisfied before program execution continues.

Adding an RLL Transition

1. Click *Edit* on the menu bar and if a check is next to *Boolean Transition* deselect it by clicking.
2. Click on the *Transition Tool* on the SFC toolbar. The cursor changes into the Transition cursor.
3. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the new Transition and click. The new Transition appears in the program at the location you specified.


Editing an RLL Transition

1. Click the *Select Tool*  and double click on the Transition. The *Select RLL Transition Logic* dialog box appears.
2. Enter a name for the Transition and click *OK*.
 - An RLL Transition can have the same name as an Action. However, the RLL logic for Transitions and for Actions is scoped differently. Therefore, using the same name for a Transition does not mean that the same RLL logic is executed for the Action, and vice versa.
 - A window appears containing an RLL rung with a coil of the same name as the Transition.
3. Add the RLL elements to the rung through the RLL editor, using the same rules for contacts, coils, jumps, etc.
4. Save your work by clicking on the *Control Menu* box and selecting *Close*.

Adding a Boolean Transition

1. Click *Edit* on the menu bar and place a check next to *Boolean Transition* by clicking.
2. Click on the *Transition Tool* on the SFC toolbar. The cursor changes into the Transition cursor.
3. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the new Transition and click. The new Transition appears in the program at the location you specified.

Editing a Boolean Transition

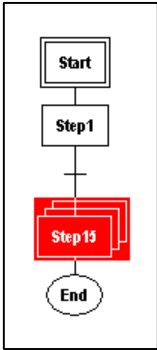
1. To edit the Transition, click on the *Select Tool*  and then double click on the Transition. The *Edit Transition Logic* dialog box appears.
2. Enter the Boolean code for the Transition. You can type it in directly or click on the operator buttons and select from symbols that have been defined.
3. Click on *OK* to save your work and close the dialog box.
4. You can access the Symbol Manager to configure local variables and to see a list of all configured variables that you can use in the Boolean expression.

Working with Macro Steps


A Macro Step provides a means of calling another SFC from the currently executing SFC.

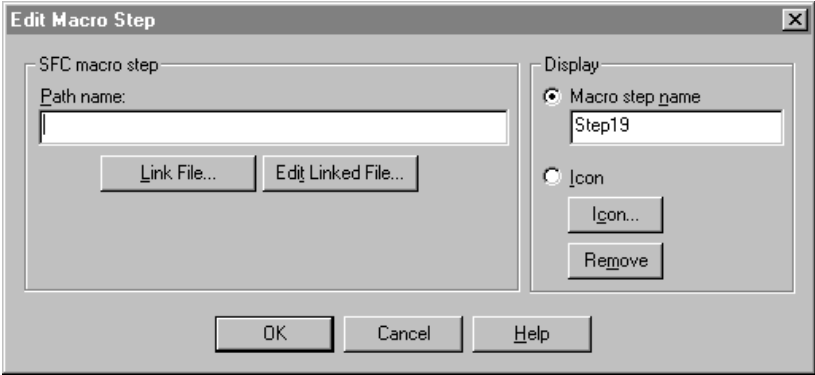
Adding a Macro Step

1. Click on the *Macro Step Tool* on the SFC menu bar. The cursor changes into the *Macro Step Tool* cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the new Macro Step and click. The new Macro Step appears in the program at the location you specified.



Configuring a Macro Step

1. Click on the *Select Tool*  and then double click on the Macro Step. The **Edit Macro Step** dialog box appears.



2. Enter the appropriate information for configuring the Macro Step.
3. Click *OK* to save your changes and close the dialog box.

Working with Actions

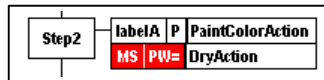
An Action consists of one or more sections of RLL code that are associated with a Step or a Macro Step. The system executes an Action when its associated Step becomes active.

Adding an Action

1. Click on the *Action Tool* on the SFC menu bar. The cursor changes into the Action Tool cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location in the program (either on top of a Step or on top of a Macro Step) where you want to place the new Action and click. The new Action appears in the program at the location you specified.



3. You can add more than one Action to a Step or Macro Step by placing the cursor on top of an existing Action.



Configuring an Action

Use the Edit Action Association dialog box to configure an Action.


The 'Edit Action Association' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Program label:
- Motion qualifier:
- Action qualifier:
- Time duration:
- Action name:

Buttons at the bottom:

Field/Button	Description
Program Label	(Optional) Action does not execute until Label in the Step code is encountered. The Action and the program Label must be in the same SFC. No cross referencing between programs is allowed. The Labels in a Macro Step SFC cannot be referenced from the parent SFC, and the Labels in the parent SFC cannot be referenced by the macro SFC. If no Label is in the Step with which the Action is associated, then the Program Label parameter is ignored.
Action Qualifier	Specifies an Action qualifier.
Time Duration	(Action qualifier only) Specifies the time duration for Limited and Delay qualifiers. If the Action qualifier does not actually use the time duration, any value entered for this parameter is ignored.
Specify Duration	Accesses the Define Time Duration dialog box.
Action Name	Specifies the name of the Action.

Editing an Action

1. Click on the *Select Tool*  and then double click on the Action. The **Edit Action Association** dialog box appears. Enter the information to configure the Action
2. Click on *OK* to save your changes. The system closes the dialog box and then displays an empty rung of RLL ready for editing.
3. Enter the RLL code.


Editing the RLL of an Action

4. Click on the *Select Tool* .
5. Double click on the right half of the Action as shown.



The system displays the RLL code for the Action. Enter the RLL code.

Editing a Configuration Parameter of an Action

1. Click on the *Select Tool* .
2. Double click on the left half of the Action as shown. The system displays the **Edit Action Association** dialog box for the Action.



3. Enter the information for configuring the Action.
4. Click *OK* to save your changes.

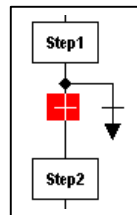
Adding SFC Program Flow Controls

You can control program flow with Jumps, Loops and Divergences.

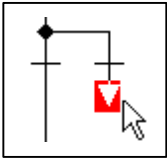
Adding a Jump

A Jump-to-Label combination is available that allows SFC execution to transfer to any location indicated by a label element.

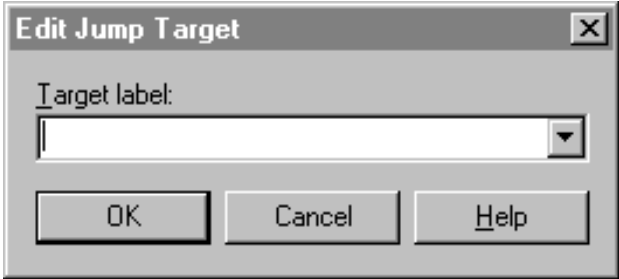
1. Click *Edit* on the menu bar and select *Boolean Transition*.
2. Click the *Jump Tool* on the SFC menu bar. The cursor changes into the Jump Tool cursor.
3. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the new Jump and click. The new Jump and two Transitions appear in the program at the location you specified.



4. To edit the Jump, click on the *Select Tool*  and then double click on the arrow head of the Jump.



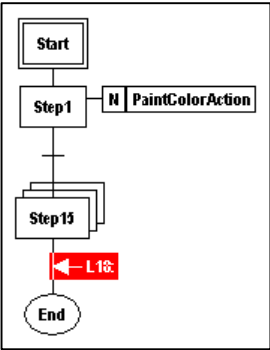
The **Edit Jump Target** dialog box appears.




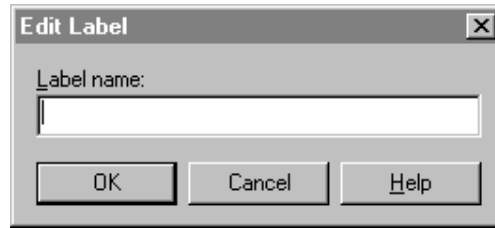
5. Enter the label to which the Jump transfers program flow. Then click *OK* to save your changes and close the dialog box.
6. Edit the two Transitions.

Adding a Label

1. Click on the *Label Tool* on the SFC menu bar. The cursor changes into the Label Tool cursor .
2. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the new label and click. The new label appears in the program at the location you specified.



3. Click on the *Select Tool*  to edit and then double click on the label. The **Edit Label** dialog box appears.




4. Enter a meaningful label and click *OK* to save your changes and close the dialog box.

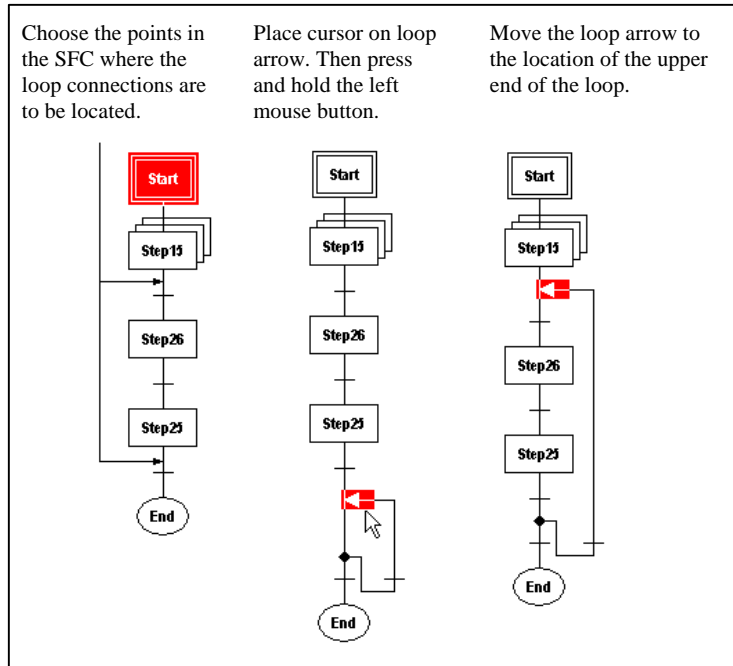
Adding a Loop



A loop allows the SFC program execution to go back to a preceding location in the program in order to repeat a series of Steps.

1. Click on the *Loop Tool* on the SFC menu bar. The cursor changes into the Loop Tool cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the lower end of the loop and click. The loop appears in the program at the location you specified.
3. Click on the *Select Tool*  and then place the cursor over the loop arrow.

4. Press and hold the left mouse button and move the loop arrow to the point where the upper end of the loop is to be located.



5. Edit the loop Transitions.

Moving a Loop

Dragging the top of a loop:

1. Select the selector tool from the *RLL Tool Bar* or the *SFC Tool Bar*.
2. Move the cursor over the loop top arrow. Press and hold the left mouse button. Drag the loop arrow to the desired location (the cursor will change to a loop arrow cursor).
3. Release the left mouse button to drop the loop arrow at the desired location. To cancel the drag operation press the <ESCAPE> key.

If the target location for the loop arrow is:	Then:
On the same diverge branch and is not below the loop transition to which this loop arrow is tied Not inside of any embedded loop Not outside of any nested loops	The dragged loop arrow is located at the drop position, and the loop transition remains in its current position.
On a different diverge Below the loop transition to which this loop arrow is tied Or outside of a nested loop	The entire loop and all of its contents both are moved to the target position.
Inside of an embedded loop	The drag fails

Dragging the bottom of the loop:

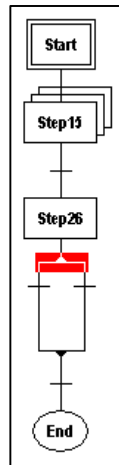
1. Move the cursor over the loop transition. Press and hold the left mouse button. Drag the loop transition to the desired location (the cursor will change to a loop transition cursor).
 2. Release the left mouse button to drop the loop transition at the desired location.
- To cancel the drag operation press the <ESCAPE> key.

If the target location for the loop transition is:	Then:
on the same diverge branch and is not above any of the loop arrows tied to the loop transition not inside of any embedded loops not outside of any nested loops	The dragged loop transition is located at the drop position, and the loop transition remains in its current position.
on a different diverge above any of the loop arrows tied to the loop transition or outside of a nested branch	The entire loop and all of its contents is moved to the target position.
inside of an embedded loop	The drag fails, and the loop returns to its previous position.

Adding a Select Divergence

A Select Divergence allows the SFC program execution to follow one of two or more control paths.

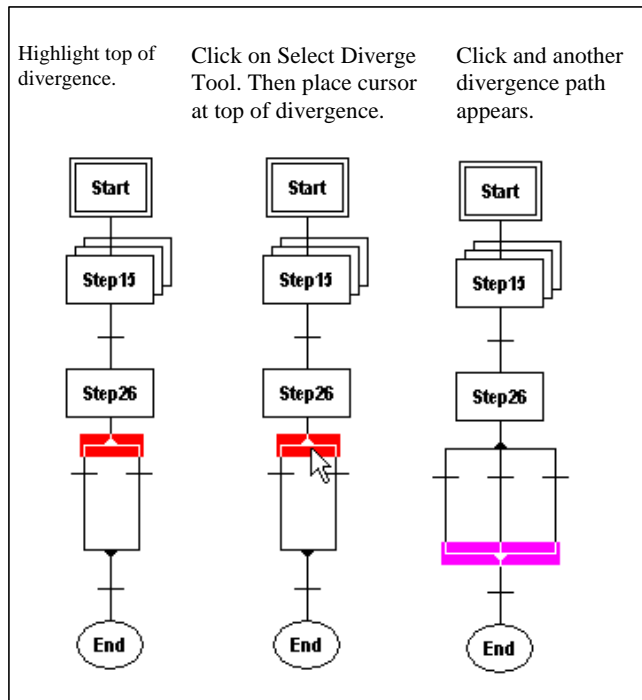
1. Click *Edit* on the menu bar and select *Boolean Transition* for the type of transitions to use with the divergence: RLL or Boolean.
2. Click on the *Select Diverge Tool* on the SFC menu bar. The cursor changes into the Select Divergence Tool cursor.
3. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the Select Divergence and click. The Select Divergence appears in the program at the location you specified.



4. Edit the two transitions.

To Add another path:

1. Highlight the top of the Select Divergence before adding another Select Divergence.
2. Locate the cursor at the top of the Divergence and click. Another divergence path appears.



To Delete a Path:

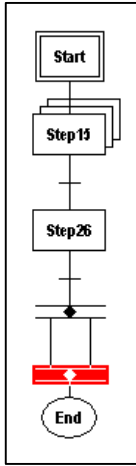
1. Highlight the path you want to delete.

2. Click the Cut tool .

Adding a Simultaneous Divergence

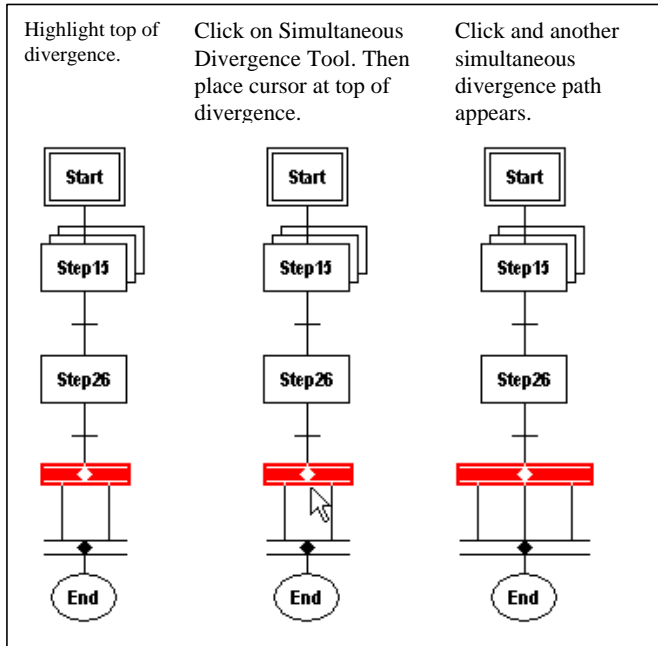
A Simultaneous Divergence allows the SFC program execution to follow two or more control paths. Execution along each path must be completed for program execution to proceed beyond the Simultaneous Divergence.

1. Click on the *Simultaneous Divergence Tool* on the SFC menu bar. The cursor changes into the Simultaneous Divergence Tool cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the Simultaneous Divergence and click. The Simultaneous Divergence appears in the program at the location you specified.



To Add Another Path:

1. Highlight the top of the Simultaneous Divergence before adding another.
2. Locate the cursor at the top of the Simultaneous Divergence and click. Another divergence path appears.



To Delete a Path:

1. Highlight the path you want to delete.

2. Click the *Cut tool* .

To Delete an entire Simultaneous Divergence:

1. Highlight either the top or the bottom of the divergence
2. Click on the *Cut Tool*.

Guidelines for Using Simultaneous Divergence

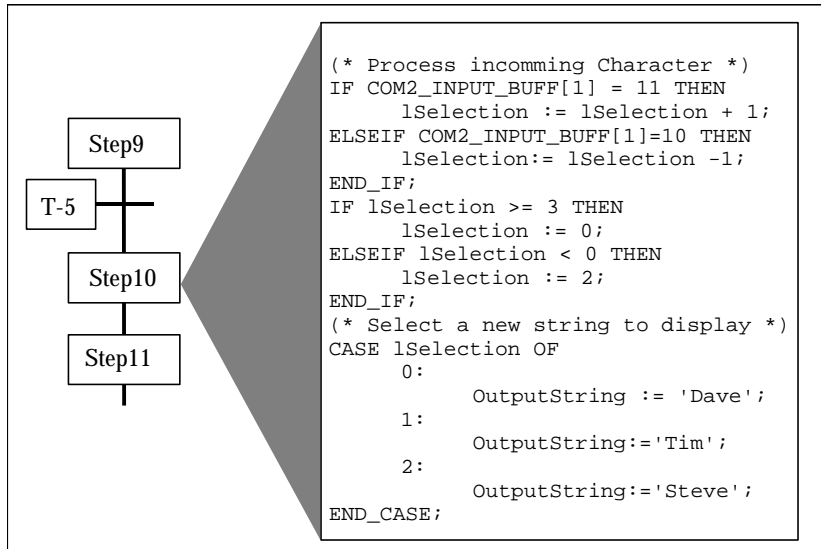
Observe the following guidelines when you create a Simultaneous Divergence.

To ensure that proper convergence, do not use Labels in the following ways:

- To jump outside a Simultaneous Divergence.
- To jump into a Simultaneous Divergence.
- To jump to another path within a Simultaneous Divergence.

Integrating Structured Text into an SFC

The Structured Text programming language is an IEC-1131-3 compliant set of text-based instructions that is designed for the easy creation of mathematical and logical operations. When you create the application code for an SFC step, you can choose to use Structured Text code, as illustrated below. When the SFC is executed, the Structured Text code that you incorporate within each step is processed as the step becomes active.



As you design the program, you need to keep these points in mind.

- The body of the Structured Text program code itself consists of expressions, statements, and functions. Valid Structured Text operators and data types are described under the "Structured Text Expressions" section.
- Make any Symbol declarations that you need in the program from the Symbol Manager.
- You can initialize symbols through one or more actions, which you can associate with the step.
- Be sure to avoid using any of the PC Control keywords.

Documenting an SFC Program

Adding Program Comments



A program comment can consist of any meaningful description that you want to display adjacent to a program element. You can choose whether the system displays the comments or hides them.

1. Click on the *Comment Tool* on the SFC menu bar. The cursor changes into the Program Comment Tool cursor.
2. Move the cursor to the location in the program where you want to place the comment and click. The *Program Comments* dialog box appears.
3. Enter the comment and click on *OK*. The comment appears in the program at the location you specified.

Editing Program Comments

1. Double click on the comment you want to edit. The **Program Comments** dialog box appears.
2. Edit the comment as desired.

Viewing a Comment

Click *View* and select *Program Comments* or click the view comments button on the editor tool bar.

To deactivate the view comments mode:

Click *View* and select *Program Comments* or press the view comments button again.

Note

The view comments mode is activated and deactivated for all files.

When the view comments mode has been activated the view menu will display a check mark next to the Program Comments command and the edit tool bar will display the view comments button as depressed.

Section 4: Structured Text Programming

Overview

The Structured Text programming language is an IEC 1131-3 textual programming language. It is convenient for those who have experience with structured BASIC, Pascal, C or other high-level programming languages.

You use the Structured Text editor to create stand-alone Structured Text programs. The Structured Text editor features typical text-editing functions such as cut, copy, and paste, find, and replace. It also has tools and commands to automatically insert statement constructs such as IF and CASE selections statements and FOR, REPEAT, and WHILE loops.

You can also incorporate Structured Text commands into an SFC step. A patented extension to the SFC language allows the integration of Structured Text into an SFC step. When you create the application code for an SFC step, you can choose to use Structured Text code. When the SFC is executed, the Structured Text code that you incorporate within each step is processed as the step becomes active. Except for certain functions, the stand-alone and SFC step Structured Text editors operate the same.

This section provides information on using the Structured Text Editor. It is assumed that you are familiar with general Program Editor operation and have some familiarity with the Structured Text language.

Note

Stand-alone Structured Text programs run once and exit.

Opening a Structured Text Document

To open an existing document, select *Open Editor* from the Program Editor *File* menu and locate the document using the *Open* dialog box that appears.

To open a new document, Select *New Editor* from the Program Editor *File* menu and choose *Structured Text Document* from the *New* dialog box that appears.

Editing Structured Text in an SFC Step

To edit Structured Text in an existing SFC step, double-click on the step or select the step and choose *Edit Element* from the *Edit* menu or *Edit ST or Macro Step* from the context menu. Make sure that the *Step Properties* is set to *Structured Text*.

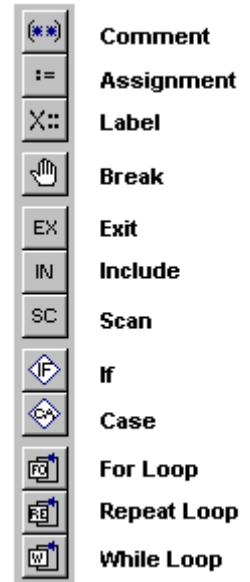
Entering Statements

Manual Entry

Statements can be entered by typing in the statement or function call and associated parameters. Be sure to review the syntax of statements in “Language Overview” and refer to the function call syntax in “Language Reference.”

Accessory Bar

The accessory bar shows commands in graphic form. It is an alternative method of entering statements. The accessory bar appears only when enabled by toggling *Accessory Bar* on the *View* menu. The following figure shows the accessory bar functions. The floating accessory bar can be undocked and positioned at the user’s convenience.



Insert ST Statements Menu

When the Structured Text editor is active, the Program Editor *Edit* menu has an *Insert ST Statements* item that lists Structured Text statements. Select the statement you need and it will automatically be entered at the cursor position in the proper syntax. Replace the any parameters and expressions as needed. Optional parts of the statement should be removed if they will not be used.

Insert ST Functions Menu

When the Structured Text editor is active, the Program Editor *Edit* menu has an *Insert ST Function Calls* item that lists standard functions that can be used with in the Structured Text language. Select the function you need and it will automatically be entered at the cursor position with the correct syntax. Replace any parameters with ones you have defined in the Symbol Manager.

Refer to “Language Overview” for more information on using functions and function blocks in the Structured Text language.

Editing Structured Text

The Structured Text editor supports the common editor functions such as cut, copy, and paste, and find and replace. These commands are found on the *Edit* and context menu.

Language Overview

Expressions

An expression is defined as a combination of operators (mathematical, logical, relational) and operands (constants, symbols, literal values, other expressions) that can be evaluated, yielding a result in one of the supported data types such as integer, real number, and so on.

Operators

The table below lists the operators that you can use within an expression. The order of precedence determines the sequence in which they are executed within the expression. The operator with the highest precedence is applied first, followed by the operator with the next highest precedence. Operators of equal precedence are evaluated left to right.

Operator	Symbol	Precedence
Structure Index	.	1 (Highest)
Array Index	[]	1
Pointer Reference	&	2
Pointer Dereference	*	2
Parenthesis	()	3
Function Evaluation	Identifier (argument list) e.g., LN (A), ABS (X)	3
Exponentiation	** , POW	4
Negate	-	5
Complement	NOT	5
Multiply	*	6
Divide	/	6
Modulo	MOD	6
Add	+	7
Subtract	-	7
Comparison	<, >, <=, >=	8
Equality	=	9
Inequality	<>	9
Boolean/Bitwise AND	AND	10
Boolean/Bitwise Exclusive OR	XOR	11
Boolean/Bitwise OR	OR	12 (Lowest)

These symbols have the following functions.

- := assigns an expression to a symbol
- ; required to designate the end of a statement
- [] used for array indexing where the array index is an integer. For example, this sets the i^{th} element of an array to the value $j+10$: `intarray[i] = j + 10;`
- :: used to designate a label. For example, this specifies a label: `spray_on::`. Labels must be followed by a statement on the same line.
- (* *) designates a comment. For example, `(*This is a comment.*)`

Pointer Operators

Warning

Pointers should be used by experts only. Misuse can result in unpredictable operation and great difficulty in debugging.

Structured Text has two pointer operators: the pointer reference `&` operator and the pointer dereference `*` operator. These operators are used in indirect addressing operations. Information for advanced users on the use of pointers is provided in Appendix E.

Structured Text Syntax

If you use the built-in editor tools (ST accessory bar and insert menus) to insert Structured Text statements and functions, the correct syntax is automatically entered for you. Keywords appear in all upper case, user-replaceable expressions and parameters appear in mixed case, and options appear in brackets []. Refer to the **Language Reference** for more information on using the Structured Text language, functions, and function blocks.

Notes:

- Structured Text statements must end in a semi-colon (;).
- Structured Text symbols must be declared in the Symbol Manager.

Assignment Statement

The assignment statement replaces the value of a variable with the result of evaluating an expression (of the same data type).

Format

```
Variable := Expression;
```

Where:

Variable is a symbol, array, array element, etc.

Expression is a single value, expression, or complex expression.

Examples

Boolean assignment statements:

```
VarBool1 := TRUE;
```

```
VarBool2 := (val <= 75);
```

Array element assignment:

```
Array_1[13] := (RealA /RealB)* PI;
```

String assignment. String literals must be enclosed in single quotation marks.

```
String_Val := 'This is a string constant';
```

Function value assignment:

```
Result := SQRT(2);
```

Function block value assignment:

If the counter function block instance CTU1 is located in an RLL diagram, the following assignment in the Structured Text program gets the current value of the counter.

```
CurrentValue:=CTU1.CV;
```

Pointers

- If pVar1 is a pointer symbol, pVar1 is assigned the location of the X data value.

```
pVar1 := & X;
```

- If pVar1 is a pointer symbol, Y is assigned the value contained in Var1 , since pVar1 contains the location of Var1.

```
Y := * pVar1;
```

- If pVar1 is a pointer symbol, Var1 is assigned the value contained in Y.

```
* pVar1 := Y;
```

BREAK Statement

The **BREAK** statement stops program execution if debugging is enabled (the program was started with the *Run with Debug* command).

Format

```
BREAK ;
```

Example

If debugging is enabled, program execution stops at the **BREAK** statement. The statements in **StatementList2** and succeeding program statements can be executed by single-stepping through the program.

```
StatementList1 ;
```

```
BREAK ;
```

```
StatementList2 ;
```

CASE Statement

The **CASE** construct offers multiple-choice conditional execution of statement lists. It conditionally executes one of multiple statement lists in which the condition is determined by the value of an integer variable.

Format

```
CASE  IntExpression OF
      Int:                               (*Singular*)
      StatementList;
      Int, Int, Int:                     (*Enumerated*)
      StatementList;
      Int..Int:                           (*Range*)
      StatementList;
[ELSE                                     (*Optional*)
  StatementList;]
END_CASE ;
```

Where:

IntExpression A variable or expression having a data type of **ANY_INT**.

Int An integer. Zero or more of each of the singular, enumerated, or range forms can be used.

StatementList Zero or more Structured Text statements.

Operation

The `Int` values are compared to `IntExpression`. The `StatementList` following the first `Int` value that matches `IntExpression` is executed. If no `Int` value matches `IntExpression`, the `StatementList` following `ELSE` is executed; otherwise, no `StatementList`s are executed. The `ELSE` part of the `CASE` construct is optional.

Example

This code fragment assigns a value to a string variable.

```
CASE ColorSelection OF
    0:
        ColorString := 'Red';
    1:
        ColorString:='Yellow';
    2,3,4:
        ColorString:='Green';
    5..9:
        ColorString:='Blue';
ELSE
        ColorString:='Violet';
END_CASE;
```

Comments

Comments let you incorporate useful annotations into your program code to document program operation. The compiler ignores anything between a `(*...*)` pair. A comment can be placed after a line of code or on a separate line.

Format

```
(*free-form text*)
```

Example

```
Result := SQRT(x);      (*Uses the square root function*)
```

Exit Statement

The EXIT statement is used to terminate and exit from a loop (FOR, WHILE, REPEAT) before it would otherwise terminate. Program execution resumes with the statement following the loop terminator (END_FOR, END_WHILE, END_REPEAT).

Format

```
ConditionForExiting EXIT;
```

Where:

ConditionForExiting An expression that determines whether to terminate early.

Example

The following code fragment shows the operation of the EXIT statement. When the variable `number` exceeds 500, the FOR loop is exited and execution continues with the statement immediately following `END_FOR`.

```
number:=1
FOR counter := 1 TO 100 DO
    number := number * counter;
    IF number > 500 THEN EXIT;
END_FOR;
```

IF Statement

The IF construct offers conditional execution of a statement list. The condition is determined by result of a Boolean expression. The IF construct has two optional parts: One option provides conditional execution of an alternate statement list as determined by a second Boolean expression. Another option provides unconditional execution of a third statement list if neither condition is satisfied.

If neither Boolean expression is TRUE and you have included an ELSE statement, the statements following the ELSE are executed. If an ELSE statement is not present, no statements are executed.

Format

```
IF BooleanExpression1 THEN
    StatementList1;
[ELSEIF BooleanExpression2 THEN (*Optional part*)
    StatementList2;]
[ELSE (*Optional part*)
    StatementList3;]
END_IF;
```

Where:

BooleanExpression Any expression that resolves to a Boolean value.

StatementList Any set of Structured Text statements.

Operation

The following sequence of evaluation occurs if both optional parts are present:

- If **BooleanExpression1** is TRUE, **StatementList1** is executed. Program execution continues with the statement following the **END_IF** keyword.
- If **BooleanExpression1** is FALSE and **BooleanExpression2** is TRUE, **StatementList2** is executed. Program execution continues with the statement following the **END_IF** keyword.
- If both Boolean expressions are FALSE, **StatementList3** is executed. Program execution continues with the statement following the **END_IF** keyword.

If an optional part is not present, program execution continues with the statement following the **END_IF** keyword.

Example

The following code fragment puts text into the string variable Message, depending on the value of I/O point input value.

```
IF Input01 < 10.0 THEN
    Message := 'Low Limit Warning';
ELSEIF Input02 > 90.0 THEN
    Message := 'Upper Limit Warning';
ELSE
    Message := 'Limits OK';
END_IF;
```

INCLUDE

The INCLUDE statement incorporates statements from an external file when the STRUCTURED TEXT file is parsed. The external file can contain either Structured Text or Instruction List statements.

Format

```
INCLUDE FullFilePath;
```

Where:

FullFilePath is a string that specifies the path and file name of the external file.

Example

```
INCLUDE 'C:\ST_Files\ST_File1.TXT';
```

FOR Statement

The FOR loop repeatedly executes (iterates) a statement list contained within the FOR...END_FOR construct. It is useful when the number of iterations can be predicted in advance, for example to initialize an array. The number of iterations is based on the value of a control variable which is incremented (or decremented) from an initial value to a final value by the FOR statement. You can use an expression for the control variable, but the value must be 0 or greater. By default, each iteration of the FOR statement increments the value of the control variable by 1. An optional BY portion of the construct can be used to specify an increment or decrement of the control variable by specifying a (non-zero) positive or negative integer or an expression that evaluates to a positive or negative integer.

The FOR statement checks the control variable before each iteration, and the statements within the FOR...END_FOR construct are only executed if the current value of the control variable has not exceeded the specified final value.

The `END_FOR` keyword causes the system to do an I/O scan at the end of each iteration of the `FOR` loop. Alternatively, you can use the `END_FOR_NOWAIT` keyword to loop without an I/O scan.

Format

```
FOR Int_Variable := Expression TO Expression [BY Expression] DO
    Statement list;
END_FOR;
```

Where:

`Int_Variable` An integer variable.

`Expression` A single value, expression, or complex expression of the same data type as `Int_Variable`.

`Statement list` Any list of Structured Text statements.

Examples

- The following code fragment initializes an array (of 100 elements) by putting a value of 10 in all array elements. Since this operation is not dependent on I/O, the `END_FOR_NOWAIT` keyword is used.

```
FOR index := 1 TO 100
    Array01[index] := 10;
END_FOR_NOWAIT;
```

- The following code fragment assigns the values of an I/O point to array elements over ten I/O scans. The last entry is put in the array element with the smallest index. Since it is desired to perform an I/O scan after each loop, the `END_FOR` keyword is used.

```
FOR index := 10 TO 1 BY -1 DO
    ArrayInput[index] := Input01;
END_FOR;
```

Function Call

The Structured Text function call executes a predefined algorithms that performs a mathematical, string, bit string or other operation. The function call consists of the name of the function or function block followed by any required input or output parameters enclosed in parentheses.

Function Format

```
FunctionName(Parameter1, Parameter2, . . .); (*Un-named  
parameters*)
```

or

```
FunctionName(P1:=Parameter1, Parameter1, . . .); (*Named  
parameters*)
```

Function Block Format

```
FunctionBlockName(P1:=Parameter1, P2:=Parameter1, . . .);
```

Example 1

This code fragment shows the TAN function call.

```
Result := TAN( AnyReal );
```

Example 2

This code fragment shows a function with named parameters.

```
StringB := LEFT(IN:= StringA, L:= VarI);
```

LABEL

The label statement is used within SFC steps only. If an action label has an associated label statement in the SFC step, then the action does not run until the label is encountered.

Format

```
ActionLabel:: Statement;
```

Where:

ActionLabel The name of an action label.

Statement Any Structured Text statement.

Example

The following code fragment causes an action with a label of `ActionLabel` to start running.

```
ActionLabel:: VarString1:= "Action should be running";
```

REPEAT Statement

The REPEAT loop repeatedly executes (iterates) a statement list contained within the REPEAT...END_REPEAT construct until an exit condition is satisfied. It executes the statement list first, then checks for the exit condition. This looping construct is useful when the statement list needs to be executed at least once.

Format

```
REPEAT
    StatementList;
UNTIL BooleanExpression  END_REPEAT;
```

Where:

BooleanExpression Any expression that resolves to a Boolean value.

StatementList Any set of Structured Text statements.

Operation

The **StatementList** is executed. If the **BooleanExpression** is FALSE, then the loop is repeated; otherwise, if the **BooleanExpression** is TRUE, the loop is exited. The statement list executes at least once, since the **BooleanExpression** is evaluated at the end of the loop.

The **END_REPEAT** keyword causes the system to do an I/O scan at the end of every iteration of the REPEAT loop. Alternatively, you can use the **END_REPEAT_NOWAIT** keyword to loop without an I/O scan.

Note

It is possible to create an infinite loop that (since the control system runs at the highest priority) does not return control to the operating system, especially when using the **END_REPEAT_NOWAIT** keyword. Avoid infinite loops by insuring that the **BooleanExpression** provides a determinate exit condition.

Example

The following code fragment reads values from an array until a value greater than 5.0 is found (or the upper bound of the array is reached). Since at least one array value must be read, the REPEAT loop is used.

```
REPEAT
    Value:=Array01[Index];
    Index:=Index+1;
UNTIL Value > 5.0 OR Index >= UpperBound
END_REPEAT_NOWAIT;
```

SCAN

The SCAN statement suspends program execution while an I/O scan takes place.

Format

```
SCAN;
```

Example

```
Statement1;
SCAN;      (*Statements 2 & 3 do not execute until after
an I/O scan.*)
Statement2;
Statement3;
```

WHILE Statement

The WHILE loop repeatedly executes (iterates) a statement list contained within the WHILE...END_WHILE construct as long as a specified condition is TRUE. It checks the condition first, then conditionally executes the statement list. This looping construct is useful when the statement list does not necessarily need to be executed.

Format

```
WHILE BooleanExpression DO
    StatementList;
END_WHILE;
```

Where:

BooleanExpression Any expression that resolves to a Boolean value.

StatementList Any set of Structured Text statements.

Operation

If BooleanExpression is FALSE, then the loop is immediately exited; otherwise, if the BooleanExpression is TRUE, the StatementList is executed and the loop repeated. The statement list may never execute, since the Boolean expression is evaluated at the beginning of the loop.

The END_WHILE statement causes the system to do an I/O scan at the end of every cycle of the WHILE loop. Alternatively, you can use the END_WHILE_NOWAIT statement to loop back without an I/O scan.

Note

It is possible to create an infinite loop that (since the control system runs at the highest priority) does not return control to the operating system, especially when using the END_WHILE_NOWAIT keyword. Avoid infinite loops by insuring that the BooleanExpression provides a determinate exit condition.

Example

The following code fragment asserts an output I/O point as long as the input I/O point EndLimit remains FALSE. A WHILE loop is used since there is no reason to process the statement list if EndLimit is TRUE. The END_WHILE loop keyword is used since the I/O points should be scanned.

```
WHILE NOT EndLimit DO
    MoveForward := TRUE;
END_WHILE;
MoveForward := FALSE;
```

Structured Text Operators

The table below lists the operators that you can use within an expression. The order of precedence determines the sequence in which they are executed within the expression. The operator with the highest precedence is applied first, followed by the operator with the next highest precedence. Operators of equal precedence are evaluated left to right.

Operator	Symbol	Precedence
Parenthesis	()	1
Function Evaluation	Identifier (argument list) e.g., LN (A), ABS (X)	2
Exponentiation	** , POW	3
Negate	-	4
Complement	NOT	4
Multiply	*	5
Divide	/	5
Modulo	MOD	5
Add	+	6
Subtract	-	6
Comparison	<, >, <=, >=	7
Equality	=	8
Inequality	<>	8
Boolean/Bitwise AND	AND	9
Boolean/Bitwise Exclusive OR	XOR	10
Boolean/Bitwise OR	OR	11

These symbols have the following functions.

- := assigns an expression to a symbol
- ; required to designate the end of a statement
- [] used for array indexing where the array index is an integer. For example, this sets the first element of an array to the value j+10: `intarray[i] = j + 10;`
- :: used to designate a label. For example, this specifies a label: `spray_on::`
Labels must be followed by a statement on the same line.
- (* *) designates a comment. For example, `(*This is a comment.*)`

About the Statement Types

The Structured Text statements, which provide for the actual program execution, consist of the following types.

- **Assignment** - Sets an object to a specified value.
- **CASE** - Provides for the conditional execution of a set of statements.
- **Comment** - Provides for comments to be included within the program.
- **EXIT** - Terminates iterations before the terminal condition becomes TRUE.
- **FOR** - Indicates that a statement sequence be executed repeatedly based on the value of a control symbol.
- **Function Call** - Calls a function for execution.
- **IF** - Specifies that one or more statements be executed conditionally.
- **INCLUDE** - Executes a set of statements contained within an external file.
- **REPEAT** - Indicates that a statement sequence be executed repeatedly until a Boolean expression evaluates to TRUE.
- **SCAN** - Stops Structured Text execution to be suspended while an I/O scan is done.
- **WHILE** - Indicates that a statement sequence be executed repeatedly until a Boolean expression evaluates to FALSE.

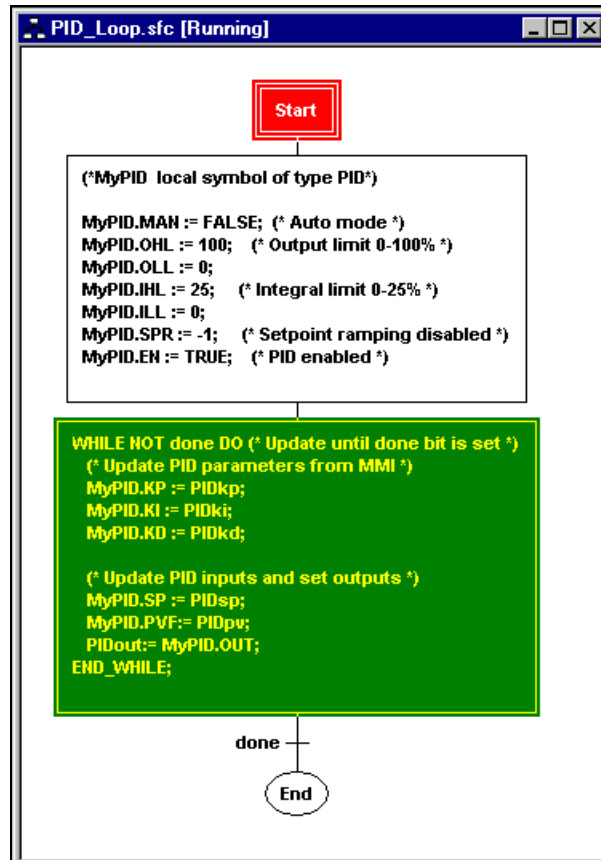
Using PIDs in an Application Program

About Using PIDs

A PID is an instruction providing automatic close-loop operation of continuous process control loops. For each loop the instruction performs proportional control and optionally integral control, derivative control, or both:

- Proportional control - causes an output signal to change as a direct ratio of the error signal variation.
- Integral control - causes an output signal to change as a function of the integral of error signal over the time duration.
- Derivative control - causes an output signal to change as a function of the rate of change of the error signal.

PID Example



Notes on Using PIDs

1. A symbol of type PID should only be defined as a local variable. A global PID symbol will be solved once per I/O scan per running program. This effect will cause instability and unpredictable results in PID outputs.
2. If $SPR < 0$, then no setpoint ramping will occur and the PID loop will use the raw SP value.
3. When $MAN = FALSE$ (AUTO mode), the OVR is set equal to OUT each time the PID is evaluated.
4. IHL, ILL and IHLD will affect the bumpless transfer result.
5. FF can be used as either static bias or as a dynamic FeedForward term or both.

6. To use PID in Structured Text :
 - A. create a local variable of type PID.
 - B. set initial values of KP, KI, KD, OHL, OLL, IHL, ILL, IHLD, SPR, MAN, FF.
 - C. create program to constantly update SP, PVF, and FF (optional) and store OUT.
 - D. set EN to start the PID updating.

Controlling the Flow of RLL and Structured Text Application Programs

The Program Control Block (PRGCB) allows an SFC application program to compile and control the execution of other SFC and RLL application programs.

To use the PRGCB

1. Create an SFC program and define a local variable (e.g. prgcb) of type PRGCB.
2. Store a STRING containing the path and filename of the program to control in prgcb.NAME.
3. Use the PRGCB Boolean inputs to control the program.
4. Use the PRGCB outputs to obtain information about the program.

Using the PRGCB Status Code

PRGCB.STATUS allows you to monitor the various states of control program execution. This unique variable returns an integer value that can be used both from within the control program itself and displayed as an indicator on the Operator Interface screen. PRGCB.STATUS indicates the following:

Value	Definition
0	Initialized
1	File not found
2	File Opened
3	File Parsing
4	Parse Error Occurred
5	Parse Complete
6	Program Running
7	Program Stopped

Value	Definition
8	Program Complete
9	Program Aborting
10	Program Aborted
11	Program Faulted
12	Program At Breakpoint
13	Program Suspended
14	Program Rewound (REWIND functionality)
15	Program Not Rewound (REWIND functionality)

Using the PRGCB Rewind Function

After a control program has run through to completion, it will not run again until you have set the local program control variable `prgcb.REWIND`, thus effectively rewinding the program. A program's rewind status can be monitored via the `prgcb.STATUS` variable.

PRGCB Example

The following piece of SFC code starts the Cookie demo and restarts it every time it finishes. This example uses the `NAME`, `REWIND`, and `RUN` inputs, and the `INCYCLE` output. For other Boolean inputs and outputs, refer to the online help for `PRGCB`.

```
cookie.NAME := "c:\cimplicity\pccontrol\cookie\cookie.sfc";

cookie.REWIND := TRUE;

cookie.RUN := TRUE;

WHILE TRUE DO

    (* When the cookie program stops restart it *)

    IF NOT cookie.INCYCLE THEN

        cookie.REWIND := TRUE;

        cookie.RUN := TRUE;

    END_IF;

    (*SCAN;*)

    buzzer := FALSE;

    switch1 := TRUE;

END_WHILE;
```

Monitoring and Testing Application Programs and Symbols

Parsing a Program

In order to parse a program you must be running under the Windows NT operating system and have the PC Control execution software installed.

To parse the active file:

Click *Execute* and select *Parse*.

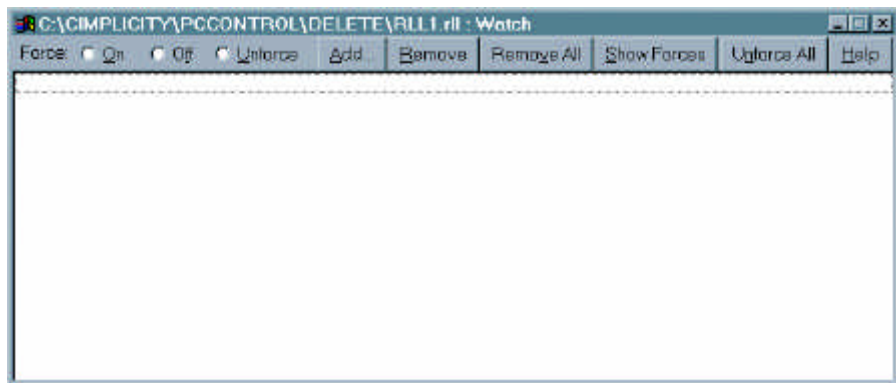
If any parse errors are encountered, a message is displayed and the error is highlighted. Once the program parsing is complete the active file window title is updated with the parsing status.

Watching and Forcing Symbols

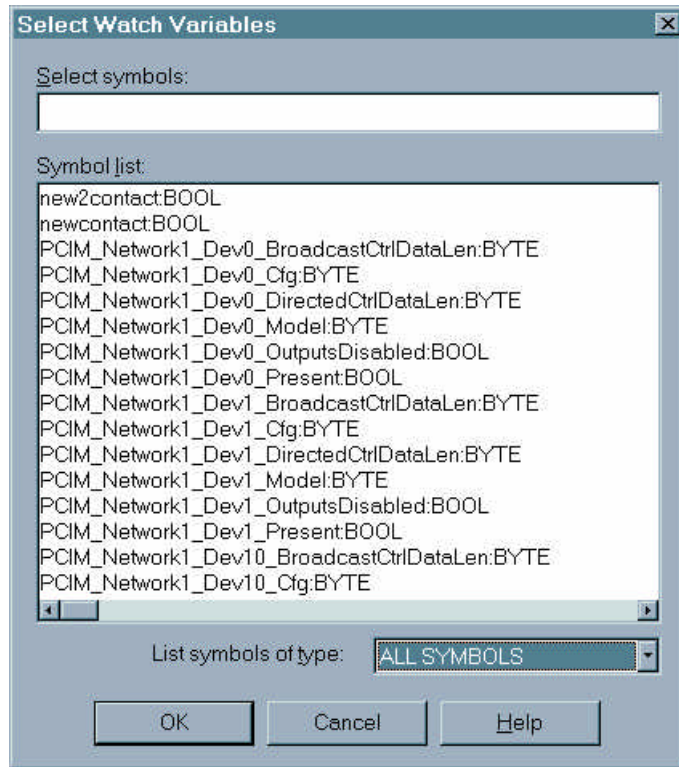
The Watch window, shown in the following figures, displays local and global symbols and their status at runtime.

To display or hide the Watch window:

Click *View* and select *Watch/Force Variables* or click the Watch window icon.



To select variables for display in the Watch window, click the Add button. The Select Watch Variables dialog box will appear.



Select the variables you want to monitor and click OK. The selected variables will be displayed in the Watch window.

RUN with Debug

The RUN with Debug program option allows you to execute a program contiguously until a BREAK statement is encountered. When the BREAK statement is encountered the program is Stopped. From that point you can single step or Abort the program.

Single Stepping a Program

The Single Step Program option allows you to execute a program one complete scan at a time. The program that you are testing must be Stopped before you can step it. The mode of any other programs in the project does not matter.

To Step a Program:

1. Select the program in the Program Editor. If the program is Running on the menu bar click *Execute* and select *Stop*.
2. Open a Watch window for the program and add any symbols that you need to monitor as the program runs. This is optional.
3. On the menu bar click *Execute* then select *Single Step*. The program enters the Run mode for one scan, then enters the Break mode. Any I/O controlled by the program is updated during the program scan.

Clearing Fault Mode and Error Conditions

To clear the emergency Estop and any I/O faults, select *Reset Estop* from the *Execute* menu.

Section 5: Instruction List Programming

Overview

The Instruction List (IL) programming language is an IEC 1131-3 textual programming language. Its format is similar to an assembly language. You use the Instruction List editor to create stand-alone Instruction List programs. The Instruction List editor is accessed from the Program Editor and features typical text-editing functions such as cut, copy, and paste, find, and replace. It also has tools and commands to automatically insert Instruction List statements and functions.

This section provides information on using the Instruction List editor writing Instruction List programs. It is assumed that you are familiar with general Program Editor operation and have some familiarity with the Instruction List language.

Note: Instruction List programs are continuously running programs (once each scan).

Opening an Instruction List Document

To open an existing document, select *Open Editor* from the Program Editor *File* menu and locate the document using the *Open* dialog box that appears.

To open a new document, select *New Editor* from the Program Editor *File* menu and choose *Instruction List Document* from the *New* dialog box that appears.

Entering Instructions

Manual Entry

Instructions can be entered by typing in the operator or function call and associated operands or parameters. Be sure to review the syntax, operators, and operator modifiers in **Language Overview** and refer to the function call syntax in the **Language Reference**.

Accessory Bar

The accessory bar shows commands in graphic form. It is an alternative method of entering IL statements. The accessory bar appears only when enabled by toggling *Accessory Bar* on the *View* menu. The following figure shows the accessory bar functions. The floating accessory bar can be undocked and positioned at the user's convenience.



Insert IL Statements Menu

When the Instruction List editor is active, the Program Editor *Edit* menu has an *Insert IL Statements* item that lists Instruction List statements (operators). Select the statement you need and it will automatically be entered at the cursor position.

Insert IL Functions Menu

When the Instruction List editor is active, the Program Editor *Edit* menu has an *Insert IL Functions* item that lists standard functions that can be used with in the Instruction List language. Select the function you need and it will automatically be entered at the cursor position with the correct syntax. Replace any parameters with ones you have defined in the Symbol Manager.

Refer to **Language Overview** for more information on using functions and function blocks in the Instruction List language.

Editing Instructions

The Instruction List editor supports the common editor functions such as cut, copy, and paste, and find and replace. These commands are found on the *Edit* and context menu.

Language Overview

Instruction List Syntax

An Instruction List program consists of a list of instructions. Each instruction starts on a new line and can contain a label, operator, operator modifiers, operands, and comment fields as shown below:

Label	Operator	Operand	Comment
Example:	LD	Sym01	(*Load Sym01 value into accumulator*)
	ADD	Sym02	(*Add Sym02 to it*)
			(*The sum is now the current result*)

Comments can only be at the end of the line. Blank lines are allowed between the instruction lines. The current result is maintained in an accumulator. Instructions work in the following manner:

current_result:= current_result OPERATOR operand

where the current_result is always to the left of the operator.

Operators

The table below lists the Instruction List language operators.

Operator	Modifier	Operand	Description
LD	N		Set current result equal to operand.
ST	N		Store current result to operand location.
S	Note 1	BOOL	Set Boolean operand to 1.
R	Note 1	BOOL	Reset Boolean operand to 0.
AND	N, (	BOOL	Boolean AND.
OR	N, (	BOOL	Boolean OR.
XOR	N, (	BOOL	Boolean Exclusive OR.
ADD	(		Addition.
SUB	(		Subtraction.
MUL	(		Multiplication.
DIV	(		Division.
GT	(		Greater Than comparison (>).
GE	(		Greater Than or Equal To comparison (>=).
EQ	(		Equal To comparison (=).
NE	(		Not Equal To comparison (<>).
LE	(		Less Than comparison (<).
LT	(		Less Than or Equal To comparison (<=).
JMP	C, N	LABEL	Jump to label.
CAL	C, N	NAME	Function and function block call.
)			Evaluate deferred operation.
Note 1. Performed only if the current result value is Boolean 1. Table Source: IEC 1131-3 (Part 3 of IEC Standard 1131 for programmable controllers), International Electrotechnical Commission.			

Modifiers

Operators can take the following modifiers:

N Boolean negation of the operand. For example,

```
ORN Bool1
```

is equivalent to `result:= result OR NOT Bool1`.

C The instruction is performed only if the `current_result` value is Boolean 1. (Or Boolean 0 if the N modifier is also used. For example,

```
LD Value  
JMPC Sort
```

is equivalent to "IF Value is TRUE, jump to Sort, else continue with execution."

(Defers evaluation of the operator until encountering a right parenthesis operator `)`". For example,

```
MUL( Num1  
ADD Num2  
)
```

is equivalent to

```
result:= result * (Num1 + Num2).
```

Functions and Function Blocks

Function Calls

Function calls can be done using the following forms:

CALC calls a function if the current result (accumulator value) is TRUE (1).

CAL always call the function.

CALCN only call the function if the current result (accumulator value) is FALSE (0).

Function call syntax using **CALC** is shown below:

Example:

CALC ROL(OUT:= VarBit, IN:= BitString, N:= RotateNum)

FunctionExample2:

CALC ADD(OUT:= VarNum, Num1, Num2)

Function Block

Function blocks are called using the following form of the call:

CAL always call the function block.

The following are examples of the syntax used for a standard function block, where **ctu1** and **ton1** are named instance of CTU and TON function blocks.

LD	10	LD	TRUE
ST	ctu1.PV	ST	ton1.IN
LD	TRUE	ST	ton1.EN
ST	ctu1.EN	LD	t#30s
LD	In3	ST	ton1.PT
ST	ctu1.CU	CAL	ton1
CAL	ctu1	LD	ton1.Q
LD	ctu1.Q	ST	Out2
ST	Out3		

Refer to **Language Reference** for standard function block descriptions and parameters (PV, EN, CU, Q, etc.).

Accumulator Relationships

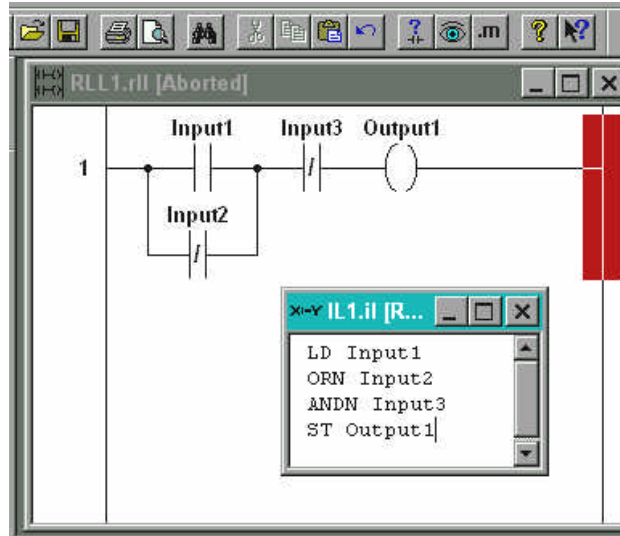
For function blocks, there is no relationship between the accumulator and the function block. The function block is always called, the accumulator is not passed into the function block, and after the function block returns, the accumulator has the same value as it had before the function block was called.

For functions the accumulator has no effect on the function inputs. When using `CALC`, the function will not be called if the accumulator is `FALSE`.

When using `CALCN`, the function will not be called if the accumulator is `TRUE`. When the function returns, if the return value is a `BOOL`, the return value is automatically loaded into the accumulator. If the function return value is a non-`BOOL`, the return value can be saved into a variable using the `func1 (OUT:=outvar1)` syntax. In this case the return value is only saved into `outvar1` if the function is actually called (`CAL`, `CALC` with `TRUE` accumulator, or `CALCN` with `FALSE` accumulator). If the function return value is a non-`BOOL`, the accumulator should be automatically loaded with the inverted value of the `BOOL` system error symbol (`RTERROR`). If the function is called and an error is flagged by the function, the accumulator will be loaded with a `FALSE` value after the function returns. If the function is called and no error is flagged by the function, the accumulator will be loaded with a `TRUE` value.

Program Examples

The following figure shows equivalent RLL and Instruction List programs.



For examples of the Instruction List operators in use, refer to online help for PC Control.

General Operations Example

```
LD Format          (* 0: CONVERT F TO C, 1: CONVERT C TO F *)
JMPC      CtoF          (* JUMP TO CORRESPONDING FUNCTION *)

LD .555           (* LOAD THE MULTIPLIER *)
MUL(      Fahrenheit   (* THIS EVALUATES TO: (Fahrenheit-
32)*.555) *)
SUB 32
)
ST Celsius       (* STORE THE RESULT IN Celsius *)

JMP Done        (* OPERATION COMPLETE, GOTO END OF FILE
*)

CtoF:  LD      32          (* LOAD OPERAND *)
ADD(      Celsius     (* THIS EVALUATES TO: (Celsius * 1.8)+32
*)
MUL 1.8
)
ST Fahrenheit   (* STORE THE RESULT IN Fahrenheit *)

Done:   LD      1          (* CONVERSION COMPLETED *)

LD Run_Timer    (* LOAD TRUE INTO THE REGISTER *)
ANDN     FALSE   (* THIS EVALUATES TO: TRUE AND NOT FALSE
*)
ST Enable     (* STORE IN Enable *)
```

Call to Function Block Example

```
LD Enable          (* LOAD Enable INTO THE REGISTER *)
ST ton1.IN         (* STORE REGISTER VALUE IN ton1.IN *)
ST ton1.EN         (* STORE REGISTER VALUE IN ton1.EN *)
LD t#30s          (* LOAD t#30s INTO THE REGISTER *)
ST ton1.PT        (* STORE REGISTER VALUE IN ton1.PT *)
CAL ton1          (* CALL ton1, IT WILL RUN FOR 30s *)
LD ton1.Q         (* LOAD OUTPUT BOOLEAN INTO THE REGISTER *)
ST Enable_Out     (* STORE THE REGISTER VALUE IN Enable_Out *)
*)
```

Section 6: Online Editing

Online Editing Operation

Online editing refers to making editing changes to a running program. There are two online editing modes: seamless and non-seamless. The online editing mode entered depends on the type of editing changes made as discussed in “Rules.”

Seamless online editing allows editing changes to be made to a program and have those changes seamlessly reflected in the running program; that is, without disturbing run-time operation. Assume a program is running and you make a change to the program: if the change can be seamlessly online edited, the editor goes into seamless online edit mode. The online edit control appears with four buttons active:

- Restart Program** Restarts the program and resets the I/O. It aborts the current program and runs the new program, shutting down I/O in the process.
- Activate Changes** Seamlessly replaces the old version of the program with the new version; I/O scanning continues seamlessly. It parses the changes first if needed. The program is only parsed if the SFC or RLL file date is later than the program which has been parsed. The file is automatically saved if it has been changed.
- During Activate Changes, the online edit box is displayed with all buttons disabled (while the changes are being parsed).
- If the Activate Change is successful, the online edit box is removed. If parsing the changes is not successful, the parse error message is displayed and the online edit buttons are enabled again.
- Parse Changes** Parses the new program changes without running them. If the Parse Changes is successful, the online edit box buttons are re-enabled. If a parse error occurs, the parse error message is displayed and the online edit box buttons are re-enabled.
- During Parse Changes, the online edit box is displayed with all buttons disabled (while the changes are being parsed).
- Cancel Changes** Converts the source back to the running program and resumes highlighting the active program.

When a program is running and you make a change to the program that cannot be seamlessly implemented, the online edit box appears with only the *Restart Program* and *Cancel Changes* button active.

You are prompted the first time a non-seamless edit is about to be implemented. After you agree to this, there is no further notification and the *Activate Changes* and *Parse Changes* buttons are disabled. If a seamless change was made earlier, the non-seamless change will force the program to be restarted.

Rules

If editing changes are made that cannot be seamlessly updated in the running program, non-seamless online editing operation applies.

General

If the following conditions are met:

editing changes are made to an active program

the changes are saved without activating them (seamless changes or non-seamless changes)

and the editor is closed

when the editor is started again, it will go directly to non-seamless online edit mode (the online edit box will appear with the *Activate Changes* and *Parse Changes* buttons disabled). This means that seamless online edits are not remembered across edit sessions but the changes themselves are identified by the file dates (SST file compared with SFC file, or RST file compared with RLLfile).

Symbols

You can seamlessly add new global memory variables. To do so, from the Symbol Manager add new global memory variables and click *Apply* - the new global memory variables seamlessly become active in the runtime engine. Any deletion or modification of global memory variables or modification or addition of global user structures will require the configuration to be re-activated, aborting all programs and shutting down the I/O. When you attempt to delete or modify a global memory variable or make changes to the global user structures, a notification appears that this edit will force all programs to be aborted.

- Global and local symbols can be added.
- Deleting or modifying symbols forces the program to restart.
- Modifying local user structures forces the program to restart.

I/O

- Modification to the I/O drivers will require the configuration to be re-activated.

RLL Programs

- When editing RLL programs, any change can be made. The full program is re-parsed and the program is seamlessly swapped. Symbols maintain their current value. I/O scanning continues seamlessly.

Note

Positive and negative transition sensing contacts are prohibited from causing a transition the first time the element is evaluated. For online edit this means that after the online edit, the first scan will never sense the transition (since for the edited program, this is its initial scan). The place where this can cause an apparent problem is when the element is low and during the scan of the online edit, the element goes high. This transition would not be sensed.

SFC Programs

- When editing SFC programs, the contents of steps, actions and transitions can be freely changed. The structure of the SFC (the SFC net) cannot be changed (this will force a program restart), including changing the name of an element (step, action or transition). During a seamless online edit, the full SFC (including any macro SFC) is re-parsed, the program segments representing the steps, actions and transitions are seamlessly swapped, the symbols maintain their current values, and steps, actions, and transitions which are active remain active. I/O scanning continues seamlessly.
- For SFC action qualifiers, only the duration can be changed. Any other change will force the program to be restarted.
- For SFC steps which contain Structured Text, if the step is complete (the Structured Text has finished executing) it will remain complete with any active actions still scanning. If the step is not complete (the Structured Text is still executing) the Structured Text will start over from the beginning.

File Operations

Online Edit and File operation features have some basic incompatibilities. The nature of Online Edit ensures that all variables including File Control blocks maintain their current state during the online edit. During Online Edit, the Structured Text inside a step is restarted. If a set of Structured Text file commands are executing during an Online Edit, the commands will be restarted but the file will not be closed and reset to the start. The file operations will fail or execute incorrectly after the online edit.

Example 1

```
STEP1:
FILE_OPEN (fcb, "test.dat");
WHILE (NOT fcb.EOF) DO
    FILE_READ (fcb, struct1);
END_WHILE;
```

If an online edit is executed during the WHILE loop, STEP1 will be reset and the FILE_OPEN command will fail because the file is already open.

Example 2

```
STEP1:
FILE_OPEN (fc~b, "test.dat");
STEP2:
WHILE (NOT fc~b.EOF) DO
    FILE_READ (fcb, struct1);
END_WHILE;
```

If an online edit is executed during the WHILE loop, STEP2 will be reset and the FILE_READ will work correctly. There will probably be a timing problem in this case because the FILE_READ is not aborted and may still be active when the online edit is executed.

Structured Text Programs

- Structured text does not support seamless online editing. If changes to the Structured Text file are made while the program is running and the file is saved, the non-seamless online editing buttons are enabled.

Instruction List Programs

- If changes to the Instruction List file are made while the program is running and the file is saved, the online editing buttons are enabled.

Chapter 5

Running Application Programs

After you have created an application program, you must start up the Run-time system in order to run and monitor the application.

This chapter provides the following information:

- How to start up the Run-time system
- How to run an application program
- How to configure programs to execute automatically
- How to monitor power flow
- How to view the status of an application program

Runtime Subsystems

The runtime subsystems consist of the Program Manager, Program Execution, I/O Scanner and the Event Log subsystems. The Program Manager, Program Execution, and I/O Scanner subsystems are visually represented by the PC Control Run Time icon. The Event Log has its own icon.

The Program Execution and I/O Scanner subsystems are given Real-time process priority which means they are given CPU time before all normal applications as well as mouse update and disk access.

To Start the Runtime Subsystem:

Start the Program Editor, and then do one of the following:

- Select *Startup Runtime Subsystems* from the Program Editor or Operator Interface Editor *Execute* menu.
- Select *Runtime Engine* from the *PC Control Applications* menu on the Windows *Start* menu.

Running an Individual Program

In order to run a program you must be running under the Windows NT operating system and have the execution software installed. If the Runtime Subsystems are not active, a startup prompt for the runtime subsystems appears.

Running the Active Program

To run the active program:

1. Click *Execute*.
2. Select *Run*.

After the program begins running the program display will highlight using the active highlight colors to show the status of the running program.

To run the active file with debug enabled:

1. Click *Execute*.
2. Select *Run with Debug* menu command.

To run one step of the active file:

1. Click *Execute*.
2. Select *Single Step*. If the step contains more than one command line, the next command line within the step is executed.

To run the active file with restart:

1. Click *Execute*.
2. Select *Run with Restart*. A program running with restart will automatically start running when the Runtime Subsystems start up.

Canceling a Running Program

To cancel a running SFC program:

1. Click *Execute*.
2. Select *Abort*. The program will be aborted and reset to the start of the program.

Note

To cause a program break point in a SFC step, use the Structured Text BREAK function in that step.

Configuring Programs to Execute Automatically

In some applications, it is necessary to start a SFC program running automatically every time the controller is powered up or every time the Runtime Subsystems are started. You can accomplish the first option by making a Batch file with the appropriate commands and adding the Batch file to the Windows NT Startup folder. The second option is accomplished using the Run with Restart command.

Starting Programs with a Batch file

Note

Only one SFC application program can be started using this method.

1. From Windows NT launch a simple text editor to create a text file. Once created you will need to save the file with a .BAT extension. Enter the following two lines in the text file:

```
start c:\CIMPLICITY PC Control \bin\runtime.exe/RUN
      c:\CIMPLICITY PC Control \MyProject\Main.sst

start c:\CIMPLICITY PC Control \bin\oicfg.exe
```

Note

Make sure that the /RUN command above is entered in all CAPITAL letters. Only one SFC application program can be started using this method.

2. Make sure the path to the \bin directory is correct for your machine.
3. Make sure that the path to your project folder and the name of the SFC program is correct. Use a .SST extension for the SFC file instead of .SFC because this is the Structure Text version of the SFC file that the Runtime compiler needs instead of the binary SFC file that the Program Editor requires.
4. Using the Program Editor make sure that the current project and active configuration are correctly selected for this application. Parse the SFC file to make sure that the corresponding .SST file exists and is current.
5. Use the Operator Interface utility to select the appropriate .OPI file to use at power up.
6. Follow the instructions in your Windows NT help files to add the Batch file to your NT Startup folder.
7. Reboot your system to test.

Starting Programs with the Run With Restart Command

To run the active file with restart:

1. Click *Execute*.
2. Select the *Run with Restart* menu command. A program running with restart will automatically start running when the PC CONTROL software Runtime Subsystems start up. A program that has been Aborted or is Faulted will no longer be marked to run with restart.

After the program begins running the program display will highlight using the active highlight colors to show the status of the running program.

Monitoring Power Flow

When a program is running the program display will highlight using the active highlight colors to show the status of the running program.

Active RLL Programs

When a RLL program is running or an embedded action and/or RLL transition program window is open in a running SFC program, the contacts, coils, and function blocks in the program will begin highlighting. A normally open contact will highlight when the BOOL symbol attached to it is TRUE. A normally closed contact will highlight when the BOOL symbol attached to it is FALSE. A positive transition sensing contact will highlight when a positive transition occurs on the attached symbol. A negative transition sensing contact will highlight when a negative transition occurs on the attached symbol. All output coils will highlight when the attached BOOL symbol is TRUE (coil highlighting reflects the state of the coil symbol). All function blocks will highlight when the function block is active.

Note

If the BOOL symbol attached to a contact is TRUE the contact will highlight regardless of its position on a rung. In other words, a contact being highlighted does not necessarily mean the other contacts in front of it are also TRUE.

Active SFC Programs

When a SFC program is running any active steps and/or transitions will be highlighted. If an active step is displayed with process commands an active command indicator will be displayed to the left of the command that is currently executing.

Viewing the Status of Application Programs

To view program status:

1. Click *View*.
2. Select *Program Status*. Program Status window is displayed with a list of active programs and their status.

To view the program:

Double click on a program.

To issue a program command:

Select the desired program from the list box and push the button with the desired program command: View, Run, Abort, Stop, or Step.

Chapter 6

Creating Operator Interface Applications

PC Control contains integrated Operator Interface software (PC Control GUI) that can be configured to control and monitor automation applications. Because of the tight integration with the Program Editor, all the global Symbols in the active configuration are immediately available in the Operator Interface software.

This chapter provides the following information:

- Overview of Operator Interface software
- How to create Operator Interface screens
- Symbol Operations
 - Editing Symbols
 - Activating Configurations
- Creating Operator Interface Applications
 - Standard Controls
 - ActiveX Controls

For information about Motion Controls, refer to Appendix E.

Section 1: Overview of the Operator Interface Editor

Starting the Operator Interface

The Operator Interface software lets you create operator interfaces for an application and lets operators use the interfaces you create.

To start Operator Interface software:

- Locate the *PC Control Applications* menu from the Windows *Start* menu and choose *Operator Interface*.
- If the Program Editor is open, choose *Operator Interface* from the Program Editor *Tools* menu.

The Operator Interface starts in activation mode. The last operator interface file opened for the current project is used to define the operator interface. The start screen defined in the operator interface file is the first operator interface screen displayed.

If the runtime subsystems are not running when the Operator Interface is started, a prompt appears providing an opportunity to start the runtime subsystems.

Access Levels

Access levels and access codes are used to prevent unauthorized access to the application programs and configuration data. There are five access levels, 0-4 with a different access code for each. The following table describes the privileges of each level.

Access Level:	You can:
0	Activate operator screens and controls Select and run SFC programs
1	Run and cancel continuous RLL programs for environment and machine logic. View RLL and SFC programs
2	Edit SFC programs Execute project management functions
3	Edit RLL programs Modify the operator interface Modify system configuration files
4	Change the passwords for access levels 1 to 4.

The default access code values are located on the printed installation instructions that initially accompanied the PC CONTROL software.

Entering an Access Code

The Program Editor and Operator Interface require access codes. The Program Editor automatically presents the access level keypad upon startup.

To Enter an Access Code:

From:	Then:
Program Editor	Click the numbers on the keypad that represent your access code and click <i>OK</i> .
Operator Interface	Click <i>Access</i> from the menu bar and select <i>Password</i> . A keypad appears. Click the numbers on the keypad that represent your access code and click <i>OK</i> .

To set the access level to 0:

Click *Cancel* button on the access keypad.

Changing Access Levels

The access code for any level can be changed only from Operator Interface with a level 4 access code. There is one access code for each level.

To change the access level password:

1. Click *Access* from the menu bar and select *Password*. A keypad appears.
2. Click '*' key 4 times. The message: "Enter Access Level to Change." Appears.
3. Click the number of the access level you want to change and click *OK*.
4. Click the new four digit number. The message: "Enter new password again."
5. Click the new four digit password again and click *OK*. If you verify the new password correctly the password will be changed.

Note

Click *CANCEL* on the keypad to set the access level to zero.

When attaching Control Functions to operator controls (in the operator interface edit mode) an access level can be specified to control the use of the each operator control.

Activation and Edit Modes

The Operator Interface software includes an activation and edit mode. In the edit mode, you can edit, create, copy, rename, or delete screens, place controls on those screens and wire controls to programs and symbols. You need an access level

The Operator Interface starts up in Activation Mode.

Switching Operator Interface Modes

To switch to Edit Mode from Activate Mode:

You must have a level 3 or 4 access to create and edit operator interface screens.

- . From the Tools menu, choose Operator Interface Screen Edit.
- . Enter the password for the level 3 or 4 access.

To switch to Activate Mode from Edit Mode:

Click Execute and select Activate Screens.

functions. You cannot edit controls when the screens are activated.

Controlling RLL Programs from an Operator Interface

The Continuous Logic Manager is an executable program which can be used to control RLL programs in a project. To access the Continuous Logic Manager from an operator interface screen, add a button and add the EXECUTE function to it. Select the Continuous Logic Manager as the executable file to run. Refer to “Buttons” for more information.

At runtime the Continuous Logic Manager displays a list of RLL programs in the active project which are running and a list of RLL programs in the active project which are not running. RLL programs which are running are displayed in the *Running RLL Programs* list. RLL programs which are not running are displayed in the *Project RLL Programs* list.

To run an RLL program

1. Select the program from the *Project RLL Programs* list.
2. Click *Run*. The selected program is removed from the *Project RLL Programs* list and inserted into the *Running RLL Programs* list.

To run an RLL program with restart

1. Select the program from the *Project RLL Programs* list box.
2. Press *Run with Restart* button. The selected program is removed from the *Project RLL Programs* list and inserted into the *Running RLL Programs* list. A program running with restart will automatically start running when the Runtime subsystem software starts up.

To abort an RLL program

1. Select the program from the *Running RLL Program* list.
2. Press *Abort*. The selected program is removed from the *Running RLL Programs* box and inserted into the *Project RLL Programs* list.

To edit an RLL program

1. Select the program from the *Project RLL Programs* list or the *Running RLL Program* list.
2. Click on *Edit*. The Program Editor is activated with the selected RLL program at the forefront. If the RLL program is running, the Program Editor will highlight the running RLL program.



Section : Working with Operator Interface Screens

Operator Interface Operations

An operator interface file contains one or more screens. A project can contain more than one operator interface file. The start screen of the last opened operator interface

To start a new operator interface file

- Select *New* *File* menu or use the tool bar button.
OPI and the default screen name
Operator Interface.

To open an operator interface file

- Select *Open* *File* menu or use the tool bar button.

Saving an operator interface file saves all the screens in the file.

To save the file

Select from the *File*

When you save a file for the first time, the *Save As* name the file.

To save the file with a new name or to a new folder

Choose from the *File*
new folder and/or name for the file.

Screen Operations

Creating a New Operator Interface Screen

To create a new operator interface screen

1. Select *New Screen* from the *Edit* menu. The *Enter New Screen Name* dialog box appears.
2. Type in the name for the new screen and click *OK*. A blank operator screen is created with the screen name in the title bar.

Deleting a Screen

The operator interface file must include at least one screen. If you try to delete the last screen of the operator interface, an error message appears.

To delete an operator interface screen

1. Select *Delete Screen* from the *Edit* menu. The *Select Screen to Delete* dialog box appears.
2. Type in the name of the screen you want to delete or select the screen name from the from the drop down list box and click *OK*.

If the screen you deleted was the startup screen, the *Select New Startup Screen* dialog box is displayed. Type in the name of the new startup screen or select the screen name from the drop down list box.

Copying a Screen

To copy an operator interface screen

1. Select *Copy Screen* from the *Edit* menu. The *Select Screen to Copy* dialog box appears.
2. Select the screen from the dialog box and click *OK*. The *Enter New Screen Name* dialog box appears.
3. Type a name to give to the new screen and click *OK*. The new screen is created with the same contents as the original screen.

Renaming a Screen

To rename an operator interface screen

1. Select *Rename Screen* from the *Edit* menu. The *Select Screen to Rename* dialog box appears.
2. Select a screen to rename and click *OK*. The *Enter New Screen Name* dialog box appears.
3. Type a name to give the new screen and click *OK*.

Selecting the Startup Screen

The startup screen is the screen that appears (for the current project's active configuration) when the Operator Interface is started.

To select the startup screen

1. Select *Start Screen* from the *Edit* menu. The *Select New Startup Screen* dialog box appears.
2. Select a startup screen and click *OK*. The selected screen is the new startup screen.

Selecting a Screen to Edit

Before you can edit a screen, you must select it.

To select an operator screen to edit

1. Click on the *Screens* menu item. A list of all operator screens in the current operator interface file appears in the menu.
2. Select the desired screen. The screen is displayed for editing.

Section 3: Working with Controls

Adding Controls

To add a control

1. Select *New Standard Control* from the *Edit* menu. A list a standard controls appears.
2. Select the control to add. The cursor shape changes to reflect the control.
3. Position the cursor in the screen and click to add the control.

Note

Most controls can also be selected from the Control Tools tool bar.

To cancel the operation, press Esc.

For information on adding ActiveX controls, refer to “Inserting ActiveX Controls.”

Editing Controls

To edit a standard control

1. Do one of the following
 - Double-click on the control.
 - Select the desired control and press Enter.
 - Select the desired control and select *Edit Standard Control* from the *Edit* or context menu.
2. An appropriate edit dialog box for the control appears. For information on standard controls, refer to “Standard Controls”.

Note

For information on editing ActiveX controls, refer to “Editing ActiveX Controls” in the “ActiveX Controls” section.

Selecting Controls

To select a single control

- Position the mouse cursor over the control and click. The control is highlighted.

To select multiple controls using a selection box

A rectangular *rubber-band* will be drawn to surround the controls to be selected.

1. Position the selection arrow at one corner of the rectangle. Click and drag to the opposite corner.
2. Release the mouse button. All controls entirely within the rectangular area are selected.

To select multiple controls using the keyboard and mouse

- Hold the Ctrl or Shift key as you select individual controls.

To deselect a control from a selected group of controls

- Hold the Ctrl or Shift key as you move the mouse cursor over the control and click.

Moving Controls

To move controls using the mouse

1. Select the controls.
2. Move the cursor over one of the selected controls. Click and drag the selected control to the desired location. A black border shows the new bounding area of the control group.
3. Place the controls at the new location by releasing the mouse button.

To cancel the operation, press Esc.

To move controls using the keyboard

1. Select the controls.
2. Use the arrow keys to move the control group one pixel in the direction of the arrow key.

Sizing Controls

To size a control using the mouse

1. Select the controls. If the control can be sized, size handles appear on each corner and side of the control.
2. Move the cursor over one of the size handles. The cursor changes to a sizing arrow, indicating the direction in which the control can be sized.
3. Click and drag the selected sizing handle to stretch or shrink the control. A black border shows the new bounding area of the control group.
4. Once the control is sized, release the mouse button.

To cancel the operation, press `Esc`.

Copying, Cutting, and Pasting

Copy, cut, and paste operations are often used together. Copy saves selections to the clipboard. Cut deletes the selection and saves it to the clipboard. Paste inserts the clipboard contents into the current screen. You can cut, copy, and paste between screens.

Although the copy, cut, and paste operations work in a similar manner as in other Windows applications, the controls clipboard format is not compatible with other applications. Controls can only be copied and pasted within or between screens.

To copy a control

- Select the control, then choose *Copy* from the *Edit* or context menu or use the keyboard `Ctrl+C` keys.

To cut a control

- Select the control, then choose *Cut* from the *Edit* or context menu or use the keyboard `Ctrl+X` keys.

To paste clipboard contents

1. Display the screen into which the control is to be pasted (if not the current screen).
2. Choose *Paste* from the *Edit* or context menu or use the keyboard `Ctrl+V` keys.

The controls are placed onto the operator screen from the clipboard. They are placed in the same position they occupied when they were cut or copied.

Deleting Controls

To delete controls from the operator screen

1. Select the controls.
2. Press the Del key or select *Delete* from the *Edit* or context menu.

Aligning Controls

You can align controls left, right, top or bottom.

Left	The selected controls are aligned so that their left side is even with the furthestmost left control.
Right	The selected controls are aligned so that their right side is even with the furthestmost right control.
Top	The selected controls are aligned so that their tops are even with the topmost control.
Bottom	The selected controls are aligned so that their bottoms are even with the bottommost control.

To align controls

1. Select the controls to be aligned (at least two controls must be selected).
2. Select *Align Control* from the *Layout* menu, then choose the desired alignment: *Left*, *Right*, *Top*, or *Bottom*.

Moving Controls Front/Back

You can move a control to the front or back of overlapping controls.

To move a control front or back

1. Select the control.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To move the selected controls in front of any overlapping controls, choose *Move to Front* from the *Layout* menu.
 - To move the selected controls behind all other controls, choose *Move to Back* from the *Layout* menu.

Section 4: Symbol Operations

The Symbol Manager can be used directly inside the Operator Interface Editor. However, the Symbol Manager cannot be open inside the Operator Interface Editor and the Program Editor at the same time. When the Symbol Manager is opened from the Operator Interface Editor, it operates only on global symbols. It is available from the tool bar, Operator Interface menu, and control dialog boxes that allow you to select symbols.

Note

Only global symbols can be used within operator interface controls.

Editing Symbols

To edit global symbols

- Select *Symbol Manager* from the *Tools* menu. Refer to **Symbol Manager in the Programming Guide** for information on using the Symbol Manager.

Activating Configurations

To make the symbol edits available within the Program Editor, you must activate the configuration.

To activate the configuration, do one of the following

- Click *Apply* in the Symbol Manager .
- Select *Activate Config* from the *Tools* menu.

To save the configuration

- Select *Save Config* from the *Tools* menu.

Section 5: Creating Operator Interface Applications

Standard Controls

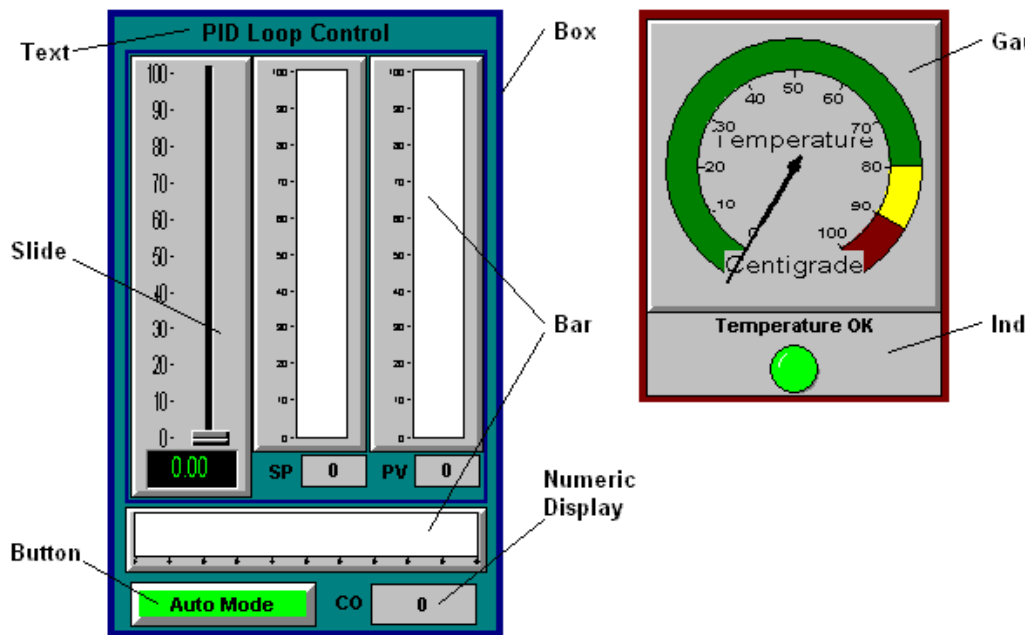
Introduction

The following lists and briefly describes standard controls and visual elements that can be used in an operator interface screen.

Control	Description
Bar	The bar control displays a scale and a moving bar. The moving bar tracks the current value of the symbol assigned to the bar. The bar orientation can be configured to be horizontal or vertical.
Bitmap	A bitmap is a visual element that can be used to describe the control application screen or add visual interest to a screen.
Box	A box is a visual element that can be used to group controls, give a border to text or bitmap, emphasize parts of a screen, or to otherwise make a screen visually interesting.
Click (multi-state) Button	A click (or multi-state) button executes a function when it is clicked. Functions include setting or clearing a Boolean symbol; displaying a screen; selecting, running, stopping, or aborting a program; getting operator input; and running an executable file. The button can be configured for single-state operation or two-state with override state operation. Functions can be programmed for each state and the button executes functions depending on its current state. It can be configured for automatic state change or state change based on a Boolean symbol.
Continuous Button	A continuous button executes a function when it is clicked. Functions include setting or clearing a Boolean symbol; displaying a screen; selecting, running, stopping, or aborting a program; getting operator input; and running an executable file. Functions can be programmed to execute when the button is pressed and when the button is released.
Gauge	The gauge control displays a scale and a rotating pointer. The rotating pointer tracks the current value of a symbol assigned to the gauge. Four gauge styles are available.
Indicator	An indicator is a state control whose appearance (text, color, etc.) changes depending on the value of a BOOL or BYTE data type symbol.
Numeric	The numeric display control is used to display a numeric value of a symbol.

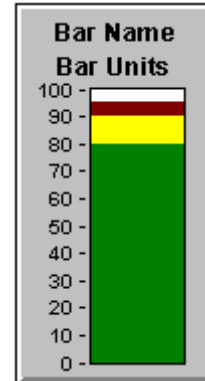
Selected Program Status Panel	The Selected Program Status Panel displays the name and current status (i.e., running, stopped, etc.) of the selected program. The selected program is that program selected by a click button or continuous button SELECT PROGRAM command.
Slide	The slide control provides the capability of continuously changing a symbol value. When the slide is moved up or down, the symbol assigned to the slide control changes value.
Text	The text element can be used to label controls, groups of controls, document screen functions, or otherwise provide descriptions of the screen operation or functionality.

The following figure shows a screen example that uses standard controls and visual elements.

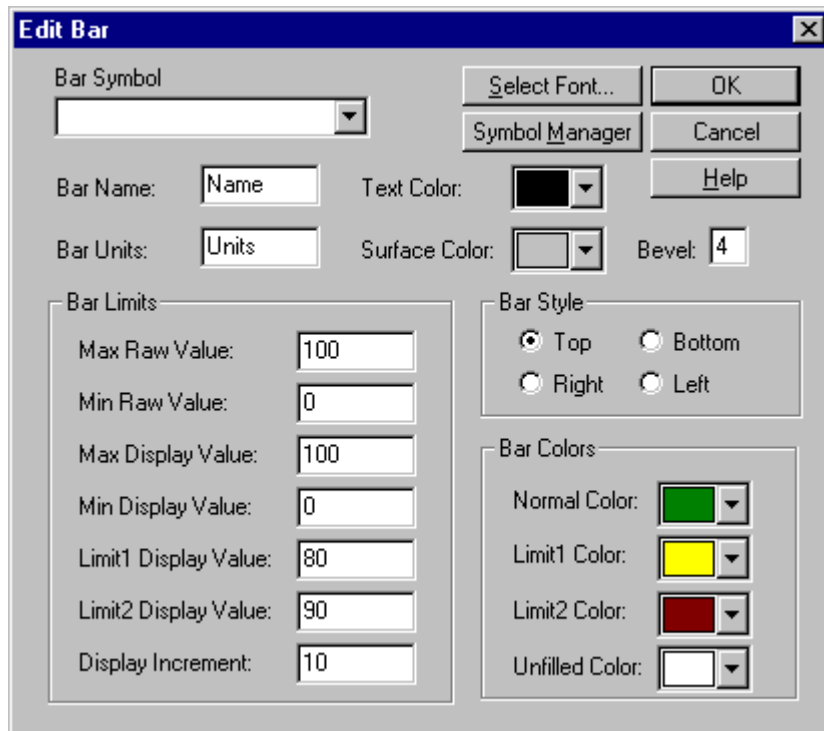


Bar

The bar control displays a scale and a moving bar. The moving bar tracks the current value of the symbol assigned to the bar. As the symbol value changes, the bar color changes, filling in the area of the bar corresponding to values less than the current symbol value. Limits can be given so that as the symbol value approaches these limits, the bar color changes to a specified color. The bar orientation can be configured to be horizontal or vertical.



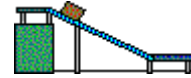
The *Edit Bar* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



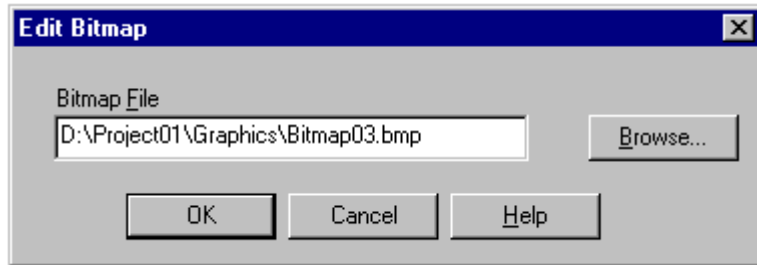
Field	Description
Bar Symbol	Specifies the symbol whose value is tracked by the moving bar. If necessary, a new symbol can be defined by opening the Symbol Manager with the <i>Symbol Manager</i> button.
Bar Name	Specifies a name for the control. For screen documentation only.
Bar Units	Specifies units for the control. For screen documentation only.
Text Color	Specifies a color for the control name, units, and scale numbering.
Surface Color	Specifies a background color for the control.
Bevel	Bevel affects the border of the control. Bevel values are from 0 to 6. A bevel of 0 makes the control appear flat. Increasing the bevel gives the control a 3-D appearance.
Bar Limits	
Max Raw Value Min Raw Value	Specifies the maximum and minimum values to which the moving bar responds. They limit the value of the symbol tracked by the bar. Any symbol value above the maximum raw value fills the moving bar to its upper limit, and any symbol value below the minimum raw value clears the moving bar. By reversing the values of the Max Raw Value and Min Raw Value fields, the inverted value of the bar symbol can be tracked. The maximum and minimum logic is reversed.
Max Display Value Min Display Value	Specifies the maximum and minimum numbering of the scale.
Limit1 Display Value Limit2 Display Value	Specifies limits at which the moving bar changes color (with respect to display values). For example, to show alarm conditions.
Display Increment	Specifies the scale numbering increment.
Bar Style	The bar style specifies the orientation of the bar control and the direction toward which the moving bar fills.
Bar Colors	There are four bar colors: Normal - the color of the bar when it is tracking the symbol value but before reaching a limit. Limit 1 - the color of the bar once it reaches its specified Limit 1. Limit 2 - the color of the bar once it reaches its specified Limit 2. Unfilled - the background color of the moving bar.
Select Font	Clicking this button displays a <i>Font</i> dialog box to specify the font, style, size, and color for the control text (name, units, and scale numbering).
Symbol Manager	Clicking this button opens the Symbol Manager.

Bitmap

A bitmap is a visual element that can be used to describe the control application screen or add visual interest to a screen. A bitmap will never obscure the appearance of any control or text.



The *Edit Bitmap* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



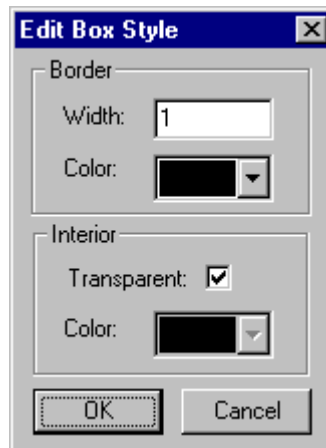
Field	Description
Bitmap File	Type in a path and bitmap file name or click Browse to locate one. Only Windows bitmap files (BMP) can be used.

Box

A box is a visual element that can be used to group controls, give a border to text or bitmap, emphasize parts of a screen, or to otherwise make a screen visually interesting. A box has a border and optional fill color. A box will never obscure the appearance of any control or text.



The *Edit Box* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



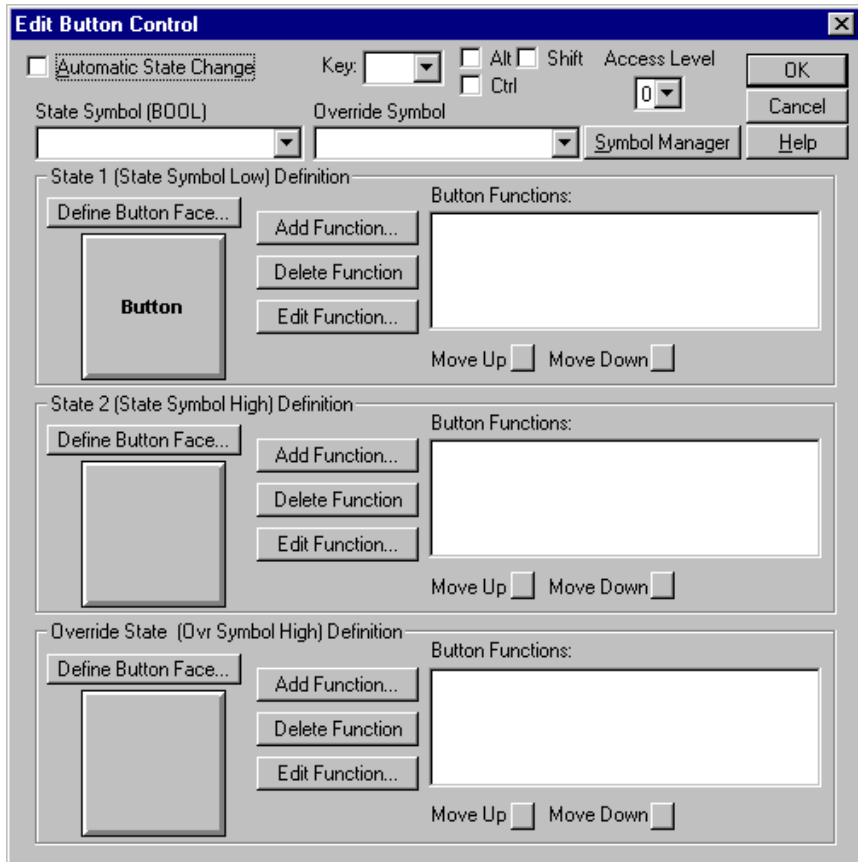
Field	Description
Border	This defines the appearance of the border. Type in a numeric border width and select a border color from the color list box.
Interior	If transparent is checked, the box has a transparent interior and the fill color is disabled. Otherwise, a fill color can be assigned to the box.

Click Button

A click (or multistate) button executes a function when it is clicked. Functions include setting or clearing a Boolean symbol; displaying a screen; selecting, running, stopping, or aborting a program; getting operator input; and running an executable file. The button can be configured for single-state operation or two-state with override state operation. Functions can be programmed for each state, and when the button is clicked, it executes the functions depending on its current state. It can be configured for automatic state change or state change based on a Boolean symbol. An access level and a keyboard key (or combination) can be assigned to the button



The *Edit Button Control* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



Field	Description
Automatic State Change	<p>If checked, enables automatic state change when the button is clicked. It will alternate between State 1 and State 2 automatically. When enabled, the State Symbol edit box is disabled.</p> <p>If Automatic State Change is disabled and no state symbol is defined for the button, the button is a single state button and remains in State 1.</p>
State Symbol	<p>Defines the Boolean state symbol for the button. If a state symbol is defined for a button, the button changes to State 1 when the state symbol is low and to State 2 when the state symbol is high.</p> <p>Type or select a state symbol for the button from the list. If necessary, a new symbol can be defined by opening the Symbol Manager with the <i>Symbol Manager</i> button.</p> <p>If Automatic State Change is disabled and no state symbol is defined for the button, the button is a single state button and remains in State 1.</p>
Override Symbol	<p>Defines the Boolean override symbol for the button. If an override symbol is defined for a button, the button changes to the override state when the override symbol is high.</p> <p>Type or select an override symbol for the button from the list. If necessary, a new symbol can be defined by opening the Symbol Manager with the <i>Symbol Manager</i> button.</p>
Key	<p>Specifies a keyboard key which can be pressed to click the button. Function keys can be selected from a list, or a single key in the range A..Z or 1..9 can be typed. The Alt, Shift, and Ctrl keys can also be used in combination with another key.</p>
Access Level	<p>Specifies an access level for the button. If an access level is specified, the access level of the operator interface must be set to the specified access level or higher in order to click the button.</p>
Button Functions	<p>Displays the list of control functions for each button state. The control functions for the current button state are executed when the click button is pressed and released.</p>
Add Function	<p>Adds a control function to the Button Functions list. Refer to the Button Functions table for a list and description of functions that can be assigned to a button control.</p> <p>If the function added is a RUN, STOP, or ABORT function, and a program name is given, an Edit Program button appears below the function list. If the Edit Program button is pressed, the Program Editor is activated and the specified file is opened. If the file does not exist a new file is opened.</p>
Delete Function	<p>Deletes the highlighted control function from the Button Functions list.</p>
Edit Function	<p>Edits parameters of the highlighted control function in the Button Functions list.</p>

Field	Description
Move Up	Moves the highlighted control function up one position in the Button Functions list.
Move Down	Moves the highlighted Control Function down one position in the Button Functions list.
Define Button Face	Opens the Define Button Face dialog box.
Line 1 Title Line 2 Title	The button can be given two lines of text to describe its function.
Bevel	Bevel affects the border of the control. Bevel values are from 0 to 6. A bevel of 0 makes the control appear flat. Increasing the bevel gives the control a 3-D appearance.
Surface Color	Specifies a background color for the control.
Select Icon Remove Icon	Clicking Select Icon displays icons that can be assigned to the button.
Select Font	Clicking this button displays a <i>Font</i> dialog box to specify the font, style, size, and color for the control text.

Button Functions

The following table lists the control functions that can be assigned to button controls. The function is executed when the button is clicked with the screen active.

Button Function	Description
SELECT PROGRAM (Select Program)	When the screen is active, displays a list of Sequential Function Chart programs in the project from which the operator selects the desired program. The Run Program, Stop Program and Abort Program functions can be set up to act on the operator selected program (SELECTED PROGRAM).
RUN... (Run Program)	Runs a specified program or the program selected by the operator using the Select Program function (SELECTED PROGRAM).
STOP... (Stop Program)	Stops a specified SFC program or an SFC program selected by the operator using the Select Program function (SELECTED PROGRAM). The program can be resumed from where it was stopped using the Run Program function. Only SFC programs can be stopped.
ABORT... (Abort Program)	Aborts the specified program or the program selected by the operator using the Select Program function (SELECTED PROGRAM).
SCREEN... (Activate Operator Screen)	Activates a specified operator screen.
SET... (Set Symbol)	Sets a specified symbol or sets system ESTOP.
CLEAR... (Clear Symbol)	Clears a specified symbol or resets system ESTOP.

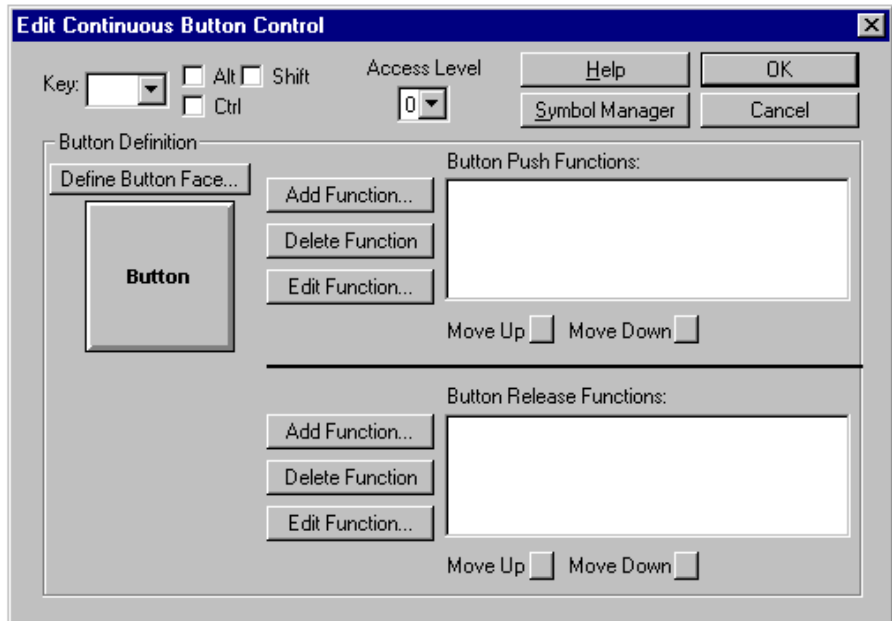
Button Function	Description
OP INPUT... (Operator Input)	At design time, prompts for a symbol and prompt message. At run time, displays an operator entry box with the specified operator prompt. The value entered by the operator is stored in the specified symbol.
EXECUTE... (Run Executable File)	Run the specified *.exe file. Running one of the product utilities requires the appropriate authorized access level. The product utilities include the Continuous Logic Manager and the Program Editor. Note: A path can be provided. If the path contains spaces, the entire string must be enclosed in double quotes, for example: "C:\my .program folder\program1.exe"

Continuous Button

A continuous button executes a function when it is clicked. Functions include setting or clearing a Boolean symbol; displaying a screen; selecting, running, stopping, or aborting a program; getting operator input; and running an executable file. Functions can be programmed to execute when the button is pressed and when the button is released. An access level and a keyboard key (or combination) can be assigned to the button



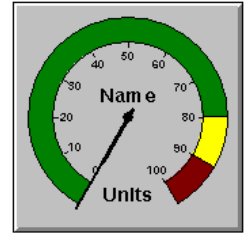
The *Edit Continuous Button Control* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



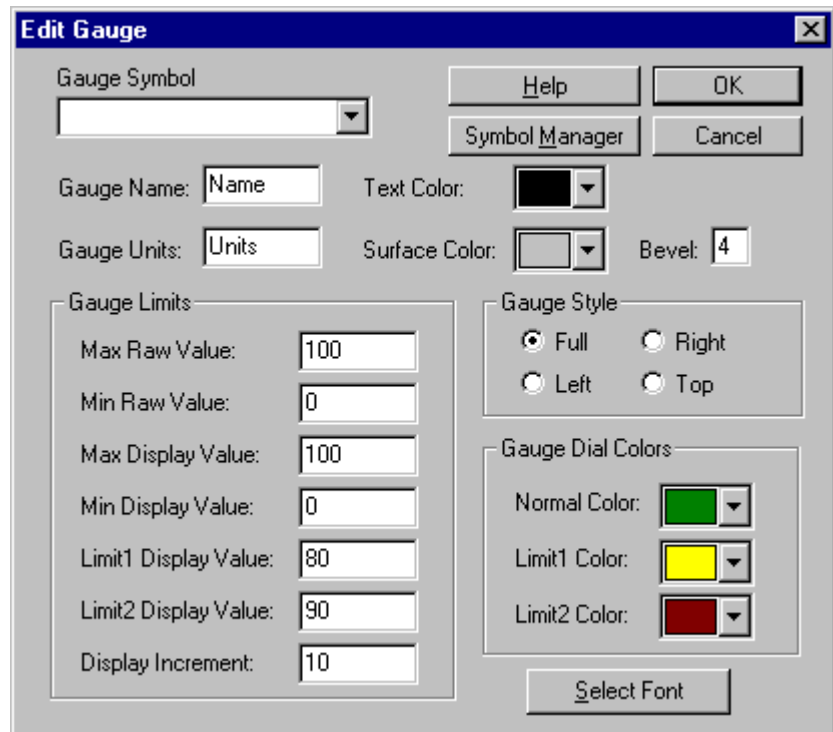
Field	Description
Key	Specifies a keyboard key which can be pressed to click the button. Function keys can be selected from a list, or a single key in the range A..Z or 1..9 can be typed. The Alt, Shift, and Ctrl keys can also be used in combination with another key.
Access Level	Specifies an access level for the button. If an access level is specified, the access level of the operator interface must be set to the specified access level or higher in order to click the button.
Button Push Function	Displays the list of control functions executed when the button is pushed.
Button Release Function	Displays the list of control functions executed when the button is released.
Add Function	<p>Adds a control function to the Button Push Functions list or the Button Release Functions list. Refer to the Button Functions table for a list and description of functions that can be assigned to a button control.</p> <p>If the function added is a RUN, STOP, or ABORT function, and a program name is given, an Edit Program button appears below the function list. If the Edit Program button is pressed, the Program Editor is activated and the specified file is opened. If the file does not exist a new file is opened.</p>
Delete Function	Deletes the highlighted control function from the Button Push Functions list or the Button Release Functions list.
Edit Function	Edits parameters of the highlighted control function in the Button Push Functions list or the Button Release Functions list.
Move Up	Moves the highlighted control function up one position in the Button Push Functions list or the Button Release Functions list.
Move Down	Moves the highlighted Control Function down one position in the Button Push Functions list or the Button Release Functions list.
Define Button Face	Opens the Define Button Face dialog box.
Line 1 Title Line 2 Title	The button can be given two lines of text to describe its function.
Bevel	Bevel affects the border of the control. Bevel values are from 0 to 6. A bevel of 0 makes the control appear flat. Increasing the bevel gives the control a 3-D appearance.
Surface Color	Specifies a background color for the control.
Select Icon Remove Icon	Clicking Select Icon displays icons that can be assigned to the button.
Select Font	Clicking this button displays a <i>Font</i> dialog box to specify the font, style, size, and color for the control text.

Gauge

The gauge control displays a scale and a rotating pointer. The rotating pointer tracks the current value of the symbol assigned to the gauge. As the symbol value changes, the pointer moves clockwise or counter-clockwise to indicate the current symbol value. Limits can be given that change the scale color to the specified limit color. Four gauge styles are available.



The *Edit Gauge* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



Field	Description
Gauge Symbol	Specifies the symbol whose value is tracked by the rotating pointer. If necessary, a new symbol can be defined by opening the Symbol Manager with the <i>Symbol Manager</i> button.
Gauge Name	Specifies a name for the control. For screen documentation only.
Gauge Units	Specifies units for the control. For screen documentation only.

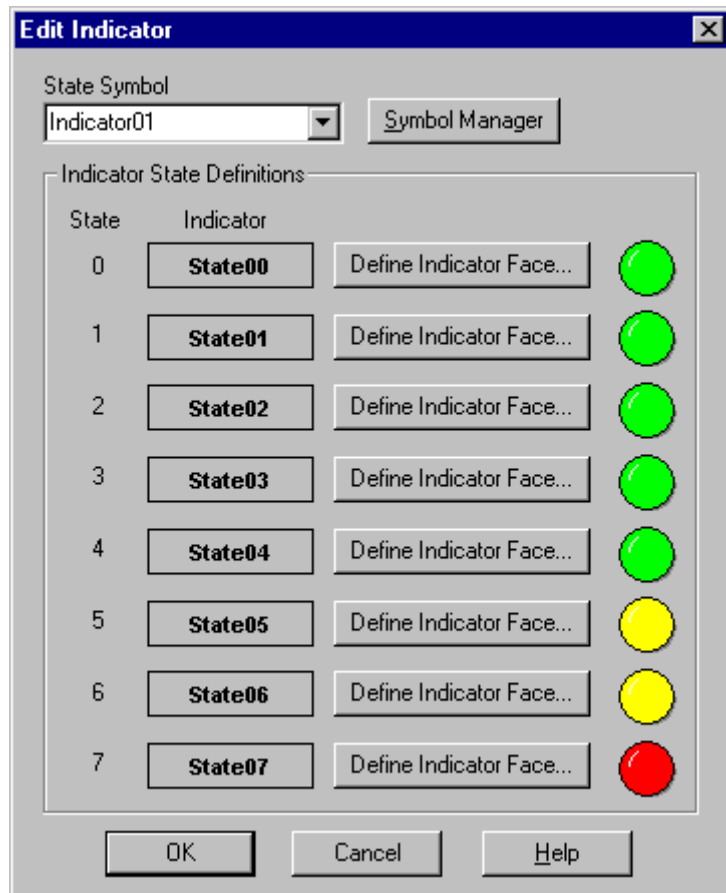
Field	Description
Text Color	Specifies a color for the control name, units, and scale numbering.
Surface Color	Specifies a background color for the control.
Bevel	Bevel affects the border of the control. Bevel values are from 0 to 6. A bevel of 0 makes the control appear flat. Increasing the bevel gives the control a 3-D appearance.
Gauge Limits Max Raw Value Min Raw Value Max Display Value Min Display Value Limit1 Display Value Limit2 Display Value Display Increment	<p>Specifies the maximum and minimum values to which the gauge pointer responds. They limit the value of the symbol tracked by the pointer. Any symbol value above the maximum raw value positions the moving pointer to its upper limit, and any symbol value below the minimum raw value positions the moving pointer at its lower limit.</p> <p>By default, the moving pointer moves in a clockwise direction as the control symbol value increases. To make the pointer move in a counter-clockwise direction, swap the Max Raw Value and Min Raw Value values.</p> <p>Specifies the maximum and minimum numbering of the scale.</p> <p>Specifies limits at which the gauge scale changes color. For example to show alarm conditions.</p> <p>Specifies the scale numbering increment.</p>
Gauge Style	Full circle. Semi-circle with the rounded side up. Semi-circle with the rounded side to the left. Semi-circle with the rounded side to the right
Gauge Dial Colors	Normal - the color of the gauge scale below a limit. Limit 1 - the color of the gauge scale once it reaches its specified Limit 1. Limit 2 - the color of the gauge scale once it reaches its specified Limit 2.
Symbol Manager	Clicking this button opens the Symbol Manager.
Select Font	Clicking this button displays a <i>Font</i> dialog box to specify the font, style, size, and color for the control text (name, units, and scale numbering).

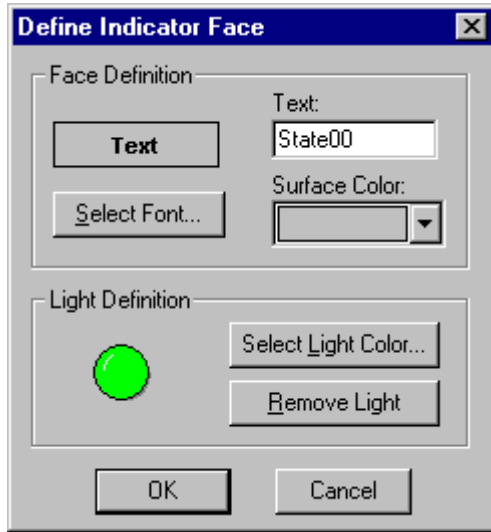
Indicator

An indicator is a state control whose appearance (text, color, etc.) changes depending on the value of a BOOL or BYTE data type symbol. A BOOL symbol can select between two states and a BYTE symbol can select from up to eight states.



The *Edit Indicator* and *Define Indicator Face* dialog boxes are shown in the following figure and described in the following table.





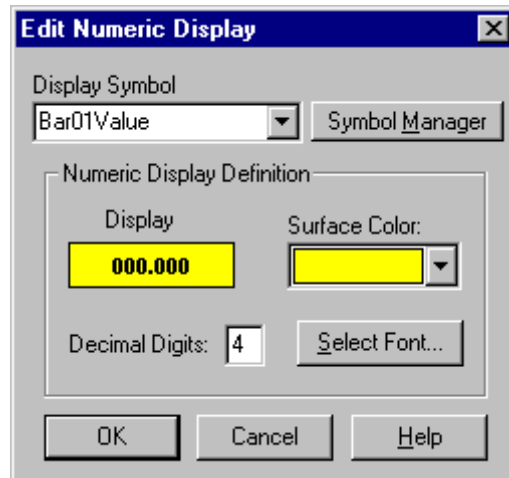
Field	Description
State Symbol	Specifies the symbol to which the indicator responds. State symbol data types can be BOOL or BYTE. If the state symbol is a BOOL, the indicator can have two states; if a BYTE, the indicator can have up to eight states. If necessary, a new symbol can be defined by opening the Symbol Manager with the <i>Symbol Manager</i> button.
Symbol Manager	Clicking this button opens the Symbol Manager.
Indicator State Definitions	For each possible binary state (0 through 7), the corresponding indicator text, background color, and optional light are shown.
Define Indicator Face	Clicking this button displays the <i>Define Indicator Face</i> dialog box. This dialog box is used to define the text, text color, and background color for a state and the font type and size for the entire indicator. An optional colored light can also be defined for each indicator state.
Face Definition Text Select Font Surface Color	The string to be displayed for the state. Defines the font and size for the indicator control and the text color for the state. Defines the background color for the state.
Light Definition Select Light Remove Light	Displays a group of light colors that can be selected for the state. Removes a light defined for the state.

Numeric Display

The numeric display control is used to display the value of a symbol (numeric or string).



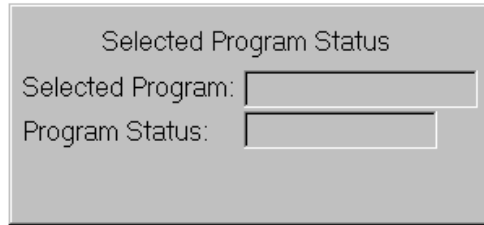
The *Edit Numeric Display* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



Field	Description
Display Symbol	Specifies the symbol whose value is displayed by the numeric display control. Select a symbol name from the drop down list box or type a symbol name into the edit box. If necessary, a new symbol can be defined by opening the Symbol Manager with the <i>Symbol Manager</i> button.
Symbol Manager	Clicking this button opens the Symbol Manager.
Display	The selected text color, background color, font type is displayed in the box titled <i>Display</i> .
Surface Color	Defines the background color for the control.
Decimal Digits	Defines the number of digits to the right of the decimal point that are displayed.
Select Font	Defines the text font, size, and color for the control.

Selected Program Status Panel

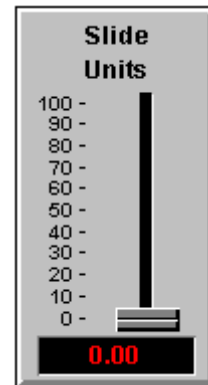
The Selected Program Status Panel displays the name and current status (i.e., running, stopped, etc.) of the selected program. The selected program is that program selected by a click button or continuous button SELECT PROGRAM command.



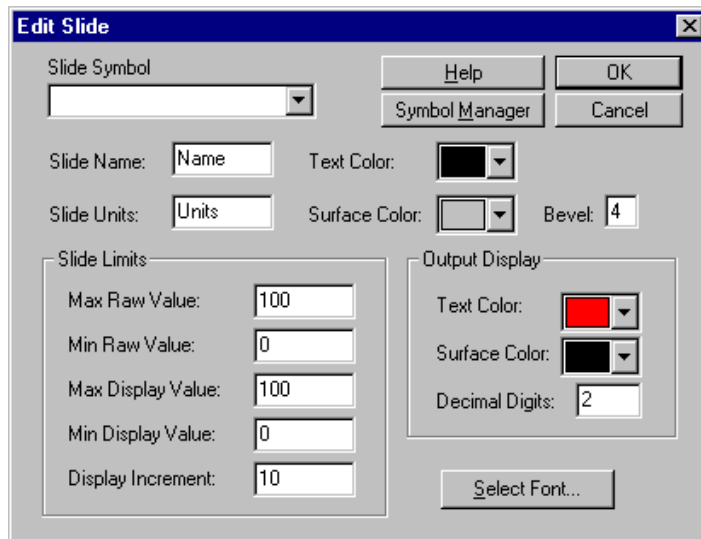
The Selected Program Status Panel has no configuration options.

Slide

The slide control provides the capability of continuously changing a symbol value. When the slide is moved up or down, the symbol assigned to the slide control changes value. The current setting of the slide is displayed at the bottom of the control. A scale running along the slide path gives an approximate value to which the slide is set.



The *Edit Slide* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



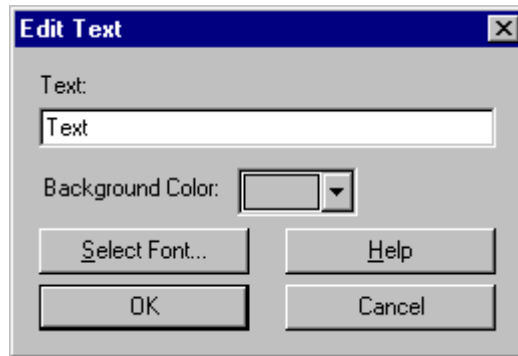
Field	Description
Slide Symbol	Specifies the symbol whose value is changed by the slide control. If necessary, a new symbol can be defined by opening the Symbol Manager with the <i>Symbol Manager</i> button.
Slide Name	Specifies a name for the control. For screen documentation only.
Slide Units	Specifies units for the control. For screen documentation only.
Text Color	Specifies a color for the control name, units, and scale numbering.
Surface Color	Specifies a background color for the control.
Bevel	Bevel values are from 0 to 6. A bevel of 0 makes the control appear flat. Increasing the bevel gives the control a 3-D appearance.
Slide Limits Max Raw Value Min Raw Value Max Display Value Min Display Value Display Increment	The raw values determine the interaction between the control and its symbol; the display values determine the interaction between the control and its scale. Specifies the maximum and minimum values that the slide can assign to the symbol. The slide will not set values above the maximum or below the minimum values. Specifies the maximum and minimum numbering of the scale. Specifies the scale numbering increment.
Output Display Text Color Surface Color Decimal Digits	The Output Display displays the control display value (not the symbol value). That is, the position of the slide with respect to the scale. Defines the Output Display text color. Defines the background color for the output display. Defines the number of digits to the right of the decimal point that are displayed.
Symbol Manager	Clicking this button opens the Symbol Manager.
Select Font	Clicking this button displays a <i>Font</i> dialog box to specify the font, style, size, and color for the control text (name, units, and scale numbering).

Text

The text element can be used to label controls, groups of controls, document screen functions, or otherwise provide descriptions of the screen operation or functionality.

Text

The *Edit Text* dialog box is shown in the following figure and described in the following table.



Field	Description
Text	Type the text string to be displayed in the Text box.
Background Color	Defines the background color of the text element.
Select Font	Defines the text color, font, and font size for the text string.

ActiveX Controls

Introduction

ActiveX controls are DLLs that have an OLE2 interface, using an OCX file extension by default (instead of DLL). ActiveX controls include simple controls such as buttons and edit boxes, more sophisticated controls such as gauges, and DLL components that have no user interface. ActiveX controls require a container which is provided by the operator interface.

ActiveX controls have three types of functions:

- **Properties** – these functions within the control can be called by the container to configure the control's appearance (e.g., colors, fonts, captions, bitmaps, etc.).
- **Methods** – these functions within the control allow the container to send or receive information about the control. For example, a method can be used to get the value of a cell in a grid control or tell the control to repaint itself.
- **Events** – these functions are called when a Windows event, such as a mouse click or a key press, occurs within the control. The container is notified when these events occur.

Properties, methods, and events are configured within the Operator Interface Screen Editor after the control is added to a screen.

ActiveX Limitations

The following is a list of limitations when using ActiveX controls in the Operator Interface:

1. No support for compound controls (controls within other controls).
2. No type coercion (from DWORD to INT for example).
3. No support for controls that do not have their own property pages.
4. No support for changing fonts at runtime. The Operator Interface does not support a "font" type.
5. No support for method/event parameters of type VT_VARIANT.
6. No support for complex data types (structures) for method/event parameters.

ActiveX and Standard Controls

Standard controls provided with the product provide basic functionality for a programmable control system operator interface. These controls also have an internal knowledge of the programmable control system. This knowledge allows them to hide many complex details from the end-user.

To extend the functionality or to accommodate special requirements, the operator interface serves as a container for ActiveX controls. Any available ActiveX control can be dropped into an operator interface screen and communicate with the run-time engine (provided the data types are compatible with the control system software).

Note the following:

- Knowledgeable users can write their own ActiveX controls, or they can be obtained from third-party sources. It is your responsibility to ascertain the suitability of any third-party ActiveX control for an application and to obtain its documentation. Poorly behaved controls may cause problems - contact the control implementer regarding any problems you are having as a result of using an ActiveX control.
- Third-party ActiveX controls will **not** have any internal knowledge of the programmable control system. Examples of the knowledge they will **not** have include: how to command an ESTOP and how to start, stop and abort the programmable control system programs.
- ActiveX controls require a registration process that allows them to be seen by Windows NT or Windows 95. Control registration may or may not be provided by the control implementers. To accommodate control registration, a registration process is implemented within the Operator Interface Screen Editor.

ActiveX Control Sources

Two third-party ActiveX control packages have been tested and are recommended sources for ActiveX controls:

VICOMponents™ Version 4.0 by ComputerBoards, Inc.
ComputerBoards Inc.
125 High Street
Mansfield, MA 02048
www.computerboards.com

Global Majic Software ActiveX controls.
Global Majic Software, Inc.
P.O. Box 322
Madison, Alabama 35758
gms@globalmajic.com
www.globalmajic.com

Registering ActiveX Controls

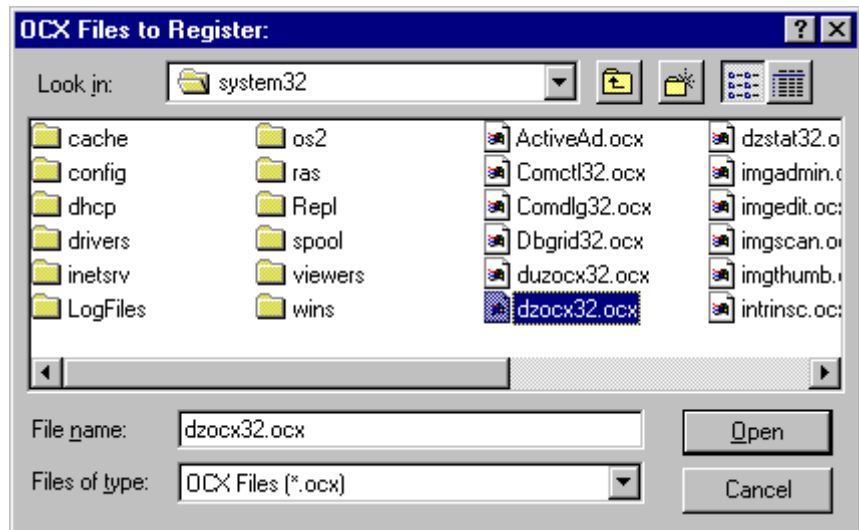
An ActiveX control must be registered before it can be used in an operator interface screen. If the ActiveX control has not been previously registered, it can be registered in the Operator Interface Screen Editor. Registered controls appear in the list displayed when *Insert ActiveX Control* is selected from the *Edit* menu.

To register an ActiveX control

1. Choose *Register ActiveX Control* from the *Edit* menu. The *OCX Files to Register* dialog box appears.
2. Select the control to register, then click *Open* to register it. If successful, a message appears indicating that the registration was successful.

Note

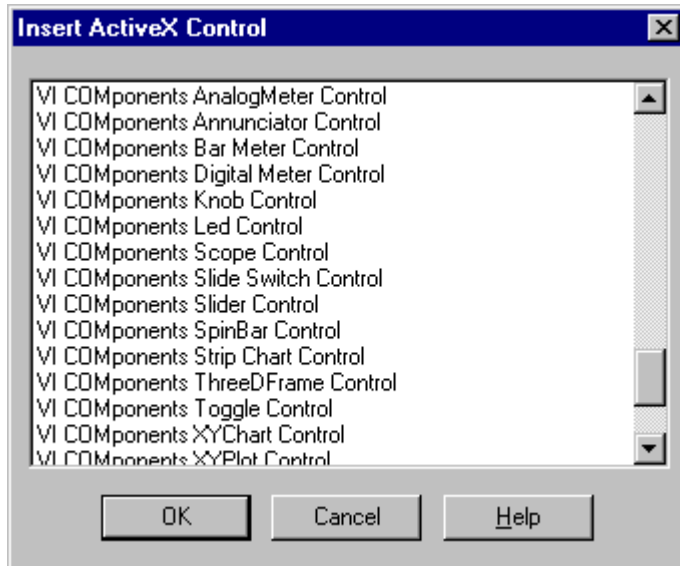
This process does not guarantee that the control can be properly inserted into a screen. For example, if the control is not licensed or is not implemented properly, you will not be able to add it to a screen.



Inserting ActiveX Controls

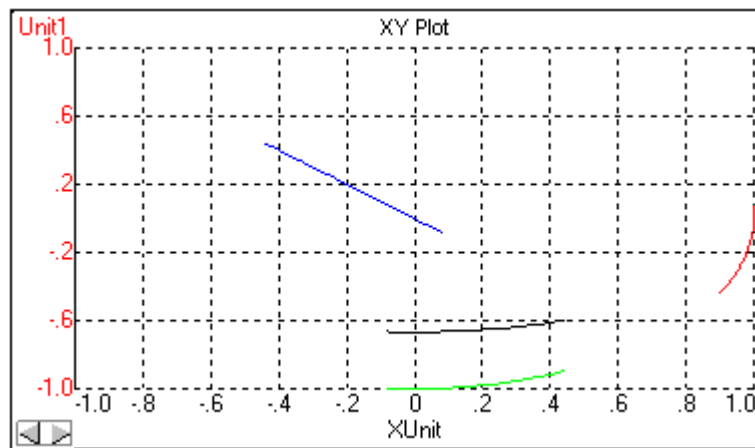
To insert an ActiveX control

1. Choose *Insert ActiveX* control from the *Edit* menu. The *Insert ActiveX Control* dialog box appears.
2. Select an ActiveX control and click *OK* to continue.



Alternatively, a list of the last four recently inserted ActiveX controls appears at the bottom of the *Edit* menu, from which the control to be inserted can be selected.

An example of the VI components XY Plot control is shown in the following figure.



Note

The list contains all ActiveX controls registered on the PC. Some may not make sense to use in a control environment.

If you distribute an operator interface screen configuration using an ActiveX control, the ActiveX control must be registered on the target system.

Refer to the control implementer for control usage and distribution rights and agreements.

Editing ActiveX Controls

ActiveX controls can be moved and resized as with the standard controls. The effect of resizing a control is dependent on the control and does not necessarily produce the expected result. Other editing operations such as delete, cut, copy, and paste work the same as for standard controls.

Editing Properties

To edit properties, do one of the following

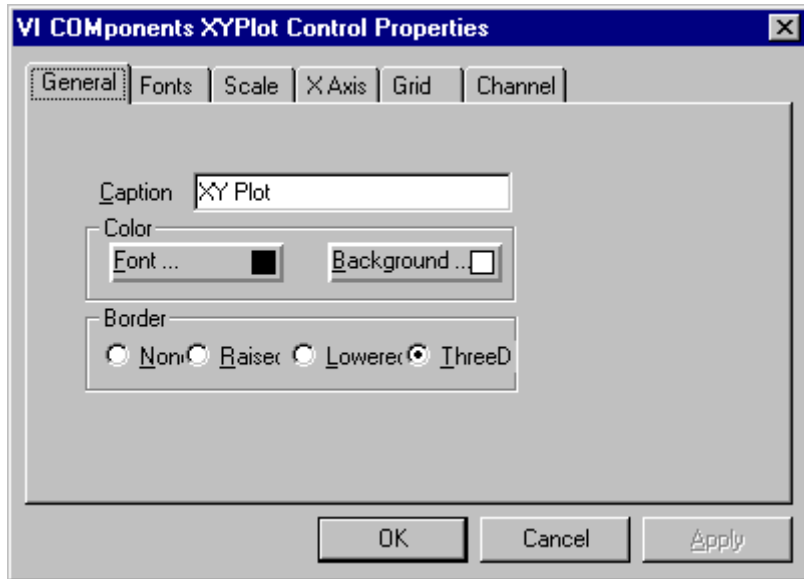
- Select the ActiveX control and choose *Edit ActiveX Properties* from the *Edit* or context menu, or use the tool bar.
- Double-click on the ActiveX control and choose *Edit Property Pages* from the *Select ActiveX Editing Mode* dialog box that appears.

Property page dialogs come from inside the control itself. This means that all controls have a different property page dialog box. For controls that do not have a property page dialog box a message indicating this appears instead.

Note

You must refer to the ActiveX control provider for information on the control properties. This information is not provided within the Operator Interface Screen Editor itself. However, if a help file is provided with the control, it may be accessed from the control dialog box.

A typical property pages dialog box is shown in the following figure.



Editing Methods

There are three general steps needed to configure an ActiveX control's methods:

- Select which of the control's methods will be called by the operator interface.
- Assign symbols to the method's arguments and return value (if needed).
- Define when the method will be called.

Controls have a variable number of internal methods, where each method is a function call to the control. A function's arguments and return value can be one of many possible data types (currently 38). Each of these data types may or may not be able to be mapped to a system supported data type. If it is not possible to map a supported data type to a type that is expected in the method, it will be impossible to call this method. If you attempt to set up this method, an appropriate error message appears.

Argument types for ActiveX controls start with *VT_*. The following table shows how the types are mapped to the supported data types.

ActiveX Control Data Type	System Supported Data Type
VT_BOOL	BOOL
VT_UI1, VT_I1	BYTE
VT_UI2	WORD
VT_UI4, VT_UINT	DWORD
VT_I2, VT_INT	INT
VT_I4	DINT
VT_R4, VT_R8	REAL
VT_BSTR	STRING
VT_VOID, VT_EMPTY, VT_NULL	Not mapped
VT_PTR	Pointer to all above VT_ types will be supported

One part of configuring an ActiveX control is to define when the control's methods should be called. This is done on a timer basis by a 200 millisecond timer running in the operator interface. Methods are eligible to be called every 200 milliseconds or a multiple of 200 milliseconds. The multiple will be user defined up to a value of 100 (=20 seconds).

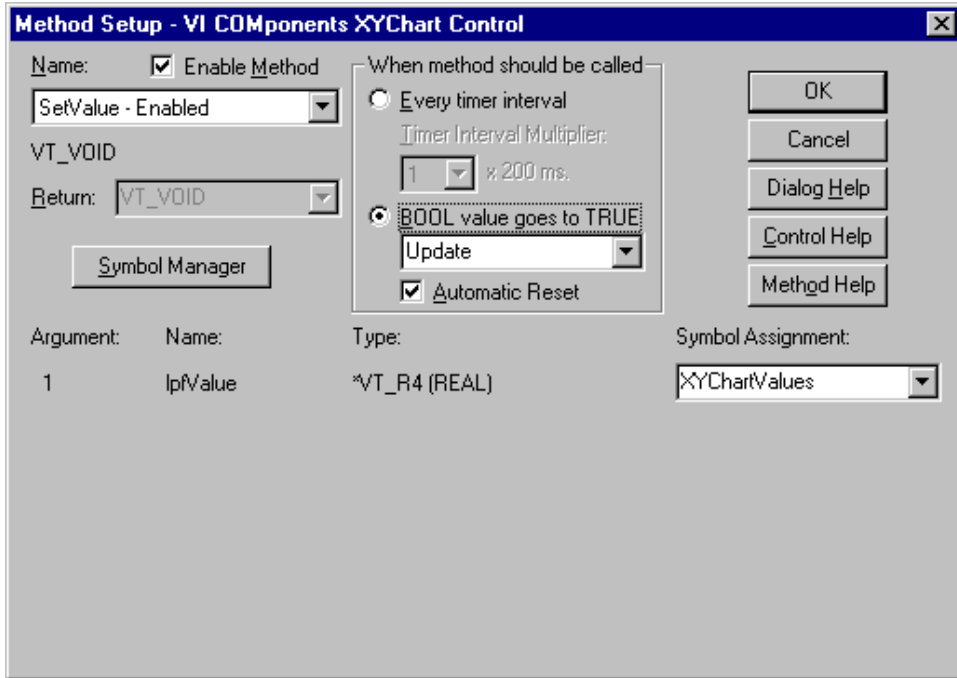
A method is eligible to be called in two different ways:

Every timer interval – or a user-defined multiple of the timer interval.

A BOOL symbol goes TRUE – when a user-defined BOOL symbol goes true, the method is called within the next timer interval. After the method returns, the BOOL symbol is optionally set FALSE.

To edit methods

- Do one of the following
 - Select the ActiveX control and choose *Edit ActiveX Methods* from the *Edit* or context menu, or tool bar.
 - Double-click on the ActiveX control and choose *Edit Methods* from the *Select ActiveX Editing Mode* dialog box that appears.
- A *Method Setup* dialog box appears. Refer to the following table and configure methods as needed. When done, click *OK* to save the configuration and return to the Operator Interface Screen Editor.



Field	Description
Name	Select the method to configure from the Name list box. They will be in alphabetical order.
Enable Method	Check this to enable the method. The method must be enabled to be called.
Return	If the method has a return type of VOID, VT_VOID appears in the Return box and it cannot be changed; otherwise the return type is indicated and a symbol of the appropriate type must be assigned in the Return list box. If necessary click <i>Symbol Manager</i> to create a new symbol.
Arguments	<p>If the method accepts arguments, they are listed with their number, name, and data type. Methods are limited to 16 arguments. An error message appears if the method has greater than 16 arguments. For each argument to which a value is to be assigned, assign a symbol from its Symbol Assignment list. If necessary, click <i>Symbol Manager</i> to create new symbols.</p> <p>Pointers to arrays (defined in the Symbol Manager) can be passed to the method. Specify the array name without a subscript to pass the entire array. The array size must match the method's required size.</p>

Field	Description
When method should be called	If the method is to be called strictly by time interval, click <i>Every Timer Interval</i> and select a multiplier. If the method is to be called when a Boolean symbol goes TRUE, select a time interval multiplier, then click on <i>BOOL value goes TRUE</i> and select a Boolean symbol from the list box. If <i>Automatic Reset</i> is checked, the Boolean symbol is reset FALSE after the method is called.
Symbol Manager	Displays the Symbol Manager.
Dialog Help	Displays help for the Method Setup dialog box.
Control Help	Displays help for the ActiveX control (provided by the control implementer).
Method Help	Displays help for the ActiveX control's method that is currently displayed (provided by the control implementer).

Editing Events

Most ActiveX controls have a list of events that they report to the operator interface container. For example, mouse clicks or key presses. Events may or may not have parameters associated with them. For example, an *on focus* event does not have any parameters, but a mouse-click event might have two integer parameters for x and y coordinates. When an event occurs, the operator interface will be able to do two separate things:

- Set a Boolean symbol TRUE – this is an option if the event has at least one parameter (argument). If the event has no parameters, this is mandatory. (The BOOL is **not** set to FALSE by the operator interface after the event.)
- Assign the value of an event argument to a symbol – if a symbol has been assigned to an event argument in the configuration, the value of the argument is assigned to the symbol in operation.

To edit events

1. Do one of the following:
 - Select the ActiveX control and choose *Edit ActiveX Events* from the *Edit* or context menu, or tool bar.
 - Double-click on the ActiveX control and choose *Edit Events* from the *Select ActiveX Editing Mode* dialog box that appears.
2. An *Event Setup* dialog box appears. Refer to the following table and configure events as needed. When done, click *OK* to save the configuration and return to the Operator Interface Screen Editor.

For controls that do not have an *Event Setup* dialog box a message indicating this appears instead.

Argument	Name	Type	Symbol Assignment
1	bLeftButton	VT_BOOL (BOOL)	LeftButton
2	fValue	*VT_R4 (REAL)	KnobValue

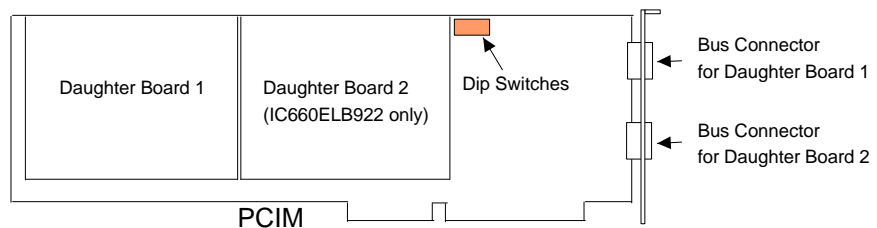
Field	Description
Name	Select the event to configure from the Name list box.
Enable Event	Check this to enable the event. The event must be enabled to be reported to the operator interface.
Event BOOL	If this is enabled and a Boolean symbol has been assigned, then in operation, the event sets the Boolean symbol TRUE. If necessary click Symbol Manager to create a new symbol.
Arguments	If the event accepts arguments, they are listed with their number, name, and data type. Events are limited to 16 arguments. An error message appears if the event has greater than 16 arguments. For each argument that a value is needed, assign a symbol from its Symbol Assignment list. If necessary click Symbol Manager to create new symbols.
Symbol Manager	Displays the Symbol Manager.
Dialog Help	Displays help for the Method Setup dialog box.
Control Help	Displays help for the ActiveX control (provided by the control implementer).
Method Help	Displays help for the ActiveX control's methods (provided by the control implementer).

The Personal Computer Interface Module for Genius I/O

This appendix provides a description of the GE Fanuc Genius[®] I/O Personal Computer Interface Module (PCIM). It also includes procedures for installing and configuring the PCIM.

Description

The single-slot PC Interface Module (PCIM) is an entry point into the Genius I/O System for the IBM PC. The PCIM is an "AT" style board, designed to be integrated into a user-developed microprocessor system. It is fully compatible with all Genius protocols, mechanical, electrical levels, and communications timing.



The PCIM is available with either one or two daughter board(s) (IC660ELB921/922). Each PCIM daughter board provides a low cost 'tap' on a Genius I/O bus, allowing a host system to control remote I/O utilizing the extensive diagnostics, high reliability and noise immunity of the Genius I/O System. Each daughter board is independently configurable using the configuration software supplied with the PCIM.

Board-edge connectors are used to connect the PCIM to the Genius bus. If the PCIM has two daughter boards, they can be connected to the same bus or to independent busses.

Daughter Board

A PCIM daughterboard is a general purpose I/O Controller for the Genius I/O System. It provides a convenient method to control devices on the Genius serial bus. The PCIM daughterboard performs the housekeeping tasks of initialization and fault management for up to 30 bus devices, keeps up-to-date images of the I/O controlled by each device (whether the device is a Genius I/O Block or other bus device), and can communicate with other Controllers on the Genius bus by passing background messages not associated with I/O commands or Global Data. The interface to this RAM is optimized for the IBM personal computer bus.

Mother Board

The PCIM mother board provides a convenient way to interface an Open Architecture daughter board like the PCIM daughter board to an IBM compatible Host system. All the signals necessary to communicate to a daughter board are buffered through the mother board to the Host bus. In addition to the normal interface lines, the mother board provides the following daughter board control and monitoring functions:

- A standard 'unit load' to the IBM bus.

- Works in ISA-compatible backplanes.

- Low supply voltage detection.

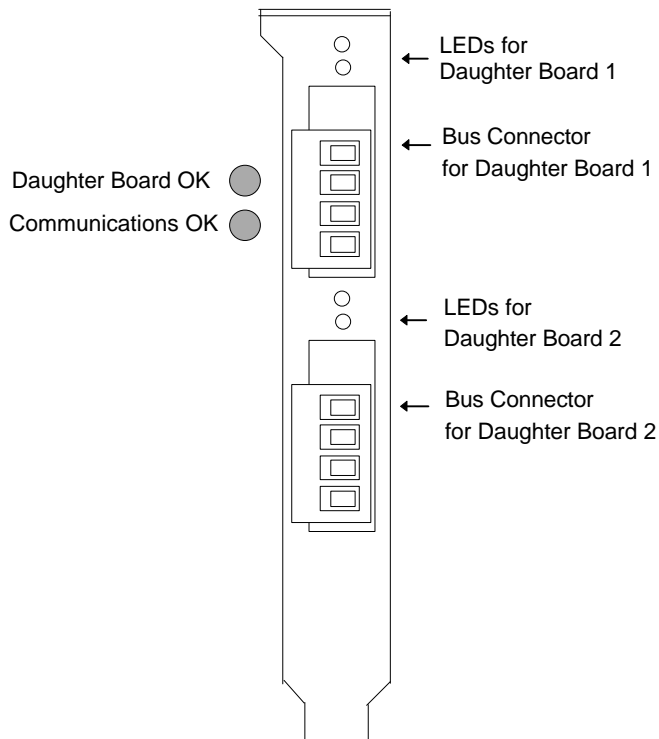
- Power up RESET signal sequencing.

- Host system address decoding over the full PC AT memory maps.

- A built-in watchdog timer that can monitor system operation and shut down the daughter board if the Host system faults, preventing any conflicts on the Genius bus.

Faceplate

For each daughter board, two LEDs (Board OK and Communications OK) are provided in the PCIM faceplate. For each daughter board, the LEDs are as shown below:



Openings in the faceplate accommodate the serial bus connectors for the PCIM daughter board(s).

Installation and Configuration

In order for you to interface the PCIM with the Genius serial bus, you must first perform the following steps:

Determine the I/O Port and Shared Memory addresses, and the IRQ you will be using for the PCIM.

Set the EEPROM I/O address on the DIP switches.

Install the PCIM in the computer.

Configure the PCIM using the PCIM Configuration Utility (PCU)

Connect the PCIM to the serial bus.

Hardware Required

The hardware requirements for installing and operating the PCIM is the same as for running PC Control software.

Suitable Computers

The PCIM has been tested successfully in many types of IBM PC-compatible computers. It is fully compatible with the ISA backplane, and provides host system address decoding over the full PC AT memory maps. However, it has not been possible to test the PCIM with all computers that may be available. Therefore, proper operation of the PCIM in every type of host computer cannot be assured.

Computer Resources You Must Reserve

To install and configure the PCIM, you must reserve specific computer system resources (I/O ports, memory, and IRQ). This is done using DIP switches (EEPROM address) and the PCIM Configuration Utility. Before beginning the actual installation and configuration, it is a good idea to determine what addresses you can use that will not conflict with devices already installed in your computer.

You should record this information for reference when you configure the PCIM.

The resources you must reserve for the PCIM are:

One I/O Port for the EEPROM address set using the DIP switches (same value as the Controller Port address set using the PCIM Configuration Utility).

A block of four I/O ports for *each* GENI daughter board. This block must begin on a 4-byte boundary (0, 4, 8, C hex.) in the range 100 to 3E4 hex.

A block of 4000 hex. shared memory for *each* GENI daughter board. This block must begin on a 16 kilobyte boundary (0000, 4000, 8000, C000 hex.)

An unused IRQ (3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, or 11) to be shared by all GENI daughter boards in your system.

Suggested Addresses to Avoid Conflicts

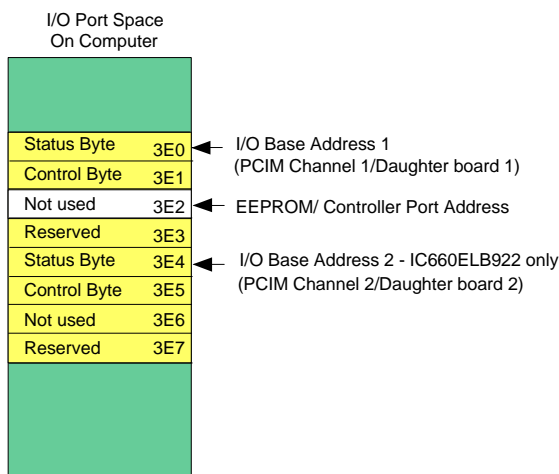
The PCIM Configuration Utility (PCU) automatically fills in suggested values for the Controller Port, I/O Port, and Memory Base addresses and the IRQ value. These values are taken from the suggested values below. Be sure to check your Computer's System Configuration to verify their are no conflicts.

EEPROM Address (same value as Controller Port Address)

Address of a 1-byte I/O port set using the PCIM DIP switches (EEPROM address) and configured in the PCU (Controller Port address). This I/O port is used by the PCU to write PCIM configuration data to the EEPROM on the PCIM and to allow applications to access the data when needed.

This I/O port address is independent from the I/O ports required by the daughter boards (see I/O Base address). However, we suggest setting it within an unused portion of the I/O port space you will reserve for the first GENI daughter board on the PCIM (that is, 2 higher than the I/O Base address for the daughter board). This byte is not used by the PCIM and using it will minimize the chance of address conflicts. *See the illustration below.*

Example: If you choose 3E0 as the I/O Base address for the first GENI daughter board (Channel 1) of the PCIM, then use 3E2 for the EEPROM (Controller Port) address.



I/O Base Address

Starting address of the 4-byte I/O port space you need to reserve in your computer for each GENI daughter board (channel) in the PCIM. This address must be on a 4-byte boundary.

These addresses are normally OK for you to use.

3E0	348	2E0	228
3E4	34C	2E4	22C
340		220	
344		224	

Check your computer's system configuration to verify that there is no conflict.

Memory Base Address

Starting address of a 16-kilobyte block of memory you need to reserve in your computer for each GENI daughter board (channel) in the PCIM. This address must be on a 16-kilobyte boundary.

These addresses are normally OK if your computer is not using the indicated hardware or software.

B0000	Used for monochrome video memory
B4000	Used for monochrome video memory
C8000	Usually OK
CC000	Used for the GE Fanuc Parallel WSI card
D0000	Used for EMS memory
D4000	Used for EMS memory
D8000	Usually OK
DC000	Usually OK
E0000	Usually OK
E4000	Usually OK
E8000	Usually OK
EC000	Usually OK

Check your computer's system configuration to verify that there is no conflict.

IRQ

Interrupt for the PCIM.

Check to see if IRQ 10 or 11 is being used. IRQs you can configure for the PCIM are (3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, or 11) to be shared among all GENI daughter boards in your system. *Check your computer's system configuration to verify that there is no conflict.*

Some common IRQ associations are shown below.

IRQ3 Serial COM2:
IRQ4 Serial COM1:
IRQ5 Network/LPT2:
IRQ6 Floppy disk

Determining I/O Port, Memory, and Interrupt Resource Conflicts

When installing and configuring the PCIM, you will assign values for the EEPROM address, Controller Port address, Memory Base address, I/O Base address, and IRQ. You must choose values for these parameters that do not conflict with those used by other devices installed in your computer. These are the resources used by the devices in your computer.

Windows NT 4.0 Resources

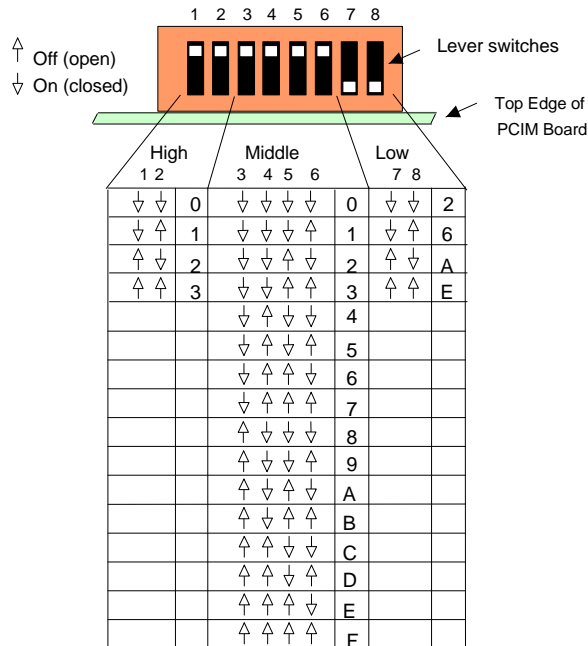
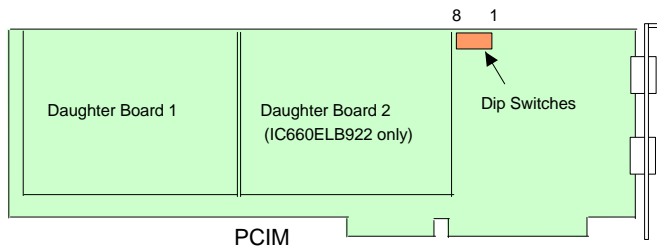
Log in under an account with system administrator privileges.

1. Press the Start button
2. From the Start menu, choose Programs, Administrative Tools, Windows NT Diagnostics.
3. Click the Resources tab, then review the I/O Port, Memory, and IRQ dialog boxes for unused addresses.
4. Find a block of 4 unused (unlisted) I/O port addresses for each GENI daughter board. The first port in the block is the *I/O Base address* for a channel configured in the PCIM Configuration Utility.
5. Find a block of 4000 hexadecimal unused (unlisted) memory for each GENI daughter board. The starting address of this block is the *Memory Base address* for a channel configured in the PCIM Configuration Utility.
6. Find a free (unlisted) IRQ for the *Interrupt* configured in the PCIM Configuration Utility.

Setting the DIP Switches on the PCIM

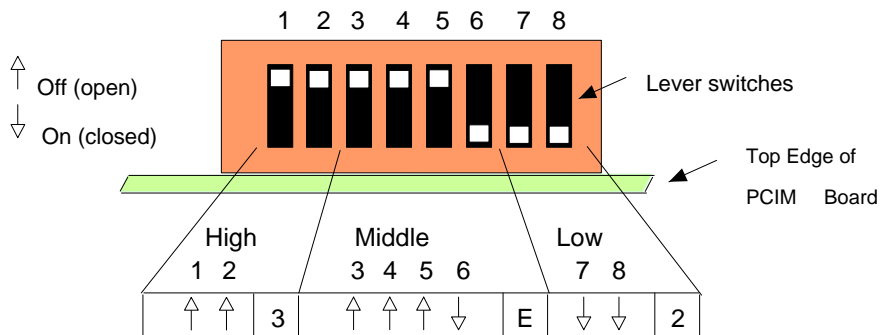
The I/O port set using the DIP switches is used by the PCU to write PCIM configuration data to the EEPROM on the PCIM and to allow applications to access the data when needed.

Switch positions are numbered 1 through 8. Use switches 1 and 2 to set the high hex. digit, switches 3, 4, 5, and 6 to set the middle hex. digit, and switches 7 and 8 to set the low hex. digit.



Example Switch Setting

If the first GENI daughter board (Channel 1) is to be configured to 3E0 hex., we suggest setting the EEPROM DIP switch to 3E2. This example shows how to set the EEPROM address to 3E2.



Installing the PCIM in the Computer

1. Power OFF the Host computer and unplug from power source.
2. Install the PCIM according to the computer manufacturer's instructions for option cards.
3. Connect the bus to the PCIM (this step can be done after configuring the PCIM if desired).
4. DO NOT

Mount the PCIM where air flow across it is obstructed.

Mount the PCIM nearer than 1/8 inch (.318cm) to any other boards or rack components.

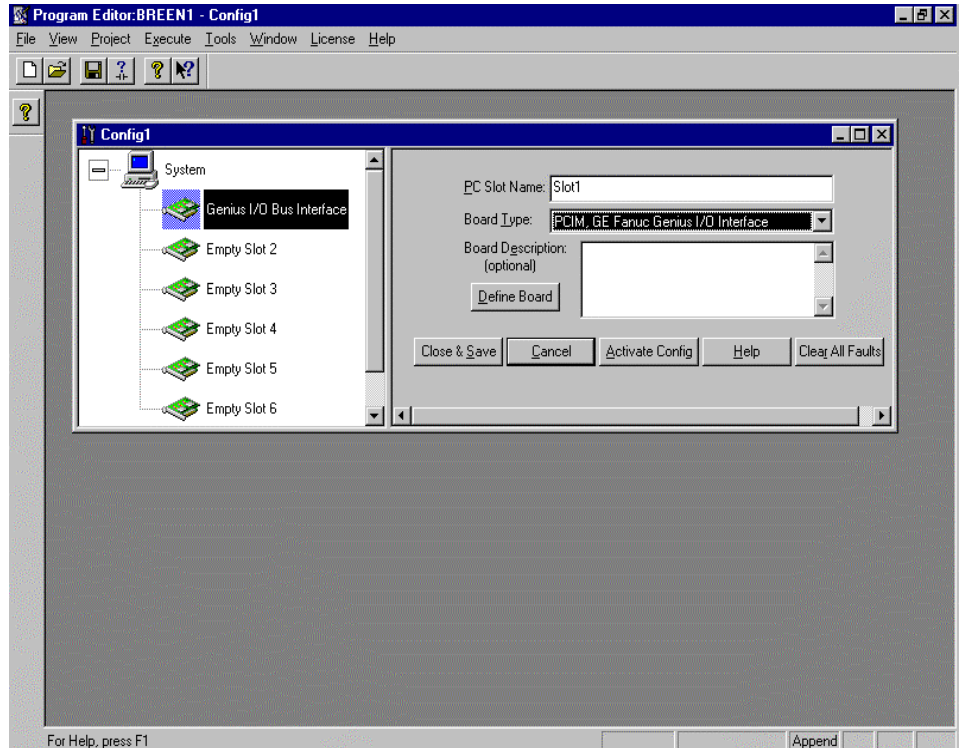
Use adhesives or conformal coatings on any part of the PCIM.

Configuring the PCIM

Before configuring the PCIM, make sure you have determine available I/O port and shared memory addresses and the IRQ you will be using. See the section, "Computer Resources You Must Reserve", above.

To configure the PCIM:

1. Start up PC Control, Program Editor.
2. From the File menu, choose New or Open Config to create a new system configuration or open an existing one. The system configuration screen appears.



3. Click on an "Empty Slot" icon under the "System" icon.
4. In the Board Type field, choose PCIM from the drop-down list then click the Define Board button. The PCIM-Genius I/O Driver dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows the 'PCIM, GE Fanuc Genius I/O Driver, Version 3.01.0016' configuration utility. It features a title bar with a close button. The main area is organized into several sections:

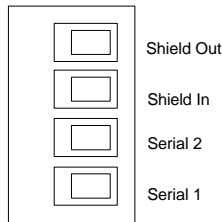
- Board Location:** Includes text boxes for 'Rack:', 'Slot: Slot1', and 'Slot No: 0x0'. To the right are two buttons: 'Read PCIM Params From Registry' and 'Run PCIM Configuration Utility'.
- PCIM Board Definition:** Includes a 'Name:' text box, a 'Model No:' dropdown menu set to 'NULL', a 'Board OK bit:' text box, a 'Cfg Mismatch:' text box, and a 'Description (Optional):' text box. There is also a checkbox labeled 'Disable outputs when no programs are running'.
- Port1 and Port2:** Each section has a 'Simulate Port' checkbox and a set of five spinners for 'Network Number', 'Interrupt Number', 'Shared RAM Address', 'I/O Port Address' (set to 0x0000), and 'PCIM Bus Address'. Below each set of spinners are four buttons: 'Test Port Configuration', 'Auto Configure Network Devices', 'Setup Global Data', and 'Define PCIM I/O'.
- Bottom Right:** Three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

5. Start the PCIM Configuration Utility by clicking the Run PCIM Configuration Utility button. In the PCU you will configure a number of fields. Refer to the list of available addresses and IRQ you prepared. Online Help is available to assist you through the configuration.
6. Once you have configured the PCIM and exited the PCU, click the Read PCIM Params From Registry button. A window will appear containing a list of configured PCIMs.
7. Choose the appropriate PCIM and click OK. This causes the port parameters in Genius I/O Driver dialog box to be updated with the configured values for the interrupt number (IRQ), the shared RAM address (Memory Base address), the I/O port address, (I/O Base address), and the PCIM bus address (Serial Bus address).
8. Finally, click the Test Port Configuration button. The Board OK and Communications OK lights should then turn ON.

See the section, "Troubleshooting" if you have any problems.

Connecting the PCIM to the Bus

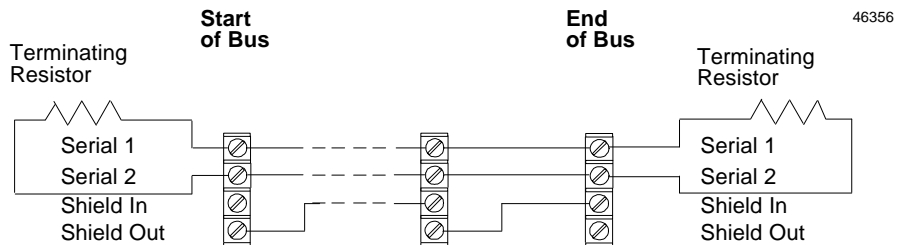
Devices can be placed in any physical sequence on the bus. Each connector on the PCIM has four terminals for the bus cable (Serial 1, Serial 2, Shield In, and Shield Out). Note that the sequence of these terminals on a PCIM connector is not the same as on other bus devices (for example, I/O blocks).



These terminals accept two AWG #20 wires (0.54mm^2 cross section) plus one lead of a 0.25 Watt resistor (optional: used for bus termination). The minimum recommended wire size is AWG #22 (0.36mm^2 cross section).

Connect the Serial 1 terminal of each connector to the Serial 1 terminals of the previous device and the next device. Connect the Serial 2 terminal of each connector to the Serial 2 terminals of the previous device and the next device. If the PCIM has two daughter boards, they may be connected to different busses or to the same bus.

Shield In of each connector must be connected to Shield Out of the preceding device. For the first device on the bus, Shield In can be left unconnected. For the last device on the bus, Shield Out can be left unconnected.



When making bus connections, the maximum exposed length of bare wires should be two inches. For added protection, each shield drain wire should be insulated with spaghetti tubing to prevent the Shield In and Shield Out wires from touching each other.

Bus Termination

A bus must be terminated at each end by impedance that is correct for that cable type. Impedance will be 75, 100, 120, or 150 ohms. If a PCIM connector is at either end of its bus, install the appropriate terminating resistor across the Serial 1 and Serial 2 terminals. The *Genius I/O System and Communications User's Manual* lists appropriate terminating resistors for each recommended bus cable type.

Removing the PCIM from the Bus

The PCIM's bus connectors are removable; they can be removed while the system is operating without compromising data integrity on the bus. To remove a bus connector, hold it carefully by its top and bottom sides and pull it away from the PCIM. If an operating cable is presently attached to the bus, be very careful not to touch the bus wires to each other or to anything else. Do not put the connector down on a conductive surface.

Individual bus wires should never be removed from the connector terminals while the bus is in operation; the resulting unreliable data on the bus could cause hazardous control conditions.

Specifications

Catalog Numbers

Single-channel PCIM	IC660ELB921
Dual-channel PCIM	IC660ELB922

LEDs (2 for each daughter board) GENI OK, COMMS OK (Communications OK)

Electrical

Power Requirements	5 volts DC +/- 10%, 400 ma (maximum)
Bus Loading	1 LS TTL load per input line
Bus Drive Capability	10 LS TTL loads per output line

Mechanical

PCIM board type	Single-slot "AT" style board
Hand-held Monitor connection	External connector with HHM and bus terminals
Serial bus connection	Board-edge terminals or external connector. Board-edge terminals accept two AWG #20 (0.55mm ² cross section) wires or three AWG #22 (0.36mm ² cross section) wires .
Host backplane interface	fully ISA compatible

Memory Requirements

Mother board	4 bytes
<u>Each</u> daughter board	16 Kilobytes

Environmental Requirements – Operating

Temperature	0 to 60 degrees C (ambient temperature at board)
Humidity	5% to 95% non-condensing
Altitude	10,000 feet
Vibration	0.2 inch displacement 5 to 10 Hz 1 G 10 to 200 Hz
Shock	5 G, 10 ms duration per MIL-STD 810C, method 516.2

Environmental Requirements – Non-operating

Temperature	-40 to 125 degrees C (ambient temperature at board)
Humidity	5% to 95% non-condensing
Altitude	40,000 feet
Vibration	0.2 inch displacement 5 to 10 Hz 1 G, 10 to 200 Hz
Shock	5 G, 10 ms duration per MIL-STD 810C, method 516.2

PCIM Electrical Characteristics

Power Supply Requirements

The PCIM requires a 5 volt DC source for logic power. Supply voltage should not vary more than 10% above or below nominal (below 4.5 V DC or above 5.5 V DC), or the PCIM will not function correctly. The PCIM with one daughter board (single-channel PCIM) typically draws 1.0 Amps. The PCIM with two daughter boards (dual-channel PCIM) typically draws 1.5 Amps.

Bus Loads/Drive Capability

All input lines to the PCIM present no more than one standard LSTTL load to the host interface connector.

All output lines from the PCIM are capable of driving 10 standard LSTTL loads. These lines, with the exception of the /INT and /PCIM OK lines, are tri-state outputs. The /INT line is an open-collector output that can be wired-ORed to a single interrupt input. The /PCIM OK and /COMM OK lines are low-true open collector type outputs with built-in current limiting to 10 ma suitable for driving LEDs directly.

All input signals to the PCIM from the Host system look like one LSTTL load to the host system. These signals are TTL compatible and switch at TTL levels.

Control output signals to the host are open-collector LSTTL drivers with 10K resistive pull-ups, capable of sinking 4 mA while maintaining an output voltage of 0.4V or lower.

The data transceiver is a tri-state LSTTL device capable of sourcing or sinking 12 mA with $V_{OL} = 0.4V$ and $V_{OH} = 2.0V$.

The PCIM is fully compatible with ISA backplanes.

Signal Conditioning

The PCIM has two connectors that you can access when the PCIM is installed in a PC type rack. Both connectors are for the standard twisted pair connection to a serial bus.

The Hand-held Monitor can be connected through an interface cable to the separate Genius connectors.

All of the lines in from both connectors are either isolated or impedance limited to protect the PCIM from voltage spikes or the misapplication of high voltages on the serial bus connections.

Troubleshooting

As with program debugging, hardware/firmware troubleshooting is accomplished by thinking logically of the function of each part of the system and how these functions interrelate. A basic understanding of the various indicator lights will help you quickly isolate the problem to the PCIM, a Bus Controller, an I/O rack, an I/O Block, or the CPU.

The total system has to be considered when problems occur. The CPU, Host computer, I/O Blocks and external devices connected to or controlled by the Genius I/O system must all be operating and connected properly. All cable connections as well as all screw-down or soldered connections should be checked carefully.

Replacement Module Concept

When a problem arises, first isolate it to the major assembly, then to the defective module within that assembly. The defective module is then replaced from a duplicate set of modules maintained on site. Your production line or system is back up fast.

The defective module can be returned through normal channels under warranty or for service without keeping your production line or system down for an extended period of time. The replacement concept minimizes downtime to minutes as contrasted (potentially) to days. The potential savings far outweigh the comparatively small cost of duplicate modules.

If you did not purchase a duplicate set of modules with your initial system, we recommend that you contact your authorized GE Fanuc distributor and do so. Then, with the help of this manual and the staff of your local authorized GE Fanuc distributor, you will be able to troubleshoot and repair just about any problem that may arise.

PCIM Troubleshooting

LEDs

A malfunction causing the improper operation of a PCIM can generally be isolated by checking the condition of the status indicator LEDs on the PCIM. The normal condition of the status indicator LEDs is the ON state. If a LED is not ON, check the troubleshooting sequence in this section for the proper course of action.

Indicator	Status	Definition
BOARD OK	ON	Power is available to the PCIM (adequate power must be available for it to function properly), and the on-board self-diagnostics test was passed.
	OFF	The watchdog timer has timed out, indicating a board failure or improper address assignment or /RST input line is low.
COMM OK	ON	Power is available, the controller's communications hardware is functional, and it can send data (receives the token) every serial bus scan.
	OFF	(or FLASHING) means an error has been detected in the communications hardware or access to the Genius serial bus.

Fault Isolation and Repair

If the status indicator LEDs are in the correct state but the bus is not functioning properly, the malfunctions below may describe the problem. If so, follow the procedures listed under the appropriate malfunction.

An LED does not come ON when a PCIM is plugged in and powered up.

If Board OK OFF and Comm OK ON -

Check the parameters entered using the configuration software.

The BOARD OK LED will not come on.

Check to see if the PCIM is completely inserted in the host backplane connector, and that all connector pins are properly aligned.

If all appears to be in order, assume hardware failure - replace PCIM.

If Board OK ON and Comm OK OFF -

Check for correct cable type and length (see *Genius I/O System and Communications User's Manual*, GEK-90486-1).

See if correct terminating resistors (see *Genius I/O System and Communications User's Manual*, GEK-90486-1) are installed at both ends of bus.

Determine if serial bus wiring has been completed in a daisy chain fashion.

Make sure cabling is not in proximity to high voltage runs.

Look for a broken cable.

If both LEDs off -

Check to see if the PCIM is plugged in, seated properly, and receiving power.

If both LEDs flashing together -

Two devices on the same bus have probably been configured with the same device number (serial bus address).

Check using the HHM.

Repeated bus errors

Ensure that cable shielding is properly installed and grounded (see *Genius I/O System and Communications User's Manual*, GEK-90486-1).

Unplug bus communications cable from PCIM, refer to the Device number sheets from which you configured the system, and use the HHM to read configuration/compare device numbers and I/O reference numbers.

If all appears to be in order, replace PCIM.

System shuts down with parity errors.

Duplicate or overlapping PCIM/I/O References.

Input duplicated on same bus.

Input references from other PCIMs overlap.

Bus Errors - cannot get PCIM up and running

Serial 1/Serial 2 crossed

Intermittent or total lack of communications.

Mixed Baud Rates

Power up blocks one at a time and confirm baud rate. Any change to baud rate in block will not take effect until block power is cycled.

No Global Data.

Destination device off line

Verify destination on line.

Unsuccessful Datagram completion.

Destination device off line

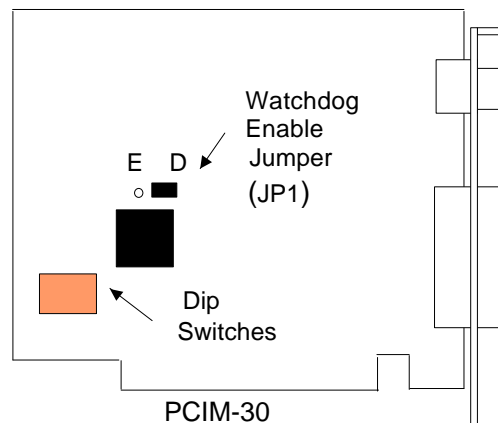
Verify destination on line.

Appendix **B**

Personal Computer Interface (PCIF) for Series 90-30 I/O

The Personal Computer Interface for Series 90-30 I/O (IC693PIF301) provides I/O access to up to four Series 90-30 expansion and/or remote racks. The half-slot card is designed for IBM PC/AT compatible computers. The PCIF-30 supports all discrete and analog I/O modules in addition to some specialty modules.

The connection from the board to the racks uses the same cable as used in a standard Series 90-30 expansion or remote system. Also, the board features a hardware watchdog that forces all outputs to a reset condition and opens a relay if the PC stops updating outputs for any reason.



Installing the PCIF-30

To install the PCIF-30, you must reserve eight contiguous I/O ports in your computer's I/O port space. This is done by setting the board address using the dip switches. Before beginning the actual installation, it is a good idea to determine what ports you can use that will not conflict with I/O ports designated for devices already installed in your computer.

How to Begin

1. First refer to the topic "Suggested Addresses to Avoid Conflicts".
2. Determine if the suggested addresses (resources) are available on your system.
3. Set the dip switches on the PCIF-30 and install it in your computer.
4. Set the Watchdog enable jumper to "D" for disabled.

Suggested Addresses to Avoid Conflicts

Board Address

Starting address of the 8-byte I/O port space you need to reserve in your computer for the PCIF-30. This address must be on an 8-byte boundary.

These addresses are usually OK to use.

310	348	2E0	228
318	34C	2E4	22C
340	3E0	220	
344	3E4	224	

Check your computer's system configuration to verify that there is no conflict.

Determining I/O Port Resource Conflicts

When installing the PCIF-30, you will assign a value for the board address using the dip switches. You must choose a value for this address that does not conflict with those used by other devices installed in your computer. These are the resources used by the devices in your computer.

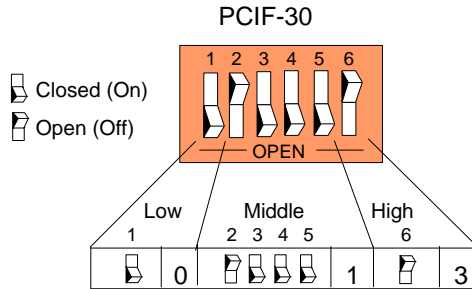
Windows NT 4.0 Resources

Log in under an account with system administrator privileges.

1. Press the Start button
2. From the Start menu, choose Programs, Administrative Tools, Windows NT Diagnostics.
3. Click the Resources tab, then review the I/O Port dialog box for unused addresses.
4. Find a block of 8 unused (unlisted) I/O port addresses for the PCIF-30. The first port in the block is the board address.

Example Switch Setting

This example shows how to set the board address to 310.



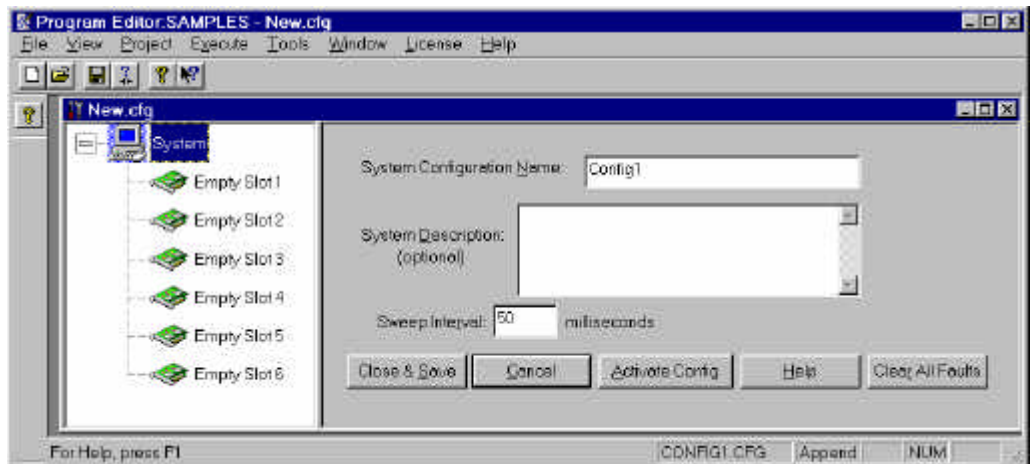
Configuring the PCIF-30 Card

1. Start PC Control *Program Editor* Software.

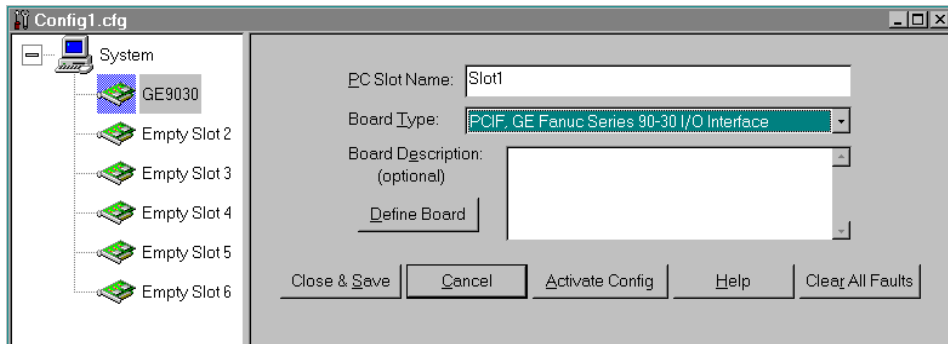
From the Start menu, choose PC Control Applications, Program Editor.

2. Configure the PCIF-30 Card.

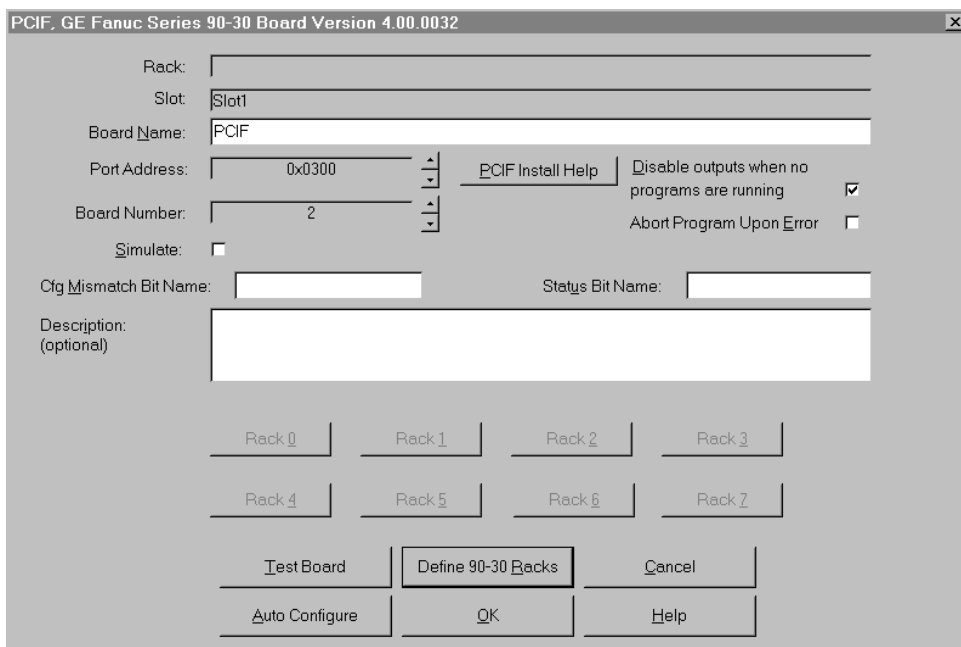
A. From the PC Control Program Editor File menu, click Open Config (or New Config). The following configuration window will appear.



- B. In the tree display on the left side of the window, select the slot that you want to configure. The following window will appear.



- C. In the Board Type field, select PCIF, GE Fanuc Series 90-30 I/O Interface. Click the Define Board button. The PCIF Board dialog box will appear.



- D. Set configuration parameters for the PCIF-30 card. Make sure the Port Address is set correctly. Port Address should match the DIP switch setting (see page B-3).

For additional configuration details, consult PC Control online help.

- E. After setting the Port address, click the Test Board button to verify the installation is correct. (The Runtime subsystem must not be active.) A Board Test dialog box containing the message “PCIF Board found, shared RAM access successfully found” should appear. If this message does not appear, you should try configuring a different block of shared RAM.

3. Configure Series 90-30 I/O.

From the PCIF Board dialog box, you can continue the configuration process.

- **Auto Configuration:** If the I/O racks and modules are in place and powered up, and if the Runtime subsystem is not active, you can use this feature. When you click the Auto Configure button, the software will activate the PCIF-30 card and read in information about attached racks and modules.
- **Manual Configuration:** To use this feature, click the Define 90-30 Racks button. The Rack Definition dialog box will appear.

For additional information, refer to the online help for PC Control software.

Appendix
C

*Personal Computer Interface (PCIF2) for
Series 90-30 I/O*

Overview

The IC693PIF400 personal computer interface card allows PC Control software to communicate with up to seven Series 90-30 expansion or remote I/O racks. I/O racks can be located up to 700 feet from the personal computer. PC Control software can monitor and control up to 25,886 bytes of I/O through the PIF400. Practical limits on I/O capacity depend on scan requirements and I/O configuration.

The PIF400 card plugs into a personal computer's PC/AT/ISA bus 16-bit slot. Expansion and remote racks connect to the card in a daisy-chained fashion using a 25-pin female D connector. The PIF400 provides a watchdog supervised RUN output signal and relay to allow integration with safety circuits. For specifications, refer to the datasheet provided with the interface card, GFK-1540.

This appendix provides the following information:

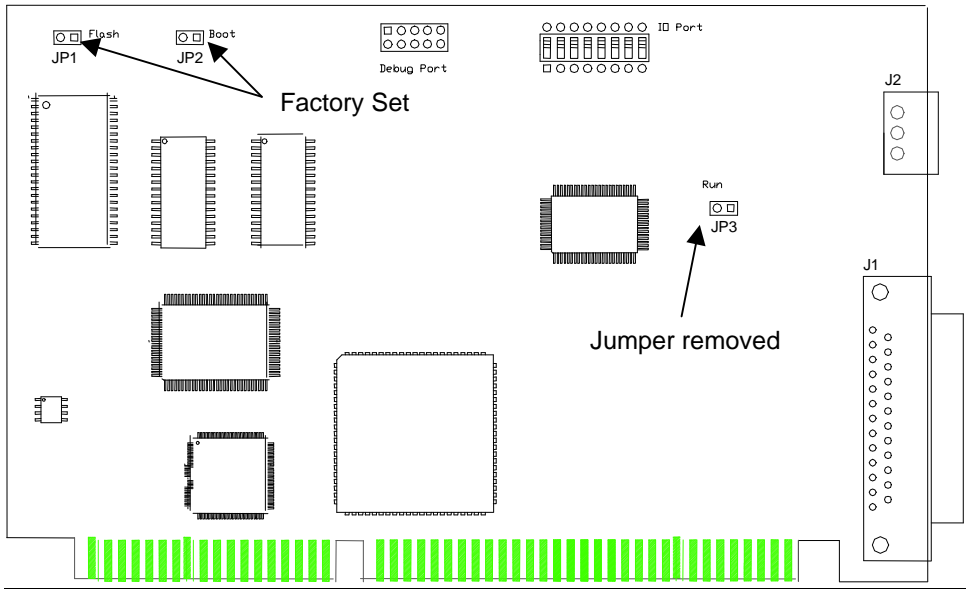
- Compatibility
- Hardware Overview
- Jumpers
- Connectors
- DIP Switch
- Quick Start Guide

Compatibility

The PIF400 supports all Series 90-30 discrete and analog I/O modules that can be configured by PC Control.

Hardware Overview

The PIF400 card has one configurable jumper, an I/O cable connector, and a Run relay.



Jumpers

JP3 – Run at Power Up

This jumper can be used to determine whether the PIF400 will require a Start signal from the PC to run.

If J3 is removed, the PIF400 will not run until it receives a Start signal from the PC. If the PC is reset the PIF400 resets and waits for the Start signal from the PC.

If J3 is installed, the PIF400 runs as soon as power is applied to the PC. If the PC is reset the PIF400 is *not* reset, and continues to run.

The default position for JP3 is *removed*.

JP1 – Flash Protect and JP2 – Boot Protect

These jumpers are set at the factory and must be left installed for the PIF400 card to operate properly.

Connectors

J1 – Expansion/Remote I/O Connector

This 25-pin female D connector is used to communicate with up to seven I/O racks. This connector is connected to the expansion port on the first I/O rack in the system.

Pin Assignments for J1 Expansion Connector

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Direction
1	SHLD	Shield	N/A
7	GND	Ground	N/A
2	DFRAME+	Data frame signal pair	Output
3	DFRAME-		
8	RUN+	Run signal pair	Output
9	RUN-		
12	PERR+	Parity error signal pair	Input
13	PERR-		
16	DATA+	Data signal pair	Input and Output
17	DATA-		
20	RSEL+	Bus select signal pair	Output
21	RSEL-		
24	IOCLK+	Data clock signal pair	Output
25	IOCLK-		

You must supply a cable to connect the PIF400 card to the I/O racks. This cable should feature seven twisted pairs, with an overall shield and drain wire (Belden 8107 or equivalent). The final rack on the I/O Bus should be terminated with an I/O Bus terminator plug, catalog number IC693ACC307.

Interconnecting cables can be standard length GE Fanuc expansion cables, listed below, or custom length cables. Remote racks can be located up to 700 feet (213 meters) and expansion racks up to 50 feet (15 meters) from the personal computer.

Cable Type	Part Number
1-meter <i>T</i> cable	IC693CBL300
2-meter <i>T</i> cable	IC693CBL301
15-meter point-to-point cable	IC693CBL302

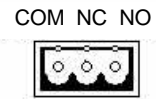
J2 – RUN Relay (Watchdog Timer) Connection

When the run signal to the 90-30 backplane is activated, the relay controlling this connector is energized.

The RUN relay can be wired to control external safety equipment in case the computer or software application fails. Under normal operation with active I/O, the PIF400 watchdog timer is continuously reset to keep the relay in its energized (non-Normal) state. If the application software fails to update outputs or access the RUN contact, the watchdog timer turns all outputs off after one second. This means that all output module circuits go to the off state, the RUN LED in each rack power supply is turned off, and the relay goes to its Normal (de-energized) state.

Pin Assignments for J2, RUN Relay Connection

Pin	Signal Name
1	Common
2	Normally Closed (NC) relay contact
3	Normally Open (NO) relay contact



RUN Relay Contact Specifications

Initial Resistance	50 milliohms
Maximum Switching Power	60 Watts, 62.5 VA
Maximum Switching Voltage	220 VDC, 250 VAC
Maximum Switching Current	2 Amps
Maximum Carrying Current	3 Amps
UL/CSA Ratings	125 VAC @ 0.3 A 110 VDC @ 0.3 A 30 VDC @ 1.0 A
Minimum Operations	
Mechanical	100,000,000
Electrical	500,000 (30 VDC @ 1.0 A, resistive) 100,000 (30 VDC @ 2.0 A, resistive)

P1 –Programmer Port

There should be *no* jumpers on any of these pins.

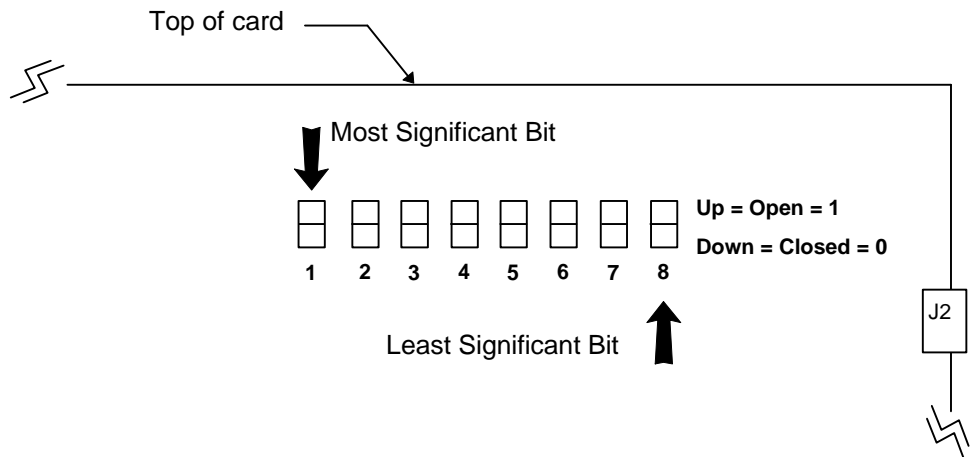
DIP Switch

S1 – I/O Port Address Selection Switch This eight-position DIP switch selects the base address in the PC's I/O address space at which the PIF400 responds.

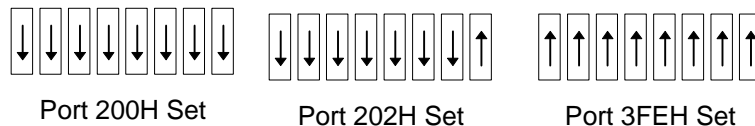
The PIF400 uses two adjacent I/O ports starting on any two byte boundary from 200 hex to 3FE hex. The factory default setting is 200 hex. Settings for all possible addresses are listed in the data sheet provided with the interface card.

Note

S1 might have different styles, different markings, or both. **Base your switch settings on the physical switch position as shown below, not on any engraved numbering.**



Location of S1 DIP Switches



Examples for Setting S1 Switches

Quick Start Guide

1. Check System Resources

The PIF400 card requires two adjacent I/O ports in your computer's I/O port space. These are reserved by setting the board address using the S1 DIP switch. Before installing the PIF400 card in your PC, you should determine what ports you can use that will not conflict with I/O ports designated for devices already installed in your PC.

The PIF400 card requires 32Kbytes (7FFFH) of shared RAM. The starting address for this memory is configured by PC Control (default is D0000). You will need to verify that this memory is not being used by another device.

To find out what resources are being used, follow the instructions below.

- A. Log in under an account with system administrator privileges.
- B. From the Windows NT® Start menu, choose Programs, Administrative Tools, Windows NT diagnostics.
- C. Select the Resources tab. Click the I/O button and review the I/O Port dialog box for unused addresses.
- D. Find a block of two unused (unlisted) I/O port addresses for the PIF400. Switch S1 should be set to the first port in the block. The factory default setting for S1 is 200 hex; if ports 200—202 are being used, you will need to change the setting of S1 (See step 2, “Set DIP Switch.”)
- E. To verify memory availability, click the Memory tab. Find an available block of 32Kbytes and make a note of it for use in the software configuration of the PIF400 card. If the default setting (D0000—D7FFF) is being used, you will need to configure a different block of memory in PC Control.

2. Set DIP Switch

Note

You do not need to change the settings of DIP switch S1 unless it conflicts with other interface cards installed in the computer. The factory default setting is 200 hex.

If you need to change the DIP switch settings, see page C-6 for details.

3. Install the PIF400 Card in Your PC

Note

The PC and the Series 90 I/O racks should be connected to a common ground connection. Normally this common ground connection is provided by connecting the PC and the I/O racks to the same power source with the same ground reference point, but this will need to be verified for each installation.

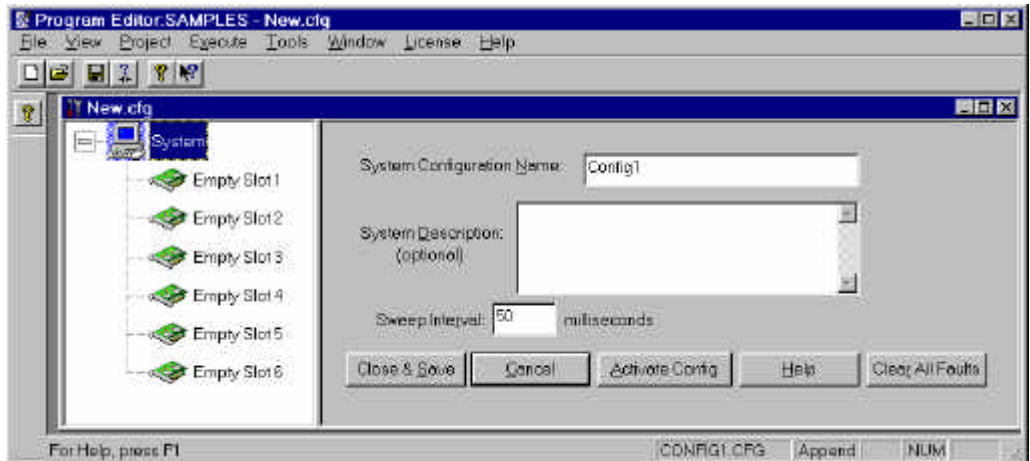
- A. Install the IC693PIF400 in an available PC/AT/ISA expansion slot inside the PC by following the instructions provided by the computer manufacturer. To ensure maximum system noise immunity, make sure the PIF400 card's metal I/O bracket makes good electrical contact with the PC chassis (using the screw removed when the blank plate was removed), and the computer's power supply is solidly grounded.
- B. Connect the Series 90-30 expansion and/or remote racks to the card's 25-pin D Expansion connector (J1). For details, see page C-4.
- C. Connect the RUN relay connector (J2) to control external equipment, making sure not to exceed the specified contact ratings on the relay. For details, see page C-5.

4. Start PC Control *Program Editor* Software.

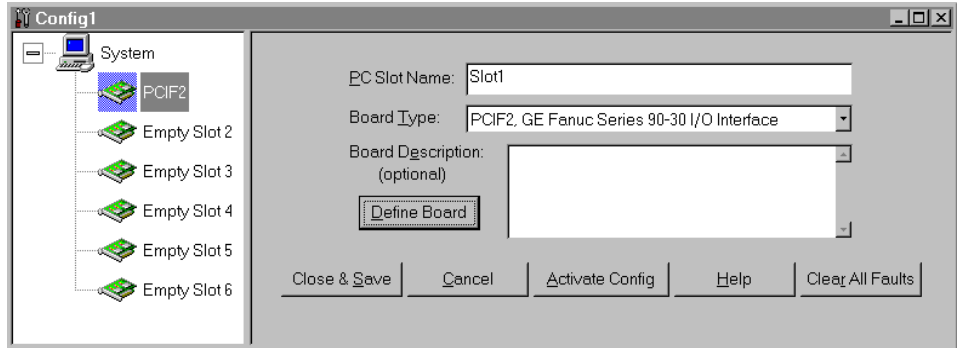
From the Start menu, choose PC Control Applications, Program Editor.

5. Configure the PIF400 Card.

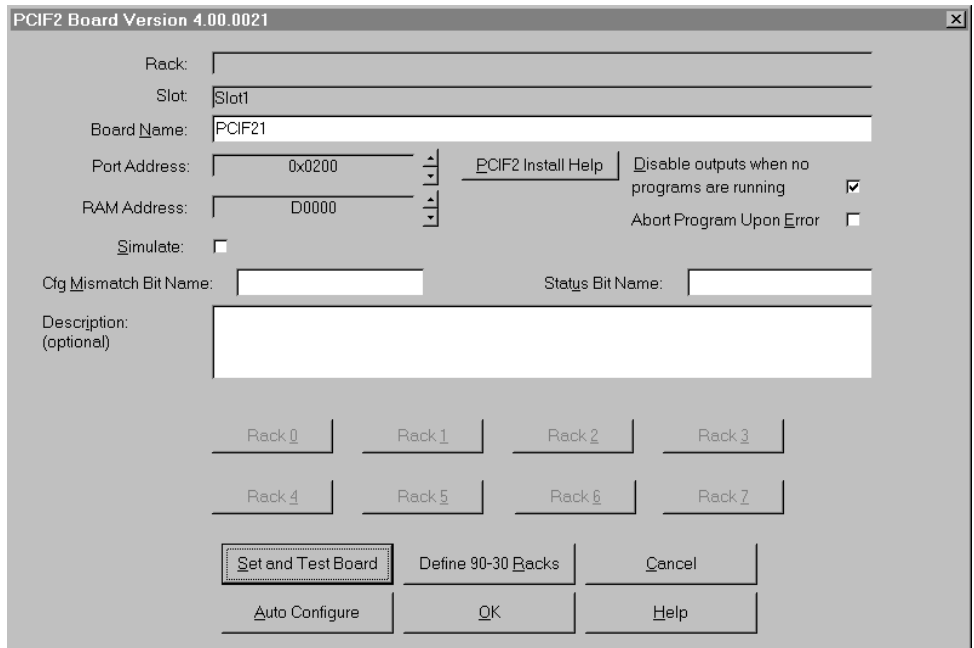
- A. From the PC Control Program Editor File menu, click Open Config (or New Config). The following configuration window will appear.



B. In the tree display on the left side of the window, select the slot that you want to configure. The following window will appear.



C. In the Board Type field, select PCIF2 (for the PIF400). Click the Define Board button. The PCIF2 Board dialog box will appear.



D. Set configuration parameters for the PIF400. Make sure the Port Address and RAM address are set correctly. (See “Check System Resources” on page C-7.)

- Port Address should match the setting of DIP switch S1.
- RAM Address should select an available block of 32Kbytes. For additional configuration details, consult PC Control online help.

- E. After setting the Port and RAM addresses, click the Set and Test Board button to verify the installation is correct. (The Runtime subsystem must not be active.) A Board Test dialog box containing the message “PCIF2 Board found, shared RAM access successfully found” should appear. If this message does not appear, you should try configuring a different block of shared RAM.

6. Configure Series 90-30 I/O.

From the PCIF2 Board dialog box, you can continue the configuration process.

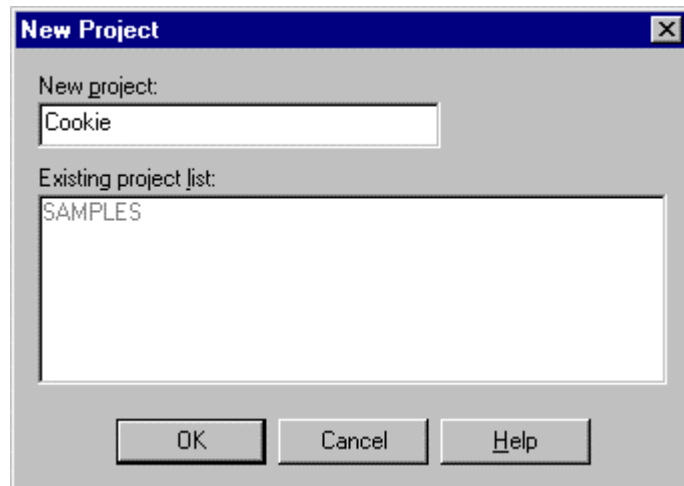
- **Auto Configuration:** If the I/O racks and modules are in place and powered up, and if the Runtime subsystem is not active, you can use this feature. When you click the Auto Configure button, the software will activate the PIF400 card and read in information about attached racks and modules.
- **Manual Configuration:** To use this feature, click the Define 90-30 Racks button. The Rack Definition dialog box will appear.

For additional information, refer to the online help for PC Control software.

This appendix steps you through an example application that shows how to create a project, configure I/O, create an application program using RLL, SFC, and Structured Text, create an Operator Interface screen, and run and monitor the application. An additional tutorial that leads you through the creation of an SFC application can be accessed through the Program Editor Help menu.

Exercise 1: Create a New Project

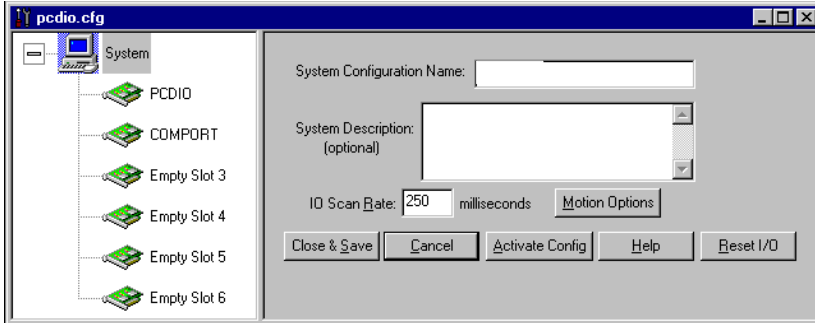
- From the Program Editor click the **Project** menu and then select **New**.
- Type "Cookie" into the New project box. Your screen should look like the box below. Click the "OK" button to create the new project.



Exercise 2: Create a New System Configuration

System Dialog

- From the Program Editor select the **File** menu and then click on **NEW CONFIG**. A new system configuration dialog box is opened like the one below.



- For this example, you should will use the default System Configuration Name, "Config1", and an I/O Scan Rate of 250ms.

Note

The I/O scan rate is the frequency at which PC CONTROL reads and updates I/O and solves logic. The PC CONTROL scan rate is asynchronous to the scan rate of the I/O hardware.

Slot Dialog

The next step in configuring I/O is to define the local I/O boards, I/O scanner boards and/or motion cards you will be using with your system.

The slot dialog contains information about the type of communications card that is in a particular slot. On a PC, the actual slot numbers are not significant but by numbering them, maintenance technicians can be directed to the appropriate card to make connections and repairs.

- To configure an I/O board click on the **empty slots 1** graphic on the left-hand side of the dialog box. Once a slot is selected the right side of the dialog box will change to look like the one below.



- The new dialog includes a drop down menu labeled board type. The drop down list includes all the PC CONTROL I/O drivers installed on the system.
- Using the drop-down list select the "**Industrial Computer Source PCDIO**" device driver. If this driver does not appear on your list you must exit the PC CONTROL software and install the device driver using the I/O driver setup disks.
- Once you have the board selected, click the **Define Board** button to configure the software to communicate with the board.

Define Board

The Define Board dialog box is unique to each I/O board. The dialog is used to configure PC CONTROL to be able to communicate with the particular I/O board selected.

- For this example, use the default information provided in the dialog box, as shown below. If you have an I/O simulator it should be configured to work at these defaults. If you do not have an I/O simulator installed in your system you must simulate the board by clicking the **Simulate Board** check box.

Industrial Computer Source PCDIO Card, Version 3.01.0012

Rack:

Slot:

Board Name:

Model No:

Base Address:

Simulate Board:

Description:
(optional)

Def. Connectors OK Cancel Help

- To assign symbol names to the I/O points on this board click the **Def. Connectors** button.

Define Connectors

- When the **Define Connector** button is clicked a Port Definition dialog box will appear.
- Select **Input** for the first port and then enter symbol names for the first six points, "switch1" through "switch6". These symbols will correspond to the six switches on the I/O simulator.
- Select **Output** for the second port and then enter symbol names for the first seven points, "light1" through "light6" and "buzzer" in the seventh point. These symbols correspond to the six lights and the buzzer on the I/O simulator. For "Port B Name" type "lights".

Note

PC Control symbol names are case sensitive. For this example symbol names are all lower case.

Saving and Activating the New Configuration

- Click the **OK** button on the Port Definition dialog, and then click **Yes** when prompted "Do you wish to activate this configuration?"
- Click **Yes** when prompted if you want to save before activating.
- The **Save As** dialog box will open and allow you to give a name to the configuration. Type in "**pcdio**" in the File name field and click **OK**.
- After the new configuration is activated the System Configuration dialog box will be displayed again. Click **Close and Save** to finish creating the configuration.

Exercise 3: Creating an SFC

If the Program Editor is not already running, open the PC Control Applications program group and click on the Program Editor icon to start the utility.

- On the editor tool bar, located at the top of the screen, press the new file button to create a new program file. Select SFC+/M from the dialog box and press the OK button to create a new Sequential Function Chart. A window will open which contains the new SFC program.

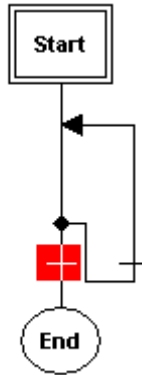


Creating the Program Structure

- Select the loop tool from the SFC Tool Bar.



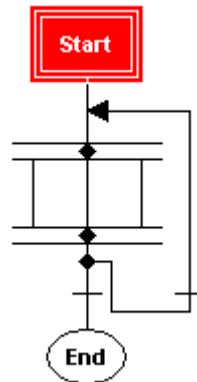
- Move the cursor over the control path between the Start step and the End step. Press the left mouse button to drop a control loop element into the SFC program.



- Select the simultaneous diverge tool from the SFC Tool Bar.



- Move the cursor to the center of the loop and press the left mouse button to drop a simultaneous diverge element into the SFC program.
- Select the simultaneous diverge tool again and add a third branch to the divergence by clicking the top double horizontal line.



Guidelines for Using Simultaneous Divergences

Observe the following guidelines when you create a Simultaneous Divergence.

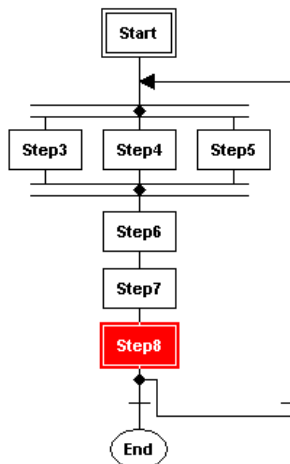
- Do not reference the same variable in different paths of a Simultaneous Divergence.
- Do not call the same child SFC from Macro Steps in different paths of a Simultaneous Divergence.
- To ensure that proper convergence, do not use Labels in the following ways:
 - To jump outside a Simultaneous Divergence.
 - To jump into a Simultaneous Divergence.
 - To jump to another path within a Simultaneous Divergence.

Adding Steps

Select the step tool from the SFC Tool Bar.



Move the cursor over the left control path of the simultaneous diverge. Press the left mouse button to drop a step element into the SFC program. Move the cursor over the next two control paths and drop a step element into each of them. Move the cursor over the control path below the bottom of the diverge and above the loop tool. Add three consecutive step elements at this point in the SFC program.

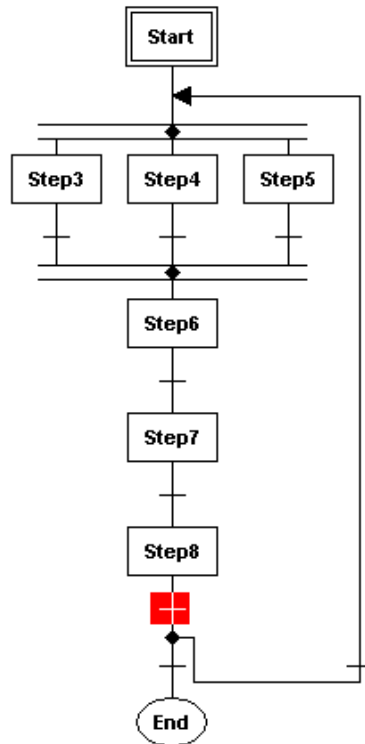


Adding Transitions

Select the transition tool from the SFC Tool Bar.



- Move the cursor below each of the control paths in simultaneous diverge and click the left mouse button to drop a transition element into the SFC program. Repeat the same action after each of the three steps outside the simultaneous diverge.



Saving an Application Program



Before you begin adding the detail to your SFC program, you should save the work you have done. Use the File\Save menu command or the file save button on the editor tool bar to save the active file to its current name and directory. Since you are saving this file for the first time, the Program Editor displays the Save As dialog box so you can name the file. Type "cookie_maker" in the File Name field and click the **Save** button. The title bar on the SFC should look like this:



Exercise 4: Creating Symbols

With the new program "cookie_maker.SCF" selected as the active window access the Symbol Manager by press the symbol manager button on the editor tool bar.



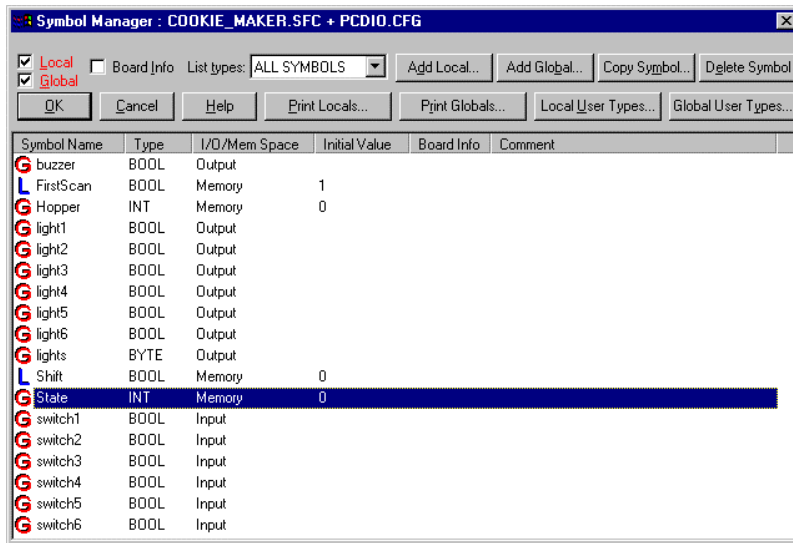
The Symbol Manager displays the I/O symbol names you defined in the Configuration Utility. Since you can access an I/O symbol from any application program in a project, I/O symbols are marked with a red "G" in front of the name indicating a Global symbol.

Adding Local symbols

- Click the **Add Local** button at the top of the Symbol Manager. In the Symbol Detail dialog box type the symbol name "**FirstScan**". Make sure the "Type:" list box is set to **BOOL**, and enter "**1**" for an initial value. Click the **OK** button to finish and add the new symbol to the Symbol Manager list.
- Add another Local symbol. Name: "**Shift**", Type: **BOOL**, Initial Value: **0**. When finished Click the **OK** button.

Adding Global symbols

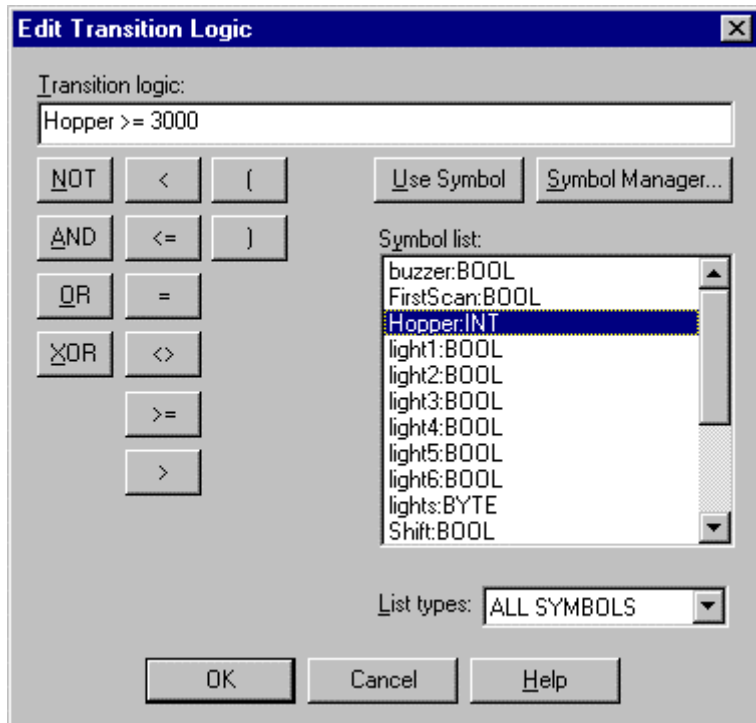
- Global symbols are created in the same manner as Locals. Click the **Add Global** button at the top of the Symbol Manager.
- Create two new Global symbols. The first called "**Hopper**", of Type **INT** and an initial value of **0**. The second called "**State**", of Type **INT** and an initial value of **0**.



- Click the **OK** button at the top of the Symbol Manager to close the window and accept the new symbols. Because you have added new Global symbols the Program Editor asks what you want to do with the Global information. Click the **Save & Activate** button to save the Global symbols in the System Configuration and to activate the new configuration.

Exercise 5: Adding Transition Logic

- Double click on the leftmost transition in the simultaneous diverge to open the edit transition logic dialog box.



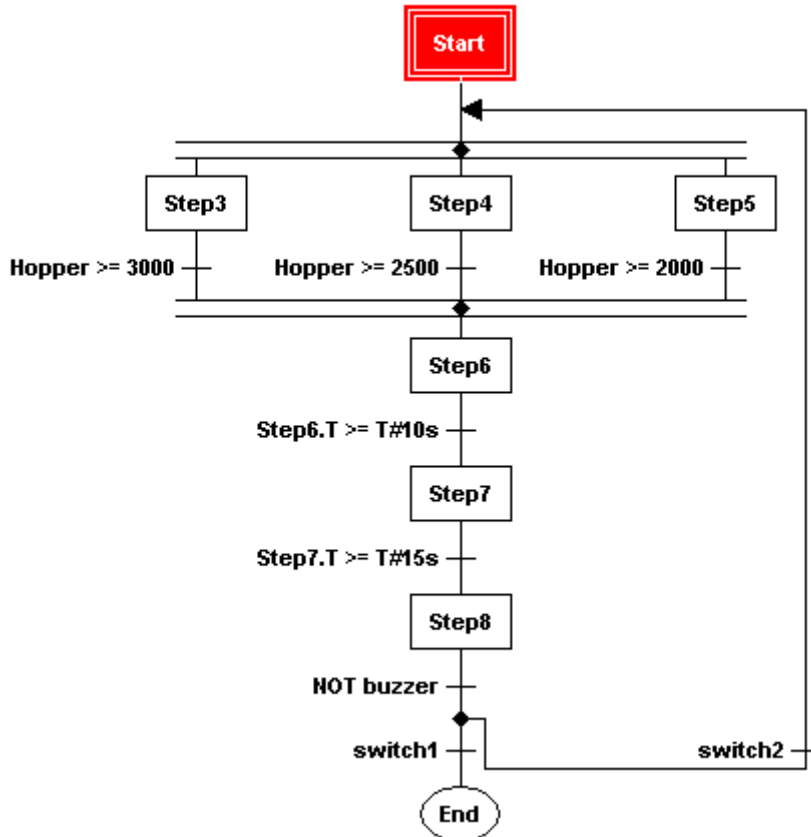
- From the Symbol List box, double click on the **Hopper** symbol to copy it to the Transition Logic edit box. Next click the ">=" button and then type "**3000**". Press the **OK** button to close the edit transition logic dialog box and accept the changes.
- Repeat these steps for the next two paths in the simultaneous diverge. Enter "**2500**" and "**2000**" respectively, as the test condition for these transitions.
- Double click on the transition directly below the first step after the divergence. For this transition logic you will use one of the step variables created automatically by PC CONTROL. In the Transition Logic edit box type the name of the step directly above and add a ".**T**" to the end (in this example: **Step6.T**). Next click the ">=" button and then type "**T#10s**", this is the IEC-1131 syntax for ten seconds. So this transition will be true when Step6 has been active for 10 or more seconds.
- Repeat these steps for the transition below **Step7**. Use **T#15s** to make the transition true after 15 seconds.

- Next edit the transition below **Step8**. Click the "NOT" button first and then double click the "buzzer" symbol from the Symbol List box. Click "OK" to accept these edits.

Finally lets edit the two transition condition on the **Loop Tool**.

- Double click the transition connected to the **End** step. Scroll the Symbol List box down until the **switch1** symbol is visible. Double click on the **switch1** symbol to copy it to the Transition Logic edit box. Press the **OK** button to close the edit transition logic dialog box and accept the changes.
- Double click the transition on the loop back branch. Scroll the Symbol List box down until the **switch2** symbol is visible. Double click on the **switch2** symbol to copy it to the Transition Logic edit box. Press the **OK** button to close the edit transition logic dialog box and accept the changes.

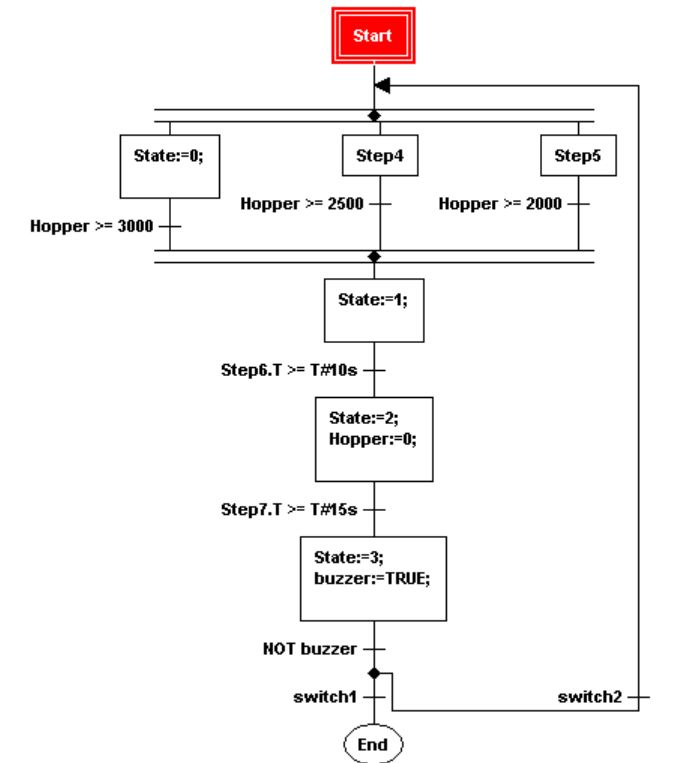
After filling in Boolean transition details, the SFC program should look like this:



Exercise 6: Entering Structured Text Commands

- Double click on **Step3** to open the **Edit Step** dialog box.
- Select **Structured Text** as the Command Type. Select the Command List edit box and type in the following structured text assignment statement:
`State := 0;`
- Click **OK** button to close the step edit dialog box and accept the changes.
- Double click on **Step6** to open the **Edit Step** dialog box and enter the following:
`State := 1;`
- Double click on **Step7** to open the **Edit Step** dialog box and enter the following:
`State := 2;`
`Hopper := 0;`
- Double click on **Step8** to open the **Edit Step** dialog box and enter the following:
`State := 3;`
`buzzer := TRUE;`
- To view all the step commands, click the **View** drop down menu and select **All Steps/As Commands**.

When finished your program should look like this:



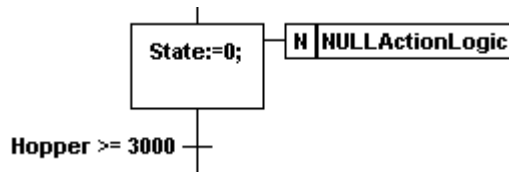
Exercise 7: Adding and Editing Action Blocks

Editing Steps 3,4 & 5

- Select the action tool from the SFC Tool Bar.



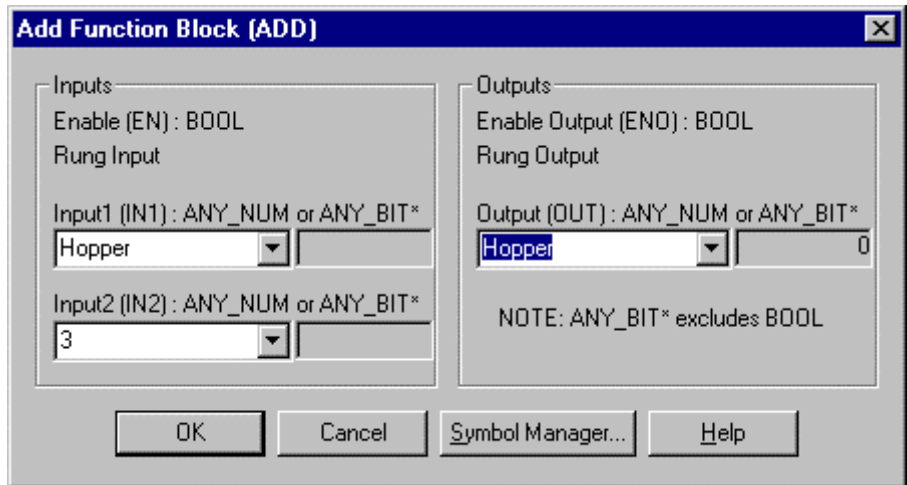
- Move the cursor over the top leftmost step (**Step3**). Click to attached an action to that step. The step will now look like this:



- Double click on the action name to open the **Edit Action Association** dialog box. Select the Action Name edit box. Type in the name "**Flour**" and click the **OK** button. Since this action does not yet exist a dialog box appears and ask if you want to create it. Click the **OK** button to create the new action. A window will open which contains an empty RLL program for the new action.
- Using the drop down list box on the Function Block pallet, select the **Math** pallet.





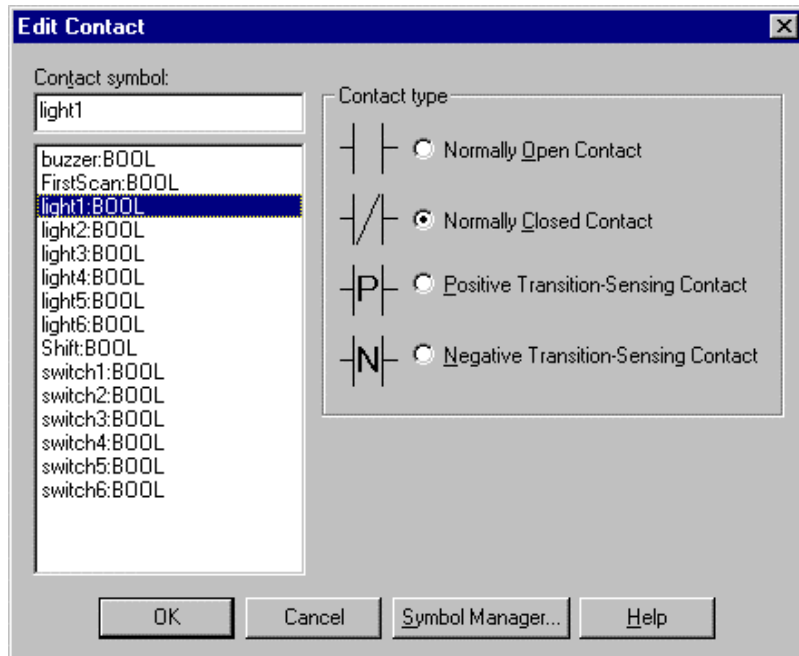
- Click on the **ADD** function block button. The cursor will change to the Function Block Cursor. Place the cursor on the horizontal rung of the RLL window. And click the left mouse button to drop in an ADD function block.
- The ADD function block dialog box will appear. In the **Input1** edit box type **Hopper**. In the **Input2** edit box type **3**. In the **Output** edit box type **Hopper**. This will cause "3" to be added to Hopper each I/O scan for as long as the action is active.




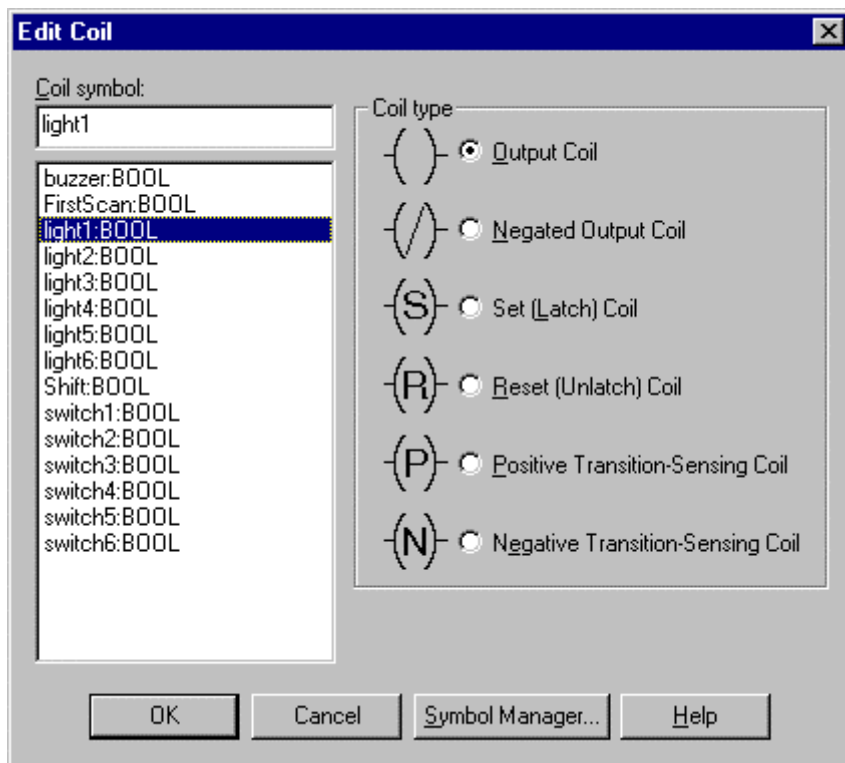
- Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box and accept the changes.
- Click the **Close Window** button to close the action block RLL program.
- Next name the Action Blocks on steps 4 and 5: **Sugar** and **Chips** respectively. Place an **ADD** function block in Sugar action that adds 4 **Hopper** and an **ADD** function block in Chips adds 5 to **Hopper**.

Editing Step6

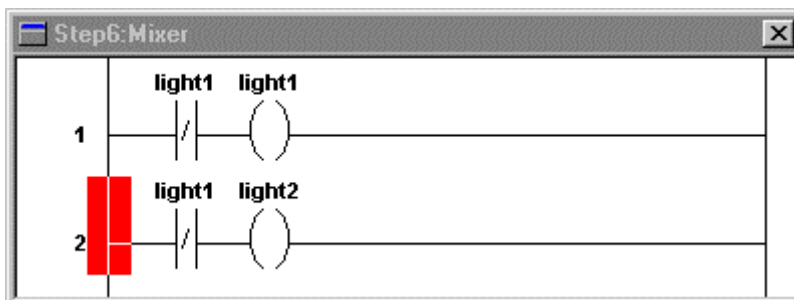
- Name the Action Block attached to **Step6, Mixer**.
- Select the **Rung Tool**  from the RLL Tool Bar. The cursor will change to the New Rung Cursor. Place the cursor just below the existing rung and click the left mouse button to insert a new rung.
- Select the **Contact Tool**  from the RLL Tool Bar. The cursor will change to the Contact Cursor. Place the cursor over the first rung and click the left mouse button to insert a contact.
- The Edit Contact dialog box will open. From the Symbol List box select **light1**. For the Contact Type, select **Normally Closed Contact**. Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box and accept the changes.



- Select the **Coil Tool**  from the RLL Tool Bar. The cursor will change to the Coil Cursor. Place the cursor over the first rung to the right of the contact and click the left mouse button to insert a coil.
- The Edit Coil dialog box will open. From the Symbol List box select **light1**. For the Coil Type, select **Output Coil**. Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box and accept the changes.

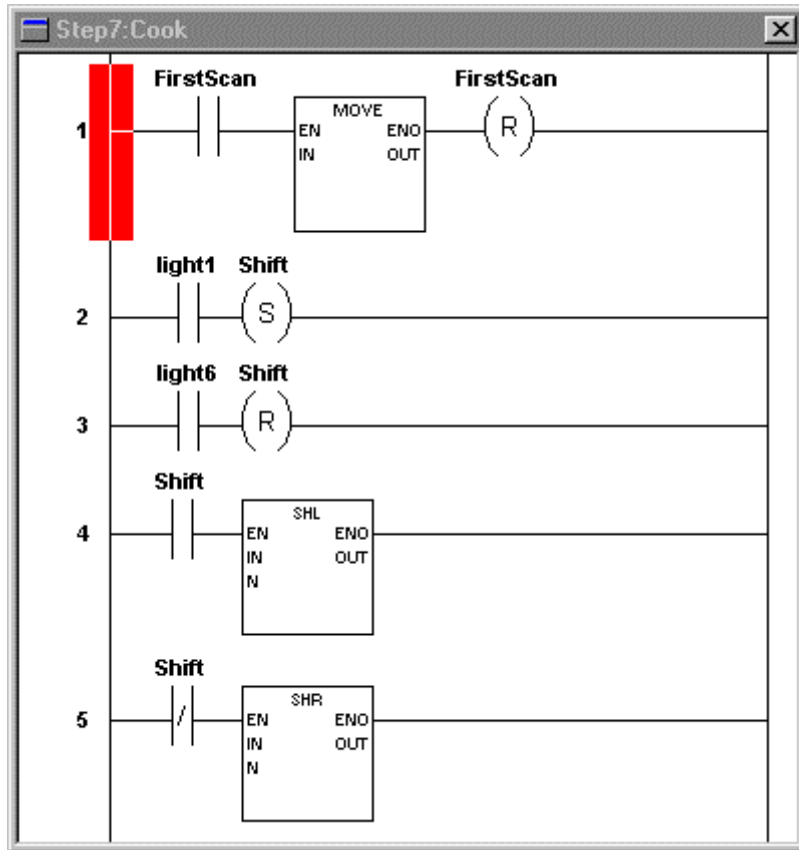


- Add a second **light1, Normally Closed Contact** to the second rung and an **Output Coil** for **light2**.
- When finished your RLL program should look like this:

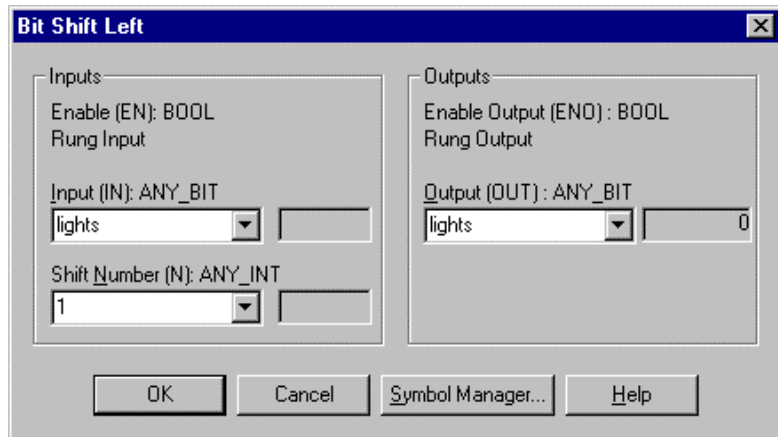


Step7

- Name the Action Block attached to **Step7, Cook**.
- Add rungs, contacts, coil and function blocks to match the following figure:



- The **MOVE** function block on rung 1, moves a 1 into the symbol **lights**
- The **Bit Shift Left(BSL)** and **Bit Shift Right(BSR)** on rungs 4 and 5 (the bit shift function blocks can be found on the **Bitwise** Function Block Pallet) each shift the symbol **lights** by **1**. Each of the Bit Shift dialog boxes should be configured as follows:

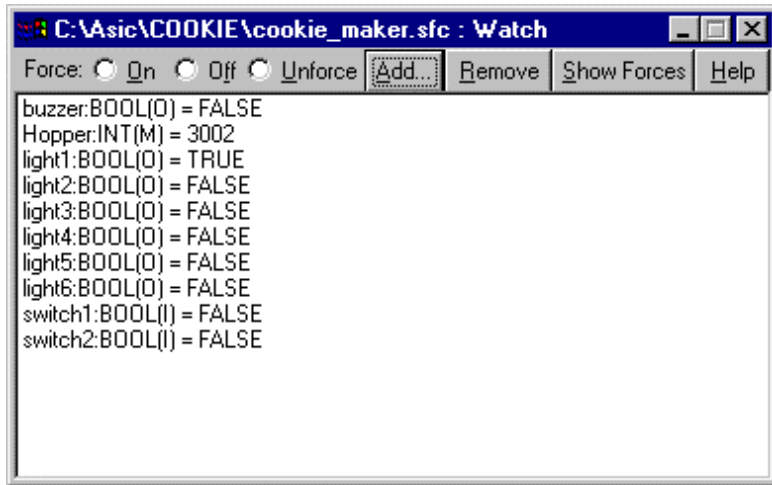


Exercise 8: Executing the Sample Program

- To run `cookie_makre.SFC`, use the `Execute\Run` menu command. If the PC CONTROL Runtime Subsystems are not active, the user will be prompted to startup the runtime subsystems. Once the program begins running the program display will highlight. Active steps and transitions will be highlighted in green.
- Open the **Watch Window** by clicking the Watch Window Icon on the Program Editor Tool Bar.



- Click the **Add** button. Highlight the following symbol names by clicking on them with the left mouse button:
Click the **OK** button to close the Add dialog box and add the symbols. The Watch Window should look like the following:



- Force symbols as necessary to control program execution.

Exercise 9: Creating an Operator Interface Screen

To create a new operator screen, select the Edit\New Screen drop down menu command. The Select New Screen Name dialog box is displayed. Type in "CookieMaker" and press the **OK** button. A blank operator screen is created with the screen name in the title bar.



When an Operator Interface file is created, a default PC Control screen is generated and set as the "Start Screen." Once a new screen has been created, using the Edit/Delete Screen drop down menu, the default screen can be deleted from the Operator Interface file and a new Start Screen selected.

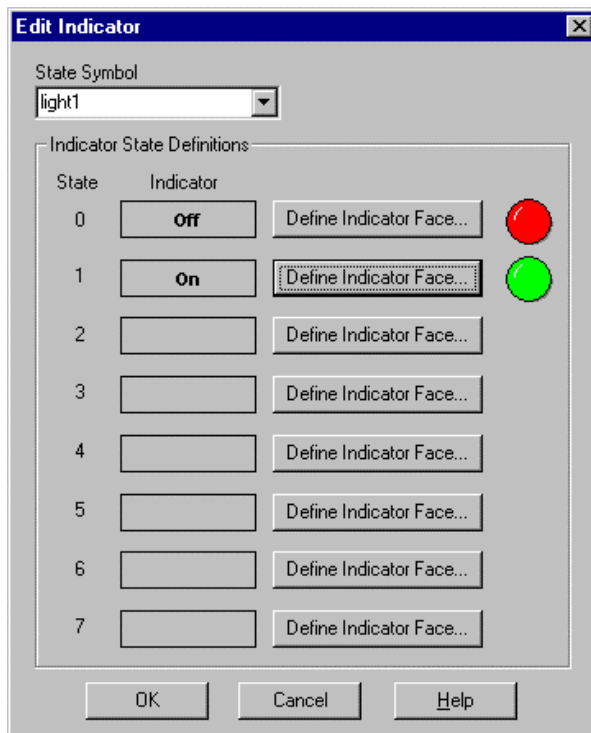
Adding Operator Controls

Indicator

So that you can see the status of the cookie making machine, add some indicators. You should create six to reflect the current state of the lights and one to let you know where in your program you are.



- Select the Indicator tool from the Operator interface tool bar. The cursor will change to the Indicator cursor. Move the cursor over a desired spot on the Operator Interface screen and click the left mouse button to drop an indicator control.
- Double click on the new indicator to open the **Edit Indicator** dialog box.
- In the **State Symbol** list box, type or select from the drop down list the symbol "**light1**". This will cause the indicator to change appearance based on the current value of light1.
- Click the **Define Indicator Face** button for state 0 to open the Define Indicator dialog box.
- In the "**Text:**" edit box type: "**Off**". Then click the "**Select Light Color**" button and select a red colored "light" icon.
- Click the **OK** button to accept the changes and close the dialog box.
- Repeat the same process for state 1 only have the text read "**On**" and select a green light. When finished the dialog box should look like this:



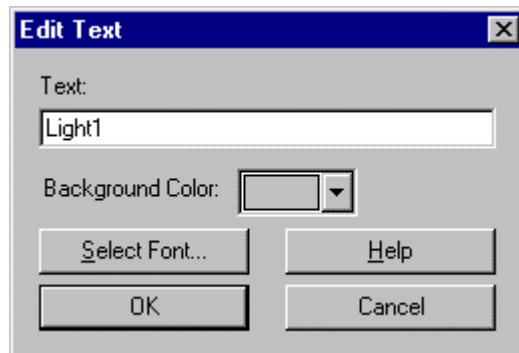
- Using **Copy/Paste** create a total of six indicators. Assign the **State Symbol** for the five new indicators to **light2-light6**.
- Using the tool bar, drop in one more Indicator. Assign the **State Symbol** for the new indicator to the symbol **State**.
- For states 0 through 3 assign the following text:
state 0 **Filling Hopper**
state 1 **Mixing Batter**
state 2 **Cooking Cookies**
state 3 **Done**

Text Display

So that you don't get the light indicators confused, you should add a text display above each to label them.



- Select the Text tool from the Operator interface tool bar. The cursor will change to the Text cursor. Move the cursor over the indicator for light1 and click the left mouse button to drop a text box.
- Double click on the new text box to open the **Edit Text** dialog box.
- In the **Text:** edit box enter **Light1**.
- Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box and accept the changes.
- Create five more text boxes to label the indicators for lights 2 through 6.



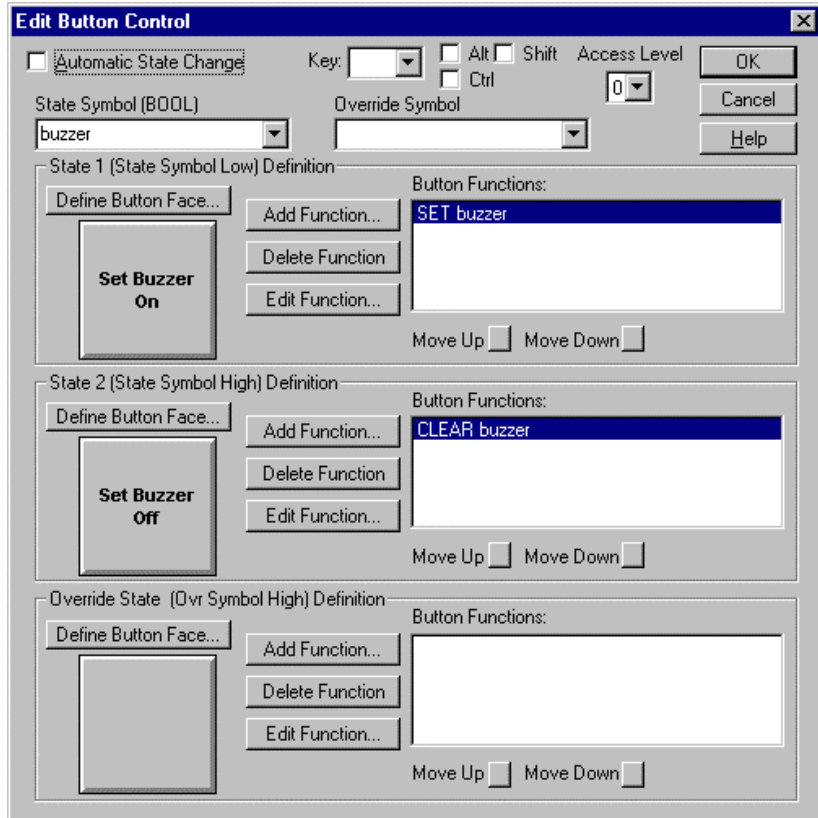
Click Button

To control the done buzzer in your cookie making machine you need to add a click button.



- Select the Click Button tool from the Operator interface tool bar. The cursor will change to the Button cursor. Move the cursor over a desired spot on the Operator Interface screen and click the left mouse button to drop a button control.
- Double click on the new button to open the **Edit Button Control** dialog box.
- In the **State Symbol** edit box enter the symbol **buzzer**.
- In the **State 1 Definition** portion of the dialog box click the **Add Function** button.
- From the drop down list box that appears select the **Set** function.
- In the next drop down list box that appears select the symbol **buzzer**.
- In the **State 2 Definition** portion of the dialog box click the **Add Function** button.
- From the drop down list box that appears select the **Clear** function.
- In the next drop down list box that appears select the symbol **buzzer**.

- Using the **Define Button Face** buttons for State 1 and State 2, edit the button to say "**Set Buzzer On**" and "**Set Buzzer Off**" respectively. When finished the dialog box should look like this:



- Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box and accept the changes.

If you do not have an I/O simulator you will need to create two additional click buttons, to control the symbols **switch1 & switch2**.

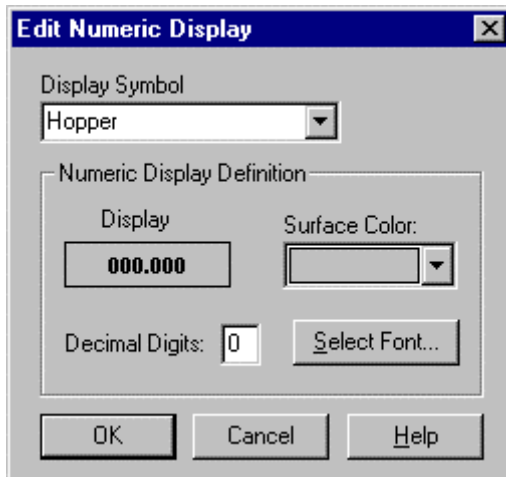
Numeric Indicator

So that you can monitor the weight of your hopper, add a numeric display.



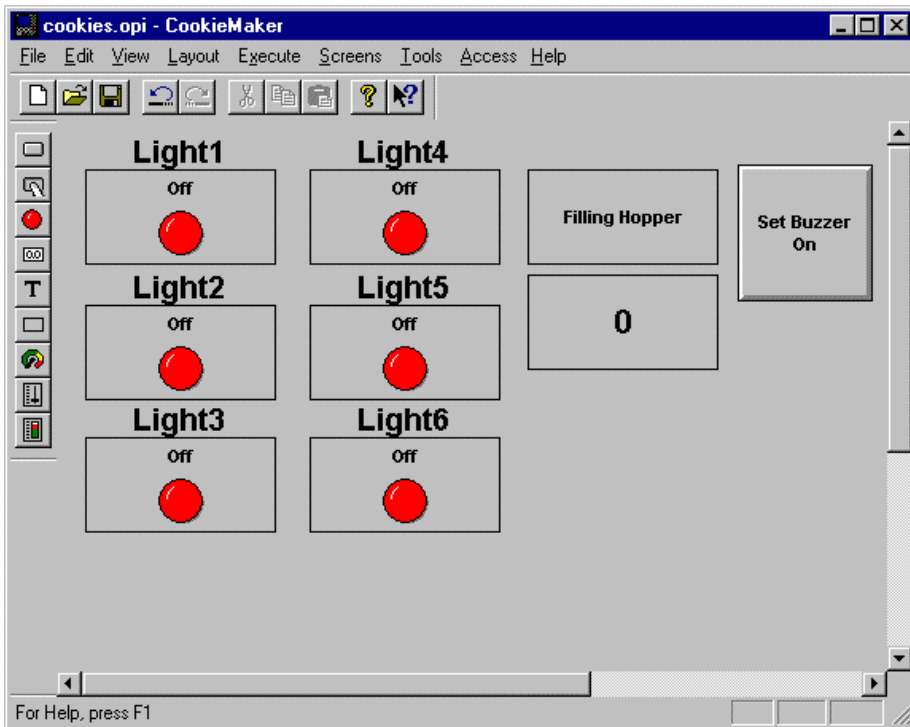
- Select the Numeric Display tool from the Operator interface tool bar. The cursor will change to the Numeric cursor. Move the cursor to a desired spot on the operator screen and click the left mouse button to drop a Numeric Display.
- Double click on the new Numeric Display to open the **Edit Numeric Display** dialog box.
- In the **Display Symbol** edit box enter the symbol **Hopper**.
- Change the **Decimal Digits** to **0**.

- Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box and accept the changes.



Activating Operator Screens

When you have finished your operator screen should look something like this:



To see the screen in action make sure you have the "**Cookie_maker.SFC**" executing and then select the **Execute\Activate Screens** menu command.

The Motion Control programming language is an RS-274D compliant set of text-based instructions for motion control operations. The language lets you design two- and three-dimensional motions by using parameters such as:

- coordinate positions
- feed rates
- movement between positions with controlled acceleration and deceleration

Motion Control programming consists of a series of single-letter commands, which are followed by numerical parameters to these commands. The commands are organized into individual lines of text, which are called blocks. The blocks form execution units that are executed sequentially. Program execution pauses on each block until all the functions in the block are completed, then program flow continues with the next block.

You can add motion control to an SFC and Embed Structured text into motion control code. For more information, see “Using Motion Control Statements” on page E-4.

Configuring Motion Control

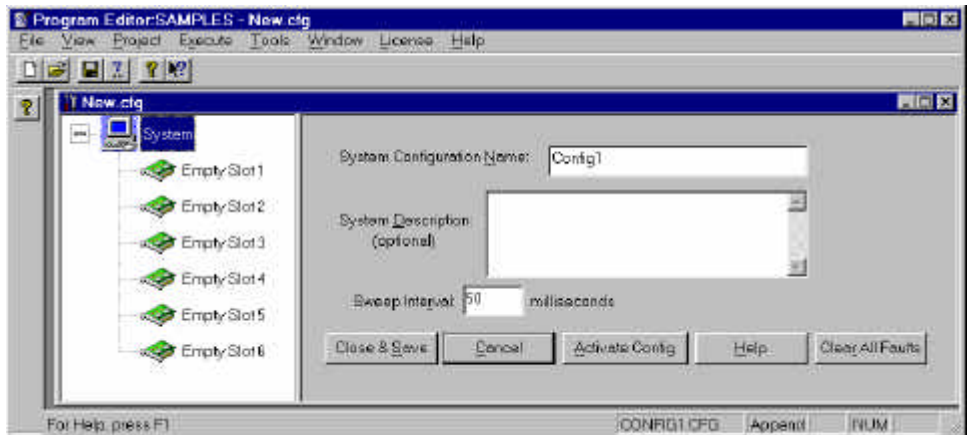
PC Control can be used with the following interface boards which support Motion Control:

- Delta Tau PMAC-PC
- Delta Tau PMAC Direct
- Delta Tau PMAC2
- Motion Engineering PCDSP
- Motion Options Compumotor

Note

Only *one* Motion card is allowed in a system configuration.

- A. From the PC Control Program Editor File menu, click Open Config (or New Config). The following configuration window will appear.

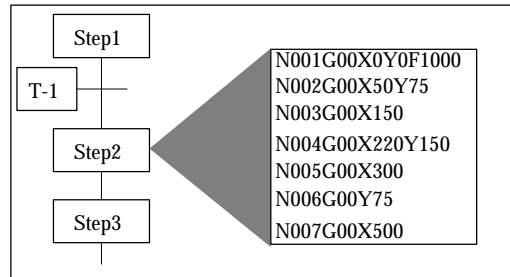


- B. In the tree display on the left side of the window, select the slot that you want to configure.
- C. In the Board Type field, select the Motion card that you have installed. The configuration dialog box will appear for the selected board.
- D. Click the Define Board button. For details on completing the configuration, refer to online help for your Motion Control interface board.

Motion Control Programming

Adding Motion Control to an SFC

When you create the application code for an SFC step, you can choose to use Motion Control code, as illustrated below. When the SFC is executed, the Motion Control code that you incorporate within each step is processed as the step becomes active. You can enter the Motion Control code directly into a step, or you can link a file containing the Motion Control code to the step when you configure the step. The type of information in the file should be in the same format as the type of information entered directly into a step.



For information about how the CONTROL SYSTEM software enhances the RS-274D specification, see “PC CONTROL Software Enhancements to RS-274D” on page E-3.

PC CONTROL Software Enhancements to RS-274D

The control system software provides the following enhancements to the RS-274D specification.

- You can embed Structured Text assignments and expressions within the Motion Control code. See “Embedding Structured Text into Motion Control Code” on page E-27.
- You can use step actions to synchronize I/O operations with Motion Control execution. You can also use motion qualifiers to synchronize action logic with motion.
- The control system software provides motion symbols that are mapped to the I/O. For example, axis.CMDPOS is a real number symbol that contains the current commanded position of an axis.
- M flags are associated with the Motion Control M codes and are set on or off depending on the M code being used. This lets you monitor the M flags from

other programs and allow other actions to begin after an M code is encountered during program execution.

- You can improve your control over program flow by using WHILE and IF-GOTO commands with the Motion Control commands.
- You can call a macro (subroutine) for execution by using a preparatory command G65.

Using Motion Control Statements

Using Motion Control Commands

The control system software converts RS-274D commands into the appropriate commands specifically generated for the servo-motion card that you have selected.

Motion commands must be structured in a specific format. See “Motion Control Block Format” on page E-5. The motion commands are:

Command	Function
A	Rotary X motion command in predefined engineering units.
B	Rotary Y motion command in predefined engineering units.
C	Rotary Z motion command in predefined engineering units.
D	Tool function for selection of tool compensation.
F	Feed rate function or speed command in predefined engineering units.
G	Preparatory function. See “Using G Codes” on page E-6.
I	Interpolation parameter or thread lead parallel to X axis.
J	Interpolation parameter or thread lead parallel to Y axis.
K	Interpolation parameter or thread lead parallel to Z axis.
M	Miscellaneous function. See “Using M Codes” on page E-8.
N	Block number (optional)
S	Spindle speed function.
T	Tool Function. Range 01-32.
X	Linear X motion command in predefined engineering units.
Y	Linear Y motion command in predefined engineering units.
Z	Linear Z motion command in predefined engineering units.

Motion Control Block Format

The format for a Motion Control block (single line of code) is described below.

- N** If you use a sequence number, it must be first in the block. Optional for the control system.
- G** The preparatory function(s) G must follow N.
- X** The linear dimension words follow G. Specify the X axis first.
- Y** The linear dimension words follow G. Specify the Y axis second.
- Z** The linear dimension words follow G. Specify the Z axis third.
- A** The rotary dimension words follow G. Specify the X axis first.
- B** The rotary dimension words follow G. Specify the Y axis second.
- C** The rotary dimension words follow G. Specify the Z axis third.
- I** The interpolation words follow the dimension words. Specify the X axis first.
- J** The interpolation words follow the dimension words. Specify the Y axis second.
- K** The interpolation words follow the dimension words. Specify the Z axis third.
- D** The selection of tool compensation must follow K.
- F** If you specify a feed rate that applies to more than one axis, F must follow the last dimension word (and interpolation) to which it applies.
- T** The tool function selection follows S.
- M** Any miscellaneous function(s) that you specify must be last in the block, just ahead of the end of block character.

End of Block Indicate the end of a block with the carriage return / line feed character. Make sure that there are no extra spaces, tabs, or other characters between the last command and the End of Block.

Motion Control Block Examples

Example 1

N009G01X-3.0Y-7.0Z+1.0F95

N009 Ninth block in the program.

G01 Positions a tool to the next point along a straight line path.

Sets the X axis position.

Sets the Y axis position.

Sets the Z axis position.

F95 Sets the feed rate at 95 units.

Example 2

N011G02X+0.5Y+1.0I0.75J0.0

N011 Eleventh block in the program.

G02 Positions a tool in a circular motion.

Sets the X axis position.

Sets the Y axis position.

I0.75 Sets the X axis position for the arc.

J0.0 Sets the Y axis position for the arc.

Example 3

N003G70X+1.3Y-7.0Z+2.1M08

N003 Third block in the program.

G70 Sets mode for programming in units of inches.

Sets the X axis position.

Sets the Y axis position.

Sets the Z axis position.

M08 Causes coolant number 1 to turn on.

Using G Codes

The control system software supports RS-274D G codes to control many motion control operations. The G code support is driver dependent. Not all G codes are supported by all drivers. If a driver is marked with a bullet (•), it supports that G code.

The available G codes are listed in the following table:

Code	Description	Notes	PMAC	PCDSP	Compu- motor
G00	Rapid point to point motion	Axes may not arrive at the endpoint at the same time.	•	•	•
G01	Coordinated Linear motion	The speed of the motion is controlled and all the axes move in a coordinated manner.	•	•	
G02	Circular Motion, Clockwise	The axes are moved in a coordinated circular motion clockwise when viewed from the top.	•	First two axis only	
G03	Circular Motion, Counter-Clockwise	The axes are moved in a coordinated circular motion counter-clockwise when viewed from the top.	•	First two axis only	
G04	Dwell	Execution of the program is suspended for a programmed length of time. The duration is specified by an F word in the same block. i.e. G04F2.5 = delay for 2.5 seconds.	•	•	•
G17	Xp - Yp plane selection,	Where Xp: X-axis or a parallel axis.	•		
G18	Zp - Xp plane selection	Where Yp: X axis or a parallel axis.	•		
G19	Yp - Zp plane selection	Where Zp: Z axis or a parallel axis.	•		
G40	Cancel Radius Compensation		•		
G41	Cutter diameter compensation (left)	Three dimensional compensation.	•		
G42	Cutter diameter compensation (right)	Three dimensional compensation.	•		
G43	Tool Length Offset (Plus)		•		
G44	Tool Length Offset (Minus)		•		
G45	Tool Offset Increase		•		
G46	Tool Offset Decrease		•		
G47	Tool Offset Double Increase		•		
G48	Tool Offset Double Decrease		•		
G52	Local Offsetting Coordinate Zero Point	Application Specific.	•		
G53	Motion in Machine Coordinate System		•	•	
G54	Workpiece Coordinate System 1		•		
G55	Workpiece Coordinate System 2		•		
G56	Workpiece Coordinate System 3		•		
G57	Workpiece Coordinate System 4		•		
G58	Workpiece Coordinate System 5		•		
G59	Workpiece Coordinate System 6		•		
G61	Exact Stop Mode		•		

Code	Description	Notes	PMAC	PCDSP	Compu- motor
G64	Cutting Mode		•		
G65	Macro Call		•	•	•
G66	Pass thru function	Driver specific	•	•	
G70	Inch Mode	Defined during configuration, not available during runtime.	Not in Runtime	Not in Runtime	
G71	Metric Mode	Defined during configuration, not available during runtime.	Not in Runtime	Not in Runtime	
G90	Absolute Positioning Mode		•	•	
G91	Incremental Positioning Mode.		•	•	
G92	Position Preset	Axis positions are set to the values specified in the block.	•	•	
G93	Inverse Time Feed Mode		•		
G94	Feed-Per-Minute Mode		•	Feed-per-min only	

Using M Codes

M codes are user-defined operations supported in RS-274D and SFC. Valid M codes are M0 to M99. M codes execute in RS-274D and signal supporting logic in SFC or RLL programs to execute. For each M code, corresponding control system symbols Mflag0 to Mflag98 exists. Even numbered M codes turn off the M flags, while odd numbered codes turn on the corresponding flag. For example:

RS-274D Statement	Result
M10	Mflag10 set false
M11	Mflag10 set true
M96	Mflag96 set false
M97	Mflag97 set true

Notes:

Special purpose M codes must be on a line by themselves. This includes M00, M01, M03, M04, M05, M58, and M59.

M codes on a line with motion execute before the motion.

Predefined M Codes

The control system software predefines several M codes for internal operations, these cannot be used to turn on or off M flags:

Code:	Description:
M0	Program Stop
M1	Optional Program Stop
M2	Program End
M3	Spindle positive
M4	Spindle negative
M5	Spindle stop
M30	Program End and Rewind
M99	Macro Function End

Wait and Continue M Code

The control system software has the ability to wait on RS-274D M Codes. Once the M code processing is done, the control system software lets the application program wait for your logic to inform the system that the operation has completed and for execution to resume with the next sequential RS-274D block. To enable this feature, you must check the Wait on All M Codes box in the Motion Options Configuration Page.

These control system symbols apply to the Wait and Continue M codes:

				Cleared (C) by/ Set (S) by	
Variable Name	Type	Use	Read (R) & Write (W)	Control S/W	User
AxisGroup.MWAIT	BOOL	Waiting for M code processing	R	S/C	___
AxisGroup.MCODE	INT	Value of M code	R	S/C	___
AxisGroup.MCONT	BOOL	M code processing complete – resume execution	R/W	C	S

Using the Define M Flag Symbols Feature

If you want to the control system software to generate 46 global symbols of type BOOL, select the “Define M Flag Symbols” option box. The symbols are generated when this option is selected and the configuration is saved and activated. These symbols appear in the Symbol Manager, and their symbol names are be Mflag6 through Mflag96, counting by even numbers.

Using the Wait on All M Codes Feature

If you want you application program to suspend execution of RS-274D until your M code logic indicates that the action is complete, select the “Wait on All M codes” option box. The remainder of the program can then be executed. When an M code is executed, the motion program is suspended and the axis_group.MWAIT flag is activated until the application program sets the axis_group.MCONT flag, which causes the motion program to resume and the axis_group.MWAIT and axis_group.MCONT flags to be reset by the controller. The application programmer is responsible for supplying logic that sets the axis_group.MCONT flag after the axis_group.MWAIT flag is activated.

The axis_group.MCODE is an integer value the contains the value of the M code. The axis_group is the name of the axis group to which the M code is associated. Define axis group names in the project configuration file.

Using the Do Not Process M Codes Feature

The control system software supports the special M code functionality as described in the RS-274D specification. Clicking this check causes the application program to ignore the following M codes:

- M3 (spindle positive)
- M4 (spindle negative)
- M5 (spindle stop)

Using Predefined Motion Control Symbols

The control system software provides predefined symbols that you can use to monitor and control some of your motion control operations. You link the symbols to the appropriate functions when you configure the I/O.

The predefined symbols are grouped as follows:

- Axis Output Symbols
- “Axis Group Output Symbols” on page E-12
- “Spindle Output Symbols” on page E-13
- “Axis Input Symbols” on page E-13
- “Axis Group Input Symbols” on page E-16

Note: Not all predefined axis symbols are supported by all motion drivers. Check the motion driver help to find supported axis symbols.

Axis Output Symbols

Symbol	Data Type	Function
axis.ACTPOS	real	Contains actual position of axis.
axis.ACTVEL	real	Contains actual velocity of axis.
axis.CMDPOS	real	Contains commanded position of axis.
axis.TPOS	real	Contains current move target position of axis.
axis.AXSFE	real	Contains following error of axis.
axis.A	Boolean	Indicates if axis is enabled.
axis.IP	Boolean	Indicates if axis is in position.
axis.MC	Boolean	Indicates if axis motion is complete.
axis.ESTOP	Boolean	Indicates if axis ESTOP is activated.
axis.RELPOS	real	Contains relative position of axis.
axis.HOME	Boolean	Indicates axis is at the HOME position.
axis.STATUS	real	Indicates axis status - bit definitions depend on driver. Refer to the driver help.
axis.CMDSPD	real	Contains commanded speed of axis.

Axis Group Output Symbols

Symbol	Data Type	Function
AxisGroup.ESTPO	Boolean	Indicates if emergency stop (ESTOP) is activated.
AxisGroup.TOOL	integer	Contains active tool offset.
AxisGroup.INTPL	integer	Contains active interpolation mode for group. 0=point to point 1=linear 2=circular clockwise 3=circular counter clockwise.
AxisGroup.CIR	Boolean	Indicates if circular interpolation is activated (clockwise or counter clockwise).
AxisGroup.PTP	Boolean	Indicates if point to point interpolation is activated.
AxisGroup.LIN	Boolean	Indicates if linear interpolation is activated.
AxisGroup.CIRCW	Boolean	Indicates if clockwise circular interpolation is activated.
AxisGroup.CIRCCW	Boolean	Indicates if counter clockwise circular interpolation is activated.
AxisGroup.DWL	Boolean	Indicates if dwell is activated.
AxisGroup.DWLTIM	integer	Contains dwell time, counted down in ms.
AxisGroup.ENG	Boolean	Indicates if English (inches) units are activated.
AxisGroup.METRIC	Boolean	Indicates if metric units are activated.
AxisGroup.ABSDIM	Boolean	Indicates if absolute programming is activated.
AxisGroup.INCDIM	Boolean	Indicates if incremental programming is activated.
AxisGroup.WAIT	Boolean	Indicates program is suspended for tool change.
AxisGroup.CONT	Boolean	Indicates if program has resumed after tool change.
AxisGroup.MWAIT	Boolean	Indicates waiting for M code processing.
AxisGroup.MCODE	integer	Contains value of the M code.
AxisGroup.PLANE	integer	Active plane for circular interpolation. 0=FIXOFF[0] (G54) 1=FIXOFF[1] (G55) 2=FIXOFF[2] (G56) 3=FIXOFF[3] (G57) 4=FIXOFF[40] (G58) 5=FIXOFF[5] (G59)
AxisGroup.CUTMOD	integer	Active cutting mode. 0=Cutting mode (G64). 1=Exact stop mode (G61).
AxisGroup.FEDMOD	integer	Active feedrate mode. 0=Feedrate programming IPM, DPM (G94). 1=Inverse time programming (G93).

Spindle Output Symbols

Symbol	Data Type	Function
S.WAIT	Boolean	Indicates that program is suspended for a spindle change.
S.CONT	Boolean	Indicates that program has resumed after a spindle change.
S.DIR	Boolean	Indicates programmed spindle direction. 0=positive (clockwise/M3) 1=negative (counter clockwise/M4)
S.CMDSPD	real	Contains programmed spindle speed. Set by last S command.

The group status for Motion Control commands is written to the group that contains the specified axis. If no axis is specified, the axis group status is written to axisGroup#1, which is the default axis group.

Axis Input Symbols

Symbol	Data Type	Function
axis.JP	Boolean	Causes jog in plus direction. See “Using the .JM and .JP Axis Input Symbols” on page E-15.
axis.JM	Boolean	Causes jog in minus direction. See “Using the .JM and .JP Axis Input Symbols” on page E-15.
axis.HLD	Boolean	Causes axis motion to stop until bit is reset.
axis.STP	Boolean	Causes axis motion to stop.
axis.JSPD	real	Sets jog speed for axis.
axis.JINCR	real	Sets jog increment for axis.
axis.JTYPE	integer	Sets jog type for axis (0=home, 1=cont, 2=incr).
axis.SOVR	real	Sets speed override for axis (100.0=100%).
axis.TOOLOFF[x]	real	An array of tool offsets for axis. x = 0-9. See “Using the .TOOLOFF Axis Input Symbols” on page E-14. (Not for MEI.)
axis.FIXOFF[x]	real	An array of fixture offsets for axis. x = 0-5. See also, “Using the .FIXOFF Axis Input Symbols” on page E-14. (Not for MEI.)
axis.RAPID	real	G00 speed.

Using the .FIXOFF Axis Input Symbols

The preparatory commands G-55 to G-59 select fixture offsets. G-54 cancels fixture offsets. The axis.FIXOFF axis input symbols contain the offset values used by these commands. The relationship between the commands and the symbols containing their respective offsets is shown in the following example.

G Command	Symbol
G-54	axis.FIXOFF[0]
G-55	axis.FIXOFF[1]
G-56	axis.FIXOFF[2]
G-57	axis.FIXOFF[3]
G-58	axis.FIXOFF[4]
G-59	axis.FIXOFF[5]

Assign values to the array elements in a Structured Text Step that precedes the Motion Control Step containing the G commands.

Using the .TOOLOFF Axis Input Symbols

The preparatory commands G-45 to G-48 select tool offsets. All four commands require the D command be used in the same block. The D command specifies which axis.TOOLOFF[] element to select. The axis.TOOLOFF axis input symbols contain the actual offset values used by the D commands. The relationship between the D commands and the symbols containing their respective offset values is shown in the following example.

D Command	Symbol
D-0	axis.TOOLOFF[0]
D-1	axis.TOOLOFF[1]
.	.
D-8	axis.TOOLOFF[8]
D-9	axis.TOOLOFF[9]

Assign tool offset values to the array elements in a Structured Text Step that precedes the Motion Control Step containing the G and D commands.

Using the .JM and .JP Axis Input Symbols

The axis.JP and axis.JM axis input symbols are Boolean symbols that cause an axis to jog in the plus and minus directions, respectively. These symbols have the following requirements:

- The axis.JP and axis.JM symbols are not functional until you assign values to the axis.JSPD and axis.JTYPE axis input symbols to specify the jog speed and type.
- The axis referenced by the axis.JP and axis.JM symbols must be either in a group with no other axes; or if other axes are in the group, they cannot be under the control of another motion control program when a jog command is issued to the axis referenced by the axis.JP and axis.JM symbols.

To send an axis home

1. Set .JTYPE = 0.
2. Set .JSPD = homespeed.
3. Activate either .JP or .JM.
4. Wait until .HOME = TRUE for more than 1 second.
5. Reset .JP or .JM.

Axis Group Input Symbols

Symbol	Data Type	Function
AxisGroup.ESTOP	Boolean	Activates emergency stop (ESTOP). The axis.ESTOP axis input symbol is a Boolean that causes all defined axes to stop motion. Note that this includes all axes in all groups, regardless of which axis is referenced by the symbol.
AxisGroup.HLD	Boolean	Causes group motion to stop till bit is reset.
AxisGroup.STP	Boolean	Causes group motion to stop.
AxisGroup.SOVR	real	Overrides speed for group (100.0=100%).
AxisGroup.MCONT	Boolean	M code processing is complete.
AxisGroup.TOOLRAD[x]	real	Value used for tool radius compensation (G41 and G42). x = 0-31. For more information, see “Using the .TOOLRAD Axis Group Input Symbols” on page E-16
AxisGroup.TOOLLEN[x]	real	Value used for tool length compensation (G43 and G44). x = 0-31. For more information, see “Using the .TOOLLEN Axis Group Input Symbols” on page E-17.
AxisGroup.RESTOP	Boolean	Resets ESTOP until bit is reset. NOTE: this input should only be pulsed on, if left on the system will not respond to other inputs.
AxisGroup.OPSTP	Boolean	Activates optional stop (M01).
AxisGroup.TSTRUN	Boolean	Activates test run mode.

Using the .TOOLRAD Axis Group Input Symbols

The preparatory commands G-41 and G-42 apply cutter or radius compensation to the tool path. Both commands require the D command be used in the same block. The D command specifies which axisGroup.TOOLRAD[] element to select. The axisGroup.TOOLRAD axis group input symbols contain the actual compensation values used by the D commands. The relationship between the D commands and the symbols containing their respective compensation values is shown in the following example. Preparatory commands are G codes. For more information, see “Using G Codes” on page E-6.

Relationship of D Commands and Symbols

D Command	Symbol
D-0	axisGroup.TOOLRAD[0]
D-1	axisGroup.TOOLRAD[1]
D-2	axisGroup.TOOLRAD[2]
.	.
.	.
.	.
D-29	axisGroup.TOOLRAD[29]
D-30	axisGroup.TOOLRAD[30]
D-31	axisGroup.TOOLRAD[31]

Assign compensation values to the array elements in a Structured Text Step that precedes the Motion Control Step containing the G and D commands.

Code G40 cancels compensation.

Using the .TOOLLEN Axis Group Input Symbols

The preparatory commands G-43H and G-44H apply tool length compensation to the tool path. H specifies the which axisGroup.TOOLLEN element to select. The axisGroup.TOOLLEN axis group input symbols contain the actual compensation values used by H. The relationship between H and the symbols containing their respective compensation values is shown in the following example. Preparatory commands are G codes. For more information, see “Using G Codes” on page E-6.

D Command	Symbol
H0	axisGroup.TOOLLEN[0]
H1	axisGroup.TOOLLEN[1]
H2	axisGroup.TOOLLEN[2]
.	.
.	.
.	.
H29	axisGroup.TOOLLEN[29]
H30	axisGroup.TOOLLEN[30]
H31	axisGroup.TOOLLEN[31]

Assign compensation values to the array elements in a Structured Text Step that precedes the Motion Control Step containing the G commands.

G40 cancels compensation.

Configuring Motion Options

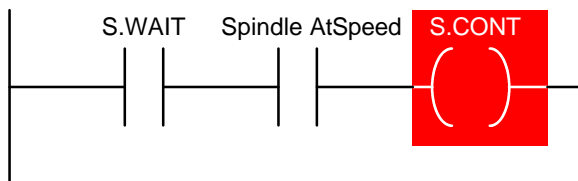
The control system software contains these features that help you configure motion options:

- “Using the Suspend on Spindle Commands Feature” on page E-18
- “Using the Suspend on Tool Changes Feature” on page E-19
- “Using the Define M Flag Symbols Feature” on page E-10
- “Using the Wait on All M Codes Feature” on page E-10
- “Using the Do Not Process M Codes Feature” on page E-10

Using the Suspend on Spindle Commands Feature

If you want an RS-274D program to suspend motion execution whenever spindle (S, M3, M4 or M5) commands are executed, select the “Suspend on Spindle Commands” option box. This option lets the application program suspend RS-274D execution until your application logic indicates that the spindle command has completed. The remainder of the program can then be executed. When a spindle command is executed, the motion program is suspended and the S.WAIT flag is activated until the application program sets the S.CONT flag, which causes the motion program to resume and the S.WAIT and S.CONT flags to be reset by the controller. The application programmer is responsible for supplying logic that sets the S.CONT flag after the S.WAIT flag is activated and the spindle command has been completed.

Example:



Using the Suspend on Tool Changes Feature

If you want an RS-274D program to suspend motion execution whenever a tool (T) command is executed, select the “Suspend on Tool Changes” option box. This option lets the application program suspend RS-274D execution until your application logic indicates that the tool change has completed. The remainder of the program can then be executed. When a tool change is executed, the motion program is suspended and the `axis_group.WAIT` flag is activated until the application program sets the `axis_group.CONT` flag; which causes the motion program to resume and the `axis_group.WAIT` and `axis_group.CONT` flags to be reset by the controller. The application programmer is responsible for supplying logic that sets the `axis_group.CONT` flag after the `axis_group.WAIT` flag is activated and the tool change has completed.

The `axis_group` is the name of the axis group to which the tool is associated. Define axis group names are defined in the project configuration file.

Using Program Flow Control in Motion Applications

As an enhancement to the RS-274D specification, the control system software lets you use the `WHILE` and `IF-GOTO` commands with other Motion Control commands to enhance program flow control. See:

- “Using the `WHILE` Command” on page E-19
- “Using the `IF-GOTO` Command” on page E-21

Using the `WHILE` Command

The commands within the `WHILE` loop are executed repeatedly until a `< Boolean expression >` evaluates to `FALSE`. Then, program flow continues with the next RS-274D command that follows the `END_WHILE` command.

`WHILE` Command Format

```
WHILE (< Boolean expression >) DO
    <RS-274 commands>
END_WHILE
```

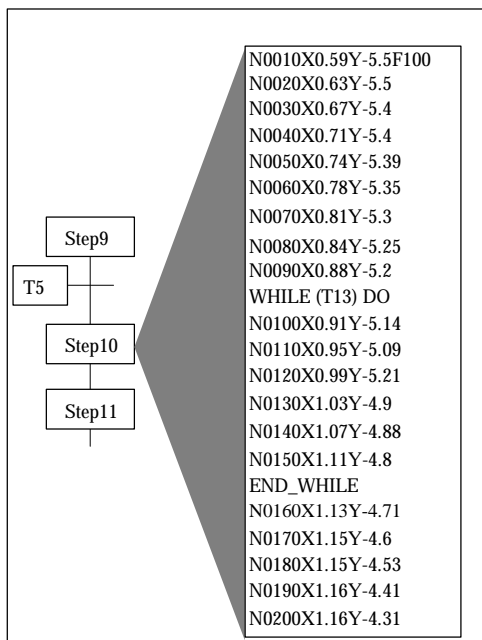
Where:

`< Boolean expression >` is any Structured Text expression that evaluates to a Boolean value

`< RS-274 commands >` consists of normal RS-274D commands.

WHILE Command Example

The following is an example of the WHILE command.



When step10 is active and T13 is TRUE, continuous motion pauses at the WHILE command. Blocks N0100-N0150 execute continually until T13 evaluates to FALSE. Then, block N0160 executes.

Using the IF-GOTO Command

When program flow reaches the IF-GOTO command and the < Boolean expression > evaluates to TRUE, program flow continues with the RS-274D command corresponding to the value contained in < Block Number >. If the < Boolean expression > evaluates to FALSE, program flow continues with the RS-274D command following the IF-GOTO command.

Format:

IF < Boolean expression > IF-GOTO < Block Number >

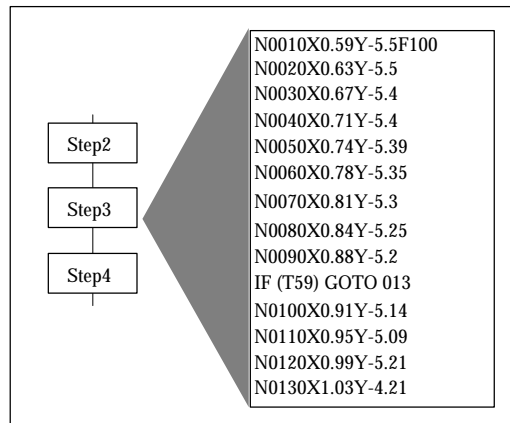
Where:

< Boolean expression > is any Structured Text expression that evaluates to a Boolean value

< Block Number > is the line number of the next block to execute. The value in < Block Number > must match the line number of the RS-274D command exactly, including all leading zeroes and not including the N designator.

IF-GOTO Example

The following is an example of the IF-GOTO command.



When step3 is active, program flow continues at block N0130 when T-59 is TRUE. Otherwise, blocks 100-130 execute.

Using the G56 Macro Calls with Motion

As an enhancement to the RS-274D specification, the control system software lets you call macros, sometimes called subroutines, by using the G65 command within RS-274D motion code. There are two simple steps to programming a G65 subroutine:

1. Design your macros; see “Designing the Macro.”
2. Call the macros for execution; see “Calling the Macro for Execution.”

Designing the Macro

You can place the macro anywhere within your program. The G65 macro calling function can appear before or after the macro.

The structure of the macro has the following syntax:

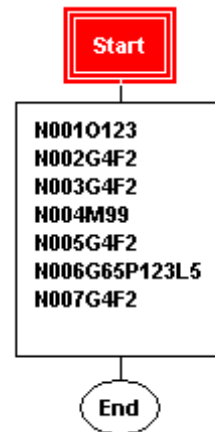
```
O< x >  
< RS-274 commands >  
M99
```

Where:

- < x > is an integer identifier for the macro to be called
- < RS-274 commands > is the macro code, consisting of normal RS-274D commands
- M99 is an M code block that declares the end of the macro

The RS-274D commands between the *O*< x > identifier and the M99 code block are only executed when called from the G65 command. In other words, program execution skips over the code between the *O*-word block and the M99 block unless a G65 block has explicitly called it.

Here is an example of an .SFC program in the control system software that demonstrates G65 functionality:



Calling the Macro for Execution

You call a macro within a G65 block. Use the following command syntax to call the macro for execution:

```
G65P< label >L< loop >
```

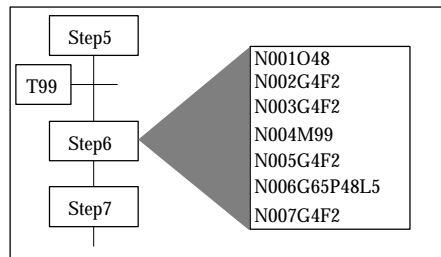
Where:

< label > is the integer identifier for the macro. This integer identifier must match the identifier in the O-word.

< loop > is an integer that indicates the number of times to execute the macro

The < label > parameter must match the O< label > identifier in the macro. Both parameters < label > and < loop > must be specified. For example, if macro 22 were to be called one time, the syntax is: G65P22L1.

The following is an example of a macro call.



When step6 is active, program flow skips the first four blocks, which consist of the macro, and begins executing at block N005. Then block N006 is executed, which calls the macro (blocks N001-N004) a total of five times. After the fifth execution of the macro, program flow resumes at block N007.

Monitoring and Running Motion Application Programs

This section describes how to use the Jog Panel, Single-Axis and Multi-Axis Status Panel, and how to monitor the axis plot.

Note: These panels only display the first three characters of an axis name. They are also limited to the first eight axes.

Using the Jog Panel

Use the Jog Panel to home and jog configured axes. The jog axis panel contains buttons that let you select the:

- jog axis
- jog type (home, continuous, or incremental)
- jog speed
- jog increment

The selected axis is displayed at the top of the Jog Panel and is jogged or homed in the desired direction by pressing and holding the jog+ or jog- button. If the jog+ or jog- button is released, the jog or home is cancelled. For incremental jogs, the axis stops when the increment is completed. To jog another increment, release and press the jog+ or jog- button. The Jog Panel is automatically set up for the number of configured axes.

The Jog Panel also displays:

- absolute position
- commanded position
- following error and velocity status for the selected axis

An axis fault indicator shows when a fault has occurred on the selected axis. When an axis fault occurs, the indicator turns red and the fault button is enabled. If no fault has occurred the indicator is green.

To view detailed information on the axis fault, press the fault button. When the axis fault is cleared the indicator turns green.

Monitoring Axis Plot

Use the View\Axis Plot menu command to view axis information plotted with respect to time. This command activates a status box that plots selected status information for a selected axis over time. The selected axis and status information is displayed at the top of the status box.

To change the selected axis and/or status information, press the button with the desired axis and/or status information. Use the Zoom In, Zoom Out, Shift Up, Shift Down, Speed Up, and Slow Down buttons to position the axis plot to the desired location. Multiple copies of axis status plot can be activated at the same time.

Using the Single Axis Panel

To view single action motion status, use the View/Single/Axis Status menu command. The Single Axis Status Panel displays the status for a single axis. The Single Axis Status Panel is automatically set up for the number of configured axes.

To display the status for an axis, select the axis by pressing the desired axis button on the panel. The title of the selected axis is displayed at the top of the panel.

The status displayed for the selected axis consists of:

- absolute position
- commanded position
- following error
- velocity

An axis fault indicator shows when a fault has occurred on the selected axis. When an axis fault occurs, the indicator turns red and the fault button is enabled. If no fault has occurred the indicator is green.

To view detailed information about an axis fault, press the fault button. When the axis fault is cleared the indicator turns green.

You can activate multiple copies of the single axis motion status to view complete axis status on more than one axis at the same time.

Using the Multi-Axis Status Panel

To view multi-axis motion status, use the View\Multi-Axis Status menu command. The Multi-Axis Status Panel displays the specified status of all configured axes at the same time. The specific status that is displayed is selected from any of the following:

- absolute position (POS)
- commanded position (CMD)
- following error (FE)
- velocity (VEL)

Select desired status by pressing the specific status button on the panel. The title of the selected status is displayed at the top of the panel.

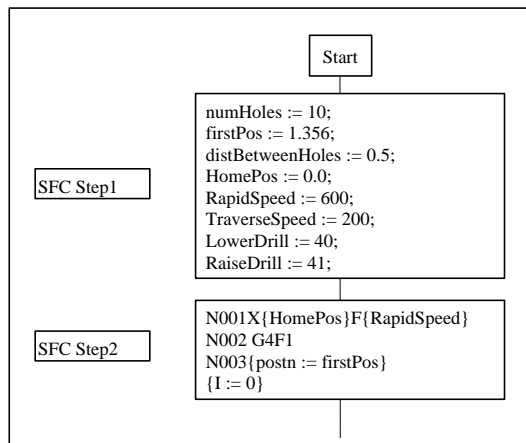
For each axis, a fault indicator indicates when a fault has occurred on that axis. If no fault has occurred the indicator is green. When an axis fault occurs, the indicator for that axis turns red, and the fault button for that axis is enabled.

To view detailed information on the axis fault, press the fault button. When the axis fault is cleared the indicator turns green. The Multi-Axis Status Panel is automatically set up for the number of configured axes.

Multiple copies of the multi-axis motion status can be activated at the same time.

Embedding Structured Text into Motion Control Code

As an enhancement to the IEC-1131-3 specification, the control system software lets you embed assignments and expressions of the Structured Text language within Motion Control code. For example, in the following figure, block 1 of Step2 causes the X axis to move to *HomePos* at a speed of *RapidSpeed*. The symbols *HomePos* and *RapidSpeed* are assigned values in Step1 by Structured Text assignment statements. Blocks 3 and 4 of Step2 show examples of Structured Text assignment statements that have been embedded in Motion Control code.



Follow these guidelines when you embed Structured Text in a Motion Control step:

- Enclose all embedded Structured Text code within braces { } as shown in blocks 1, 3, and 4 of Step2 in the previous figure.
- On a block containing embedded Structured Text, the N command is optional.
- The semicolon, which is usually used to terminate Structured Text code lines, is also optional.
- You can use Structured Text as a parameter for all Motion Control commands except for the N and G commands.
- For example, N016 G4F{pause_time} is a valid block and pause_time is a Structured Text symbol that contains a duration for the F command.
- N100 G{prep_command} is not valid. The Structured Text symbol prep_command cannot contain the parameter for the G command.
- You can use either local or global symbols within the Structured Text expressions. They can be simple symbols or elements of arrays. You can set

values within the program itself (Step1 in the figure) or download values using Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE).

- You can use assignment statements in separate blocks (Step2, blocks 3 and 4 in the figure).
- Three Structured Text function blocks are available for issuing motion commands from an SFC Structured Text step: AXSJOG, MOVEAXS, and STOPJOG (see page E-30).

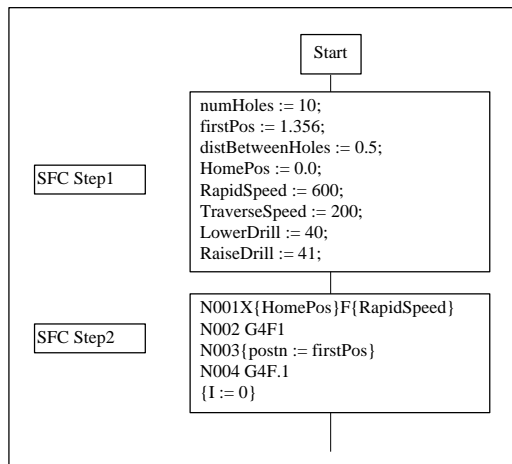
How the Embedded Structured Text Code is Evaluated

When program flow encounters a block containing Structured Text, program execution and all motion activity pauses briefly. Program flow then continues with the next block that follows the Structured Text.

Expressions are evaluated at the time of execution (when the block is executed) and can represent the result of real-time inputs, such as sensor data. They are evaluated as integers or real numbers as appropriate for the Motion Control word.

Because the control system software has a “read-ahead” capability, Structured Text assignment statements are read and executed before program flow encounters the block containing them. You can control the execution of a Structured Text assignment by placing a G04 command in the block that precedes the block containing the assignment. The “read-ahead” feature does not extend beyond a G04 command.

For example, in the following figure, the assignment statement in the fifth block of Step2 is not executed until program flow encounters the statement. Without the G04 command in the fourth block, symbol I may be set to zero before the second or third block is executed.



Structured Text Motion Functions

These Structured Text Motion Functions are available: AXSJOG, MOVEAXS, and STOPJOG.

AXSJOG

The AXSJOG function starts a jog command on a specified axis.

Format:

```
AXSJOG(<axis>, JOGDIR:= <direction> , JOGTYPE:= <type>, JOGSPD:= <speed>, JOGDIST:= <distance>);
```

Where:

<axis> is the axis name (X, Y, Z, etc.)

<direction> is the jog direction (JOGPLUS or JOGMINUS)

<type> is the type of jog (JOGCONT for a continuous jog, JOGINCR for an incremental position jog, or JOGHOME for a home position)

<speed> and <distance> are real numbers, symbols, or expressions that resolve to real number data types and specify the jog speed and distance.

Example:

```
AXSJOG (X, JOGDIR:=JOGMINUS, JOGTYPE:=JOGCONT, JOGSPD:=10.0);
```

MOVEAXS

The MOVEAXS function starts a move command on a specified axis.

Format:

```
AXSJOG(<axis>, POSTN:= <position> , VEL:= <velocity>, ACCEL:= <acceleration>);
```

Where:

<axis> is the axis name (X, Y, Z, etc.)

<position>, <velocity>, and <acceleration> are real numbers, symbols, or expressions that resolve to real number data types and specify the move position, velocity, and acceleration.

Example:

```
MOVEAXS (X, POSTN:= positionA, VEL:= velocityA, ACCEL:=10.0);
```

STOPJOG

The STOPJOG function stops a jog command on a specified axis.

Format:

STOPJOG(<axis>);

Where:

<axis> is the axis name (X, Y, Z, etc.).

Example:

STOPJOG (Z);

Operator Interface Motion Controls

Jog Panel

The Jog Panel provides the functions needed to home and jog configured axes. The jog axis panel contains buttons to select the jog axis, jog type (home, continuous, or incremental), jog speed, and jog increment. The selected axis is displayed at the top of the Jog Panel. The Jog Panel also displays absolute position, commanded position, following error and velocity status for the selected axis. An axis fault indicator is used to indicate that a fault has occurred on the selected axis. If no fault has occurred the indicator is green. When an axis fault occurs, the indicator turns red and the fault button is enabled. To view detailed information on the axis fault, press the fault button. When the axis fault is cleared the indicator turns green. The selected axis is jogged or homed in the desired direction by pressing and holding the Jog+ or Jog- button. If the Jog+ or Jog- button is released, the jog or home is aborted. For incremental jogs, the axis stops when the increment is completed. To jog another increment, release and press the Jog+ or Jog- button.

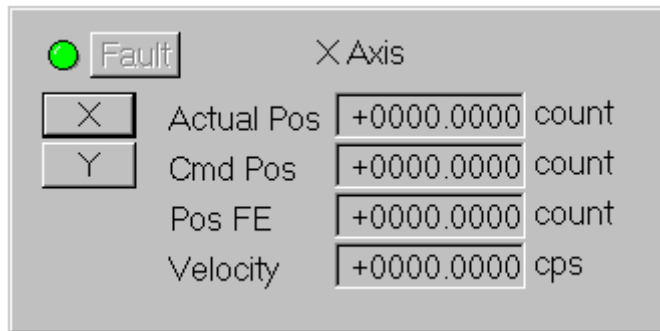
The screenshot shows the Jog Panel interface for the X Axis. At the top left, there is a green 'Fault' indicator. Below it are buttons for 'X' and 'Y' axis selection. The 'Jog Type' section has radio buttons for 'Home' (selected), 'Continuous', and 'Incremental'. The 'X Axis' section displays four numerical values: 'Actual Pos' (+0000.0000 count), 'Cmd Pos' (+0000.0000 count), 'Pos FE' (+0000.0000 count), and 'Velocity' (+0000.0000 cps). Below these are 'JOG +' and 'JOG -' buttons. On the right, the 'Jog Speed' section has three radio buttons, all set to '0 cps'. The 'Jog Increment' section has five radio buttons, with '1 count' selected.

The Jog Panel is automatically set up for the number of configured axes. There are no configuration options for the Jog Panel control.

Single Axis Panel

The Single Axis Status Panel displays the status for a single axis. The axis for which status is displayed is selected by pressing the desired axis button on the panel. The title of the selected axis is displayed at the top of the panel. The status which is displayed for the selected axis consists of absolute position, commanded position, following error, and velocity. An axis fault indicator is used to indicate that a fault has occurred on the selected axis. If no fault has occurred the indicator is green. When an axis fault occurs, the indicator turns red and the fault button is enabled. To view detailed information on the axis fault, press the fault button. When the axis fault is cleared the indicator turns green.

The Single Axis Status Panel is automatically set up for the number of configured axes. There are no configuration options for the Single Axis Status Panel control.



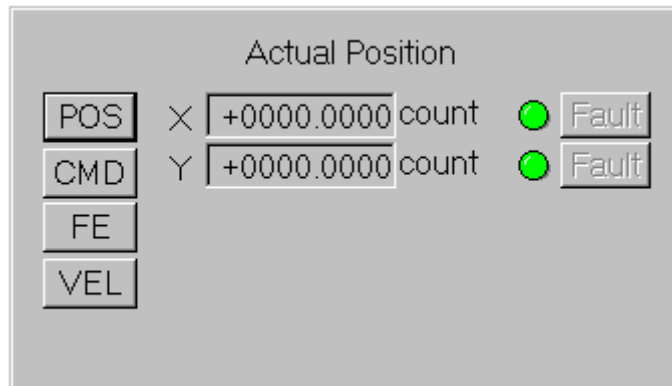
Using the Single Axis Motion Status Panel

The selected axis is displayed at the top of the status box. To change the selected axis, press the button with the desired axis name. Multiple copies of the single axis motion status can be activated to view complete axis status on more than one axis at the same time.

Multi-Axis Status Panel

The Multi Axis Status Panel displays the specified status of all configured axes at the same time. The specific status which is displayed is selected from any of the following: absolute position (POS), commanded position (CMD), following error (FE) and velocity (VEL). The desired status is selected by pressing the specific status button on the panel. The title of the selected status is displayed at the top of the panel. For each axis, a fault indicator is used to indicate that a fault has occurred on that axis. If no fault has occurred the indicator is green. When an axis fault occurs, the indicator for that axis turns red and the fault button for that axis is enabled. To view detailed information on the axis fault, press the fault button. When the axis fault is cleared the indicator turns green.

The Multi Axis Status Panel is automatically set up for the number of configured axes. There are no configuration options for the Multi Axis Status Panel control.



Using the Multi-Axis Motion Status Panel

The selected status information is displayed at the top of the status box. To change the selected status information, press the button with the desired status information. Multiple copies of the multi-axis motion status can be activated at the same time.

RS274 Block Display

The RS274 Block Display allows you to display the active RS274 block commands on the operator interface screen. All the block commands in the active SFC step will be displayed. The active block will be highlighted green and a pointer (>) will be at the front of the block.

Editing an RS274 Block Display

To edit an RS274 Block Display, double click on the desired RS274 Block Display or select the desired RS274 Block Display and press **Enter**. The Edit RS274 Block Display dialog box is displayed allowing the user to change the RS274 Block Display definition data.

The RS274 Program Symbol combo box is used to define the STRING symbol that contains the file path of the SFC program from which active RS274 blocks will be displayed. To select a display symbol for the RS274 Program Symbol, either select a symbol name from the drop down list box or type a symbol name into the edit box.

The RS274 Block Display uses OLE technology to link to the Program Editor. The Program Editor displays the RS274 blocks in the RS274 Block Display on the operator screen. Whenever the program symbol changes, the RS274 Block Display links to the new SFC program.

Only RS274 blocks located in the top level SFC program are displayed. If RS274 blocks are located in a macro step SFC they are not displayed.

Performance Considerations

To link the RS274 Block Display to the Program Editor, the OLE subsystem must run the Program Editor application. The time required to startup the Program Editor may cause an undesirable delay in the operator interface on some systems. To eliminate this delay in the operator interface, the following two recommendations are presented:

- 1) Start the Program Editor minimized in the background (with read only access if desired) before the operator interface.
- 2) Initialize all RS274 Block Display symbols with the desired SFC file paths. Since all OLE links are connected when the operator interface is activated, the link delay occurs at system startup.

Warning

Pointers should be used by experts only. Misuse can result in unpredictable operation and great difficulty in debugging.

Structured Text has two pointer operators: the pointer reference operator (&) and the pointer dereference operator (*). These operators are used in *indirect addressing* operations.

This appendix provides the following information:

- Addressing
- Pointer Operators
- Pointer Symbol Definition
- Array Pointers

Addressing

In *direct addressing*, a data value is given a symbolic name and that symbolic name is used to directly access the data value. In the following example, X is assigned the value of the Y data value.

```
X := Y;
```

In *indirect addressing*, a symbolic name, commonly called a *pointer symbol*, refers to the location where the data value is stored. To get the actual data value using indirect addressing, the pointer symbol is used to obtain the location of the data value, then the location is used to get the actual data value.

In the following examples, pVar1 is a pointer symbol.

```
pVar1 := & X;      pVar1 is assigned the location of the X data value.
```

```
Y := *pVar1;      Y is assigned the value contained in X, since pVar1  
                  contains the location of X.
```

```
*pVar1 := Y;      X is assigned the value contained in Y.
```

Pointer Operators

Assume VarInt1 and VarInt2 are integer symbols and pInt is defined as a pointer to integer.

To assign a location to a pointer symbol

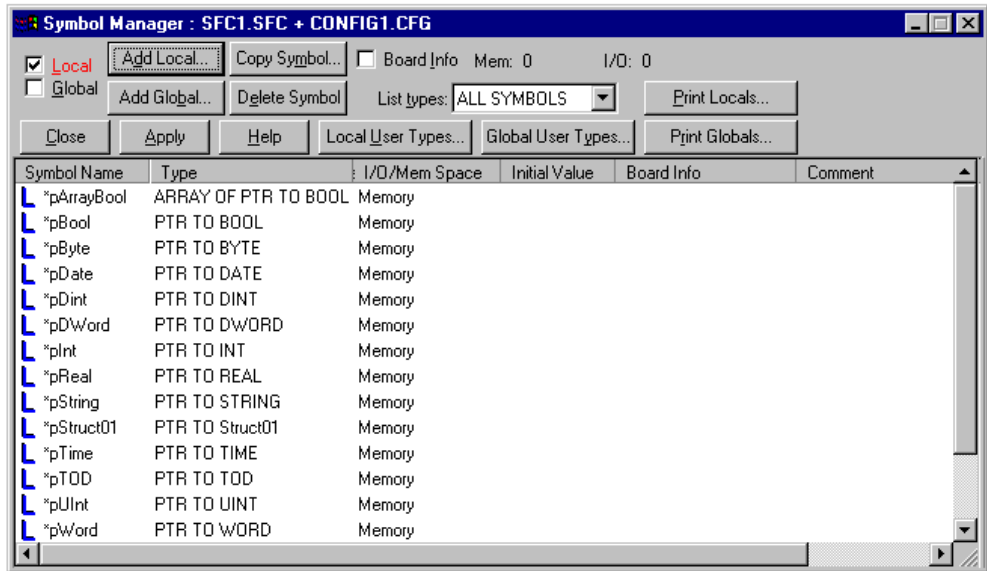
```
pInt := & VarInt1;  pInt is assigned the location of VarInt1. "&" means "get  
the location of."
```

To get the data value referenced by a pointer symbol

```
VarInt2 := * pInt;  VarInt2 is assigned the value of VarInt1 . * means "get the  
value located at".
```

Pointer Symbol Definition

As with other symbols, pointer symbols are defined in the Symbol Manager. The following figure shows the definition of several pointer types.



Pointer Notes

1. When a pointer symbol is defined, it is defined as a pointer to a symbol of a specific data type (REAL, INT, STRING, etc.). For example, the pointer symbol pVar1 could be assigned the location of any symbol of its data type.
2. Pointers to standard data types, user structures, and arrays can be defined. Pointers to function blocks and system objects *cannot* be defined.
3. A pointer symbol can be substituted for a symbol of the same base type by prefixing it with the dereference operator *. (*pVarInt1 = VarInt1, provided the assignment pVarInt1:=&VarInt1 has been performed.)

4. A pointer to a structure can be used directly in place of the structure name. For example:

Assume a user structure `UserStruct1` is defined and `pStruct1` is defined as a pointer to this user structure.

For user structure symbols, the name of the user structure (in this case `UserStruct1`) is a pointer to the user structure data values. However, the user structure name can never be assigned to a different location, it will always point to the user structure.

`pStruct1 := UserStruct1;` `pStruct1` is assigned the location of `UserStruct1`.

`pStruct1.intMember1 := VarInt1;` The `intMember1` member of `UserStruct1` is assigned the value of `VarInt1`.

5. A pointer that is assigned an address in an array (e.g., `pInt:= &intArray[5];`) can be used with the array index operator (`pInt[Index]`) to index into the array. This index starts with 0 (the array element pointed to by the pointer) and continues to the end of the array. For example:

`intArray` is defined as an array of ten integers (`ARRAY[1..10]`)

`pInt` is defined as a pointer to integer type

Then:

`pInt:= &intArray[5];`

`pInt[0]:= 0;` `(*intArray[5]*)`

`pInt[5]:= 5;` `(*intArray[10]*)`

For additional examples of the use of array pointers, refer to page E-5.

6. A null value can be assigned to a pointer symbol as follows:

`pInt := NULL;` `pInt` is assigned the NULL pointer value. Pointer symbols can be assigned to and compared (equal and not equal to) NULL. NULL is a system keyword.

7. The location of a pointer symbol can be initialized in a MOVE function block. The output of the MOVE function block is the pointer symbol to be initialized. The input of the MOVE function block is either another pointer symbol or a direct symbol preceded by the pointer reference operator `&`.
8. Pointers *cannot* be passed into FILE functions, bit array functions (SHL, AND_BITS, etc.), and STRING_TO_ARRAY functions.

Array Pointers

To use an array pointer

Assume `IntArray` is an array of ten integers (`IntArray: ARRAY [1..10] OF INT`) and `pArray` is defined as a pointer to integer.

For array symbols, the name of the array (in this case `IntArray`) is similar to a pointer to the array data values. However, the array name can never be assigned to a different location, it will always point to the array.

`pArray := &IntArray;` `pArray` is assigned the location of `IntArray`. It points to the first element of the array.

`pArray[index] := VarInt1;` `IntArray[index]` is assigned the value of `VarInt1`.

`pArray := & IntArray[index];` `pArray` points to the element of the array located at `index`.

To use a pointer to an array of user structures

Assume an array of user structures `structArray` (`structArray : ARRAY [1..10] OF USER_STRUCT1`) is defined, and a pointer to the user structure `pStructArray` is defined (`pStructArray : PTR TO USER_STRUCT1`).

`pStructArray := &structArray;` `pStructArray` is assigned the location of `structArray`.

`pStructArray[5].intMember1 := VarInt1;` The `intMember1` member of `structArray[5]` is assigned the value of `VarInt1`.

To use an array of pointers which point to an INT

Assume an array of pointers `ArrayPtr` (`ARRAY [1..10] OF PTR TO INT`) is defined.

`ArrayPtr[index] := &VarInt1;` `ArrayPtr[index]` is assigned the address of `VarInt1`.

`*ArrayPtr[index] := VarInt2;` `VarInt1` is assigned the value of `VarInt2`.

To use an array of pointers which point to an array of INT

Assume an array of integers `intArray` (ARRAY [1..10] OF INT) and an array of pointers `ArrayPtr` (ARRAY [1..10] OF PTR TO INT) are defined.

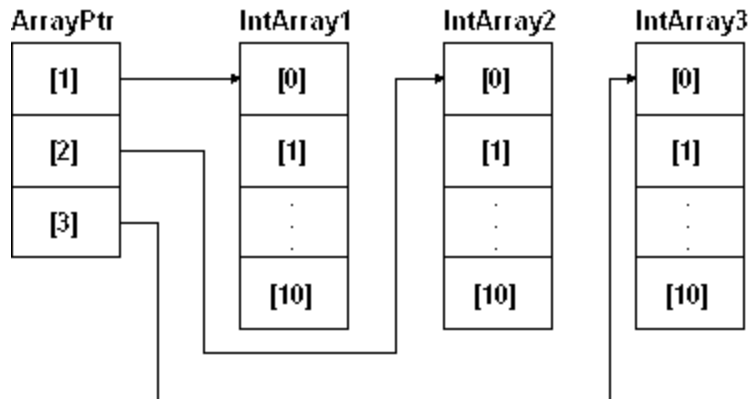
<code>ArrayPtr[index] := &IntArray;</code>	<code>ArrayPtr[index]</code> is assigned the address of the first element in <code>intArray</code> .
<code>*ArrayPtr[index] := VarInt1;</code>	<code>IntArray[1]</code> is assigned the value of <code>VarInt1</code> .
<code>ArrayPtr[index][1] := VarInt1;</code>	Same assignment as above.

To use an array of pointers to arrays of INT

Assume arrays of integers `intArray1`, `intArray2`, `IntArray3` (ARRAY [0..10] OF INT) and an array of pointers `ArrayPtr` (ARRAY [1..3] OF PTR TO INT) are defined.

```
ArrayPtr[1] := &IntArray1[0];  
ArrayPtr[2] := &IntArray2[0];  
ArrayPtr[3] := &IntArray3[0];
```

Refer to the following figure.



The following syntax can be used:

ArrayPtr[1] [0] := VarInt1;	(*IntArray1[0] = VarInt1*)
ArrayPtr[1] [1] := VarInt2;	(*IntArray1[1] = VarInt2*)
ArrayPtr[1] [2] := VarInt3;	(*IntArray1[2] = VarInt3*)









ArrayPtr[2] [0] := VarInt1;	(*IntArray2[0] = VarInt1*)
ArrayPtr[2] [1] := VarInt2;	(*IntArray2[1] = VarInt2*)
ArrayPtr[2] [2] := VarInt3;	(*IntArray2[2] = VarInt3*)





ArrayPtr[3] [0] := VarInt1;	(*IntArray3[0] = VarInt1*)
ArrayPtr[3] [1] := VarInt2;	(*IntArray3[1] = VarInt2*)
ArrayPtr[3] [2] := VarInt3;	(*IntArray3[2] = VarInt3*)

This appendix summarizes the RLL, SFC, Structured Text, and Instruction List instruction sets. For detailed explanations of the instructions, refer to Online Help.

RLL Instruction Set Summary

Contacts and Coils

Type	Toolbar Button	Description
Normally Open Contact		The contact passes power flow if the point that it represents is TRUE.
Normally Closed Contact		The contact passes power flow if the point that it represents is FALSE.
Positive Transition Sensing Contact		The contact passes power flow if the point that it represents transitions from FALSE to TRUE immediately prior to the evaluation of the contact.
Negative Transition Sensing Contact		The contact passes power flow if the point that it represents transitions from TRUE to FALSE immediately prior to the evaluation of the contact.
Output Coil		The coil sets the point that it represents to TRUE when the coil has power flow.
Negated Output Coils		The coil sets the point that it represents to TRUE when the coil does not have power flow.
Set (Latch) Coil		The coil sets the point that it represents to TRUE when the coil has power flow. It can be set to FALSE only by a reset coil.
Reset (Unlatch) Coil		The coil sets the point that it represents to FALSE when the coil has power flow. The point remains FALSE (the object is reset, or unlatched) even when the coil no longer has power flow and can be set to FALSE only by a reset coil.

Type	Toolbar Button	Description
Positive Transition Sensing Coil		When power flow to the coil transitions from FALSE to TRUE, the coil sets the point that it represents to TRUE. The point remains TRUE, unless it is set to FALSE elsewhere, for the duration of one scan cycle.
Negative Transition Sensing Coil		When power flow to the coil transitions from TRUE to FALSE, the coil sets the point that it represents to TRUE. The object remains TRUE, unless it is set to FALSE else where, for the duration of one scan cycle.
Jump Coil/Label		Use the jump and label elements to disable sections of program code temporarily. You must use the jump coil and label together. A label without a jump coil causes a runtime error.
SFC Transition Coil		The SFC transition coil is an RLL program element that you can use only under specific conditions (within an SFC Action) in an SFC program.

Bit String

Type	Abbr.	Description
Logical AND	AND	Computes the bitwise AND of two numbers.
Logical NOT	NOT	Computes the bitwise complement of a number.
Logical OR	OR	Computes the bitwise OR of two numbers.
Rotate Left	ROL	Rotates the input left by the number of bits specified by the shift number.
Rotate Right	ROR	Rotates the input right by the number of bits specified by the shift number.
Shift Left	SHL	Shifts the input left by the number of bits specified by the shift number.
Shift Right	SHR	Shifts the input right by the number of bits specified by the shift number.
Logical Exclusive OR	XOR	Computes the bitwise Exclusive OR of two numbers.

Character String

Type	Abbr.	Description
Concatenate	CAT	Concatenates the second input string to the end of the first input string.
Delete	DEL	Deletes characters from the middle of the input string.
Find	FIND	Searches for one input string within another.
Insert	INS	Inserts an input string into another input string.
Copy Left	LEFT	Copies the leftmost characters from the input string.
Store Length	LEN	Stores the length of the input string.
Copy Middle	MID	Copies characters from the middle of the input string.
Copy Right	RGHT	Copies the rightmost characters from the input string.
Replace	RPLC	Replaces characters in an input string with another input string.
Byte Array-To-String	BATOS	Takes the input byte array and stores the bytes as characters in a string.
Convert Integer to ASCII	ITOA	Converts the integer input to an ASCII string
Display a Message on the Operator Screen	MSGB	Displays a message box on the operator screen.
Display Message in an Output Window	MSGW	Displays a message in the Output Window.
Convert Real to ASCII	RTOA	Converts the real input to an ASCII string.
String-To-Byte Array	STOBA	Takes the input string and stores the characters of the string in a byte array.

Comparison (String+)

Type	Abbr.	Description
Equal	EQ	Tests two inputs for equality.
Greater Than or Equal	GE	Tests if first input is greater than or equal second input.
Greater Than	GT	Tests if first input is greater than second input.
Less Than or Equal	LE	Tests if first input is less than or equal second input.
Less Than	LT	Tests if first input is less than second input.
Not Equal	NE	Tests two inputs for inequality.

Conversion

Type	Abbr.	Description
Byte Array to String	BATOS	Converts a byte array to a STRING value.
Date to String	DateToString	Converts a DATE to a STRING value.
Integer to String	ITOA	Converts an INT to a STRING value.
Real to String	RTOA	Converts a REAL to a STRING value.
RGB to DWORD	RGB_TO_D WORD	Converts a triplet of red, green and blue values to a DWORD.
String to Byte Array	STOBA	Converts a STRING to a byte array.
String to Date	StringToDate	Converts a STRING to DATE.
String to Integer	ATOI	Converts an ASCII numeric STRING to an integer value.
String to Real	ATOR	Converts an ASCII numeric STRING to a real value.
String to Time of Day	StringToTOD	Converts a STRING to a TOD.
Time of Day to String	TODToString	Converts a TOD to a STRING value.

Counters and Timers

Type	Abbr.	Description
Count Down	CTD	Counts events by decrementing by one.
Count Up	CTU	Counts events by incrementing by one.
Count Up/Down	CTUD	Counts events up or down.
Timer Off Delay	TOF	Provides off-delay timing of events.
Timer On Delay	TON	Provides on-delay timing of events.
Timer Pulse	TP	Activated by a pulse, provides off-delay timing of events.

Edge Detect

Type	Abbr.	Description
Falling Edge Trigger	FTRG	Turns on an output when triggered by a falling edge trigger.
Rising Edge Trigger	RTRG	Turns on an output when triggered by a rising edge trigger.

Extended Timers

Extended Timer Off Delay	XTOF	Provides off-delay timing of events.
Extended Timer On Delay	XTON	Provides on-delay timing of events.
Extended Timer Pulse	XTP	Activated by a pulse, provides off-delay timing of events.

File

Type	Abbr.	Description
Close File	FCLOS	Closes a file.
Copy File	FCOPY	Copies a file.
Delete File	FDEL	Deletes a file.
Create File	FNEW	Creates a new file.
Open File	FOPEN	Opens an existing file.
Read File	FREAD	Reads data from a file.
Rewind File	FRW D	Rewinds a file to the beginning.
Write to File	FWRIT	Writes data to a file.

Math

Type	Abbr.	Description
Absolute Value	ABS	Computes the absolute value of a number.
Addition	ADD	Adds two numbers.
Division	DIV	Divides one number by another.
Exponent	EXPT	Raises the first number to the power specified by the second number.
Modulo	MOD	Divides one number by another and stores the remainder.
Move	MOVE	Copies data from one location to another.
Multiply	MUL	Multiplies two numbers.
Negate	NEG	Negates (inverts) the inputs.
Square Root	SQRT	Computes the square root of a number.
Subtraction	SUB	Subtracts one number from another.

Miscellaneous

Type	Abbr.	Description
Abort All Programs	ABTAL	Aborts all programs in the runtime subsystems.
Display Message	MSGB	Displays a message in a Windows message box.
Message Window	MSGW	Displays a message in the Program Editor Output Window.
Change MMI Screen	Change MMIScreen	Displays a specified HMI screen.

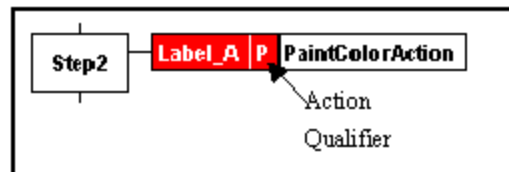
Trigonometric and Logarithmic

Type	Abbr.	Description
Arc Cosine	ACOS	Computes the arc cosine of a number.
Arc Sine	ASIN	Computes the arc sine of a number.
Arc Tangent	ATAN	Computes the arc tangent of a number
Cosine	COS	Computes the cosine of a number.
Exponential	EXP	Computes the natural log exponentiation of a number.
Natural Log	LN	Computes the natural log of a number.
Logarithm	LOG	Computes the log (base 10) of a number.
Sine	SIN	Computes the sine of a number.
Tangent	TAN	Computes the tangent of a number.

SFC Instruction Set Summary

Statement	Description
Step	A step represents a condition in which the behavior of the factory process is defined by the Actions associated with the Step
RLL Transition	When power flow on the RLL rung reaches the output coil, turning it on, the Transition becomes TRUE, allowing program flow to move to the next Step.
Boolean Transition	When the Boolean expression resolves to TRUE, the Transition becomes TRUE, allowing program flow to move to the next Step.
Macro Step	The Macro Step provides a means of calling one SFC for execution from a Step in another SFC.
Action	An action consists of lines of code that are executed when a Step becomes active. Action Qualifiers specify constraints on the execution of the RLL code contained in the Action.
Jump/Label Function	Transfer program flow to specified label.
Loop	Allows the SFC execution to go back to a previous location in order to repeat a series of Steps.
Select Divergence	A select divergence lets you choose one path to be active from two or more control paths
Simultaneous Divergence	A simultaneous divergence lets you activate multiple control paths simultaneously in parallel.
Program control block (PRGCB)	Allows an SFC application program to compile and control the execution of other SFC and RLL application programs.

Qualifiers appear within the Action as shown below.



Action Qualifiers

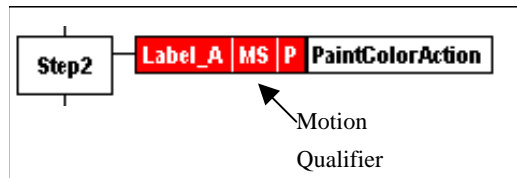
If after the Step becomes active, you want the	Use this qualifier
RLL to begin running and stop when the Step becomes inactive.	Non Stored (N)
RLL to begin running and continue to run until reset by the Reset qualifier.	Stored (S)
RLL to execute once.	Pulsed (P)
RLL to begin running after a delay* The RLL stops when the Step becomes inactive.	Time Delayed (D)
RLL to begin running and stop when the time limit* expires or the Step becomes inactive.	Time Limited (L)
RLL to begin running after a delay* and continue to run until reset by the Reset qualifier. If another Action qualifier resets the RLL, during the delay, the reset has no effect because the RLL has not yet been stored. If the Step becomes inactive before the delay completes the RLL is never stored and does not run at all.	Delayed and Stored (DS)
RLL to begin running after a delay* and continue to run until reset by the Reset qualifier. If an Action is reset during a delay, then the RLL does not execute.	Stored and Time Delayed (SD)
RLL to begin running and after the specified time* stop. A Reset qualifier is required to reset the RLL. Otherwise, without the reset, the RLL does not run again. If the Step becomes inactive, the RLL continues to run until the duration times out. A Reset qualifier is not required, but one can be used to stop the RLL execution.	Stored and Time Limited (SL)
RLL begins running and stop after the specified time* expires. If the Step becomes inactive, the RLL continues to run until the duration times out. A Reset qualifier is not required, but one can be used to stop the RLL execution.	Pulse Width (PW)
The RLL that was started by the Stored qualifier is terminated by the Reset qualifier (R). You can use the Reset qualifier in another Action that is associated with the same Step or in an Action associated with another Step. The RLL continues to run between Steps. If the Action is associated with another Step, the Action must have the same name as the Action that is to be reset.	Reset (R)

*For details, see “Time Duration” in Chapter 4.

Motion Qualifiers

Note: Not all motion qualifiers are supported by all motion cards. Refer to the motion card documentation for supported motion qualifiers.

Motion Qualifiers specify motion constraints that must be satisfied before the RLL begins running. If you use a program Label, the motion constraint applies to the motion block following the program Label. Qualifiers appear within the Action as shown below.



Choose from the following qualifiers. Leave a blank for no qualifier.

If you do not want the RLL to begin running until the:	Use this qualifier:
motion starts	Motion Started (MS)
acceleration profile is complete	Acceleration Complete (AC)
motion reaches the target speed	At Speed (AS)
motion begins the deceleration profile	Deceleration Started (DS)
motion is finished	Motion Complete (MC)
motion is finished and all axes associated with the motion are within the In Position tolerance of the programmed endpoint	In Position (IP)
move command is finished	End of Block (EB)

Structured Text Instruction Set Summary

Statements

Statement	Description
Assignment	Replaces the value of an object with the result of evaluating an expression.
Case	Executes a set of statements based on the value of a variable.
Comment	Used to incorporate useful annotations into your program code.
Exit	Terminates an iterative process such as a FOR or WHILE statement.
For	Used to execute a series of statements repeatedly, with the number of repetitions based on the value of a control variable.
Function Call	Executes one of the predefined algorithms that allow you to do math, logic functions, bit shift operations and so forth.

Bit String

Statement	Description
Statement	Description
AND	Returns the Boolean or bitwise logical AND of the input values.
NOT	Returns the Boolean or bitwise inversion of the input value.
Exclusive OR (XOR)	Returns the Boolean or bitwise logical Exclusive OR of the input values.
Rotate Left (ROL)	Returns a value calculated by circularly shifting the bits of the input value a specified number of positions to the left. Bit values shifted from the most significant bit (MSB) position are rotated to the least significant bit (LSB) position.
Rotate Right (ROR)	Returns a value calculated by circularly shifting the bits of the input value a specified number of positions to the right. Bit values shifted from the least significant bit (LSB) position are rotated to the most significant bit (MSB) position.
Shift Left (SHL)	Returns a value calculated by shifting the bits of the input value a specified number of positions to the left. Bit values shifted from the most significant bit position are discarded during the shift, and the least significant bit positions are zero-filled.
Shift Right (SHR)	Returns a value calculated by shifting the bits of the input value a specified number of positions to the right. Bit values shifted from the least significant bit position are discarded during the shift, and most significant bit positions are zero-filled.

Character String

Statement	Description
ARRAY_TO_STRING	Converts an input array of bytes to ASCII characters and stores them to a string output.
Concatenate	Returns the result of concatenating two strings (appending one string to the end of another string).
Delete	Returns the result of deleting a specified number of characters from a specified position in the middle of the input string
DSPMSG	Displays a message in a window on the operator's screen.
Equal (EQ)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the inputs are equal; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Find	Returns the starting position of one string within a second string. FIND returns 0 if the string is not found.
Greater Than or Equal (GE)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the first input is greater than or equal to the second input; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Greater Than (GT)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the first input is greater than the second input; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly
INT_TO_STRING	Converts an integer to an ASCII character string.
Insert	Returns a string formed by inserting one string of characters into another string at a specified position.
Left	Returns a specified number of the leftmost characters of the input string.
Length	Returns the length of a character string.
Less Than or Equal (LE)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the first input is less than or equal to the second input; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Less Than (LT)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the first input is less than the second input; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Middle	Returns a specified number of characters from the middle (at a specified position) of the input string.
MSGWND	Displays a message in the Output Window
Not Equal (NE)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the inputs are not equal; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly
REAL_TO_STRING	Converts a real number to an ASCII character string.
Replace	Returns a string formed by replacing characters in one string (at a specified position) with a specified number of characters from another string.
Right	Returns a specified number of the rightmost characters of the input string.

Conversion

Statement	Description
BCD_TO_INT	Converts an input Binary-Coded Decimal (BCD) value to an integer.
Byte Array to String (BATOS)	Converts an input array of bytes to ASCII characters and stores them to a string output. The terminating byte must contain zero.
Date to String (DateToString)	Converts a DATE to a STRING value. A pointer variable is used to point to the string.
Integer to String (ITOA)	Converts an integer to an ASCII character string representation of the value of the integer and returns the result.
Real to String (RTOA)	Converts a real number to an ASCII character string representation of the value of the number and returns the result.
RGB to DWORD	Converts a triplet of red, green and blue values to a DWORD. Used by the ActiveX control feature of the Operator Interface.
STRING_TO_ARRAY	Takes the input ASCII string and stores the characters of the string in a byte array.
String to Byte Array (STOBA)	Converts each character in the input string to its decimal value and stores the result in a byte array. A zero is placed in the last byte of the array.
String to Date (StringToDate)	Converts a STRING to a DATE and returns the result.
String to Integer (ATOI)	Converts an ASCII numeric string to its integer equivalent.
String to Real (ATOR)	Converts an ASCII numeric string (including decimal point) to its real equivalent.
String to TOD (StringToTOD)	Converts a STRING to a TOD and returns the result.
Time of Day to String (TODToString)	Converts a TOD to a STRING value and places the result in the symbol pointed to by pString.

Counters and Timers

Statement	Description
Count Down (CTD)	Counts from a preset value down to zero. The output (Q) goes TRUE when the count equals zero. It can be used, for example, to count recurring events.
Count Up (CTU)	Counts from zero up to a preset value. The output (Q) goes TRUE when the count equals the preset count. It can be used, for example, to count recurring events.
Count Up/Down (CTUD)	Counts up or down, setting an up-count output when the current count is greater than or equal to the preset count, or a down-count output when the current count is less than or equal to zero.
Timer Off Delay (TOF)	Turns off an output after a preset time delay.
Timer On Delay (TON)	Turns on an output after a preset time delay.
Timer Pulse (TP)	The TP function block times the duration of an event. After its input pulses from off to on, the TP keeps time to the preset interval and sets an output FALSE, which makes the TP an off-delay timer.

Edge Detect

Statement	Description
Falling Edge Trigger (F_TRIG)	The F_TRIG function block sets an output to TRUE for one scan when the input to the function block transitions from TRUE to FALSE.
Rising Edge Trigger (R_TRIG)	The RTRIG function block sets an output to TRUE for one scan when the input to the function block transitions from FALSE to TRUE.

Extended Timers

Statement	Description
Extended Timer Off Delay (XTOF)	Turns off an output after a preset time delay. Same as TOF timer except for two additional inputs (LoadTime and NewTime).
Extended Timer On Delay (XTON)	Turns on an output after a preset time delay. Same as TON except for two additional inputs (LoadTime and NewTime).
Extended Timer Pulse (XTP)	The XTP function block times the duration of an event. After its input pulses from off to on, the XTP keeps time to the preset interval and sets an output FALSE, which makes the XTP an off-delay timer. Same as TP timer except for two additional inputs (LoadTime and NewTime).

File Functions

Statement	Description
APPENDFILE	Writes data to the end of a file specified by the file control block
BREAK	Causes the program to stop running if you have enabled debugging.
CLOSEFILE	Closes a file that has been opened by the OPENFILE function.
COPYFILE	Copies an existing file.
DELETEFILE	Deletes an existing file.
NEWFILE	Creates a new file.
OPENFILE	Opens a file for operations, such as reading or writing.
READFILE	Reads data from a file.
REWINDFILE	Positions the internal file pointer to the beginning of a file.
WRITEFILE	Writes data to a file.

Shift/Rotate Functions

Statement	Description
ROL	Rotates the individual bits of a value a specified number of positions to the left.
ROR	Rotates the individual bits of a value a specified number of positions to the right.
SHL	Shifts the individual bits of a value a specified number of positions to the left.
SHR	Shifts the individual bits of a value a specified number of positions to the right.
IF	Used for the execution of a set of statements only when a Boolean variable is TRUE.
INCLUDE	Calls an external file and executes a set of statements contained within the file.
REPEAT	Used for the repeated execution of a set of statements until a Boolean condition becomes TRUE.
SCAN	Suspends the execution of Structured Text statements while an I/O scan takes place.
WHILE	Used for the repeated execution of a set of statements until a Boolean condition becomes FALSE.

Math

Statement	Description
Addition (ADD)	Returns the result of summing the inputs.
ABS	Calculates the absolute value of the input.
Division (DIV)	Returns the result of dividing the first input value by the second input value.
Exponent (EXPT)	Returns the result of raising a value to the power specified by a second value.
MAX	Determines the maximum of two values.
MIN	Determines the minimum of two values.
Modulus (MOD)	Returns the remainder of dividing the first input by the second input.
Move (MOVE)	Returns the result of converting the input value to the same data type as the output.
Multiplication (MUL)	Returns the result of multiplying the input values.
Negation (NEG)	Returns the result of changing the sign of the input value.
Square Root (SQRT)	Returns the square root of the input value.
Subtraction (SUB)	Returns the result of subtracting the second input value from the first input value.

Miscellaneous

Statement	Description
Abort All	Aborts all programs in the runtime subsystem.
Display Message	Displays a message in a Windows message box. Program execution continues uninterrupted while the message window is displayed. The operator can click on <i>OK</i> to dismiss the message.
Initialize Array	Initializes all of the elements of an array to a specified value.
Message Window	Displays a message in the Program Editor <i>Output Window</i> .
Change MMI Screen	Displays a specified HMI screen.

Selection

Statement	Description
Maximum (MAX)	Determines the largest value of the inputs and returns that value as the output. The function supports up to 16 inputs.
Minimum (MIN)	Determines the minimum value of the inputs and uses that value as the output. The function can have up to 16 inputs.

System Objects

Statement	Description
PID Loop Control (PID)	PID is an instruction providing automatic close-loop operation of continuous process control loops. For each loop the instruction performs proportional control and optionally integral control, derivative control, or both
Program control block (PRGCB)	Allows an SFC application program to compile and control the execution of other SFC and RLL application programs.
Timer (TMR)	Implements a timer in the Structured Text language.

Trigonometric and Logarithmic

Statement	Description
Arc Cosine (ACOS)	Calculates the arc cosine of the input. The result is in radians.
Arc Sine (ASIN)	Calculates the arc sine of the input. The result is in radians.
ARC Tangent (ATAN)	Calculates the arc tangent of the input. The result is in radians.
Cosine (COS)	Calculates the cosine of the input, which must be in radians.
Exponential (EXP)	Calculates the natural log exponentiation of the input value (raises e to the power of the input).
EXPT	Raises a value to the power specified by a second value.
Natural Log (LN)	Calculates the natural logarithm of a value.
Logarithm (LOG)	Calculates the base 10 logarithm of a value.
Sine (SIN)	Calculates the sine of the input, which must be in radians.
Tangent (TAN)	Calculates the tangent of the input, which must be in radians.

Motion Functions

AXSJOG	Starts a jog command on a specified axis.
MOVEAXS	Starts a move command on a specified axis.
STOPJOG	Stops a jog command on a specified axis.

Instruction List Instruction Set Summary

Bit String

Statement	Description
AND	Returns the Boolean or bitwise logical AND of the input values.
NOT	Returns the Boolean or bitwise inversion of the input value.
Exclusive OR (XOR)	Returns the Boolean or bitwise logical Exclusive OR of the input values.
Rotate Left (ROL)	Returns a value calculated by circularly shifting the bits of the input value a specified number of positions to the left. Bit values shifted from the most significant bit (MSB) position are rotated to the least significant bit (LSB) position.
Rotate Right (ROR)	Returns a value calculated by circularly shifting the bits of the input value a specified number of positions to the right. Bit values shifted from the least significant bit (LSB) position are rotated to the most significant bit (MSB) position.
Shift Left (SHL)	Returns a value calculated by shifting the bits of the input value a specified number of positions to the left. Bit values shifted from the most significant bit position are discarded during the shift, and the least significant bit positions are zero-filled.
Shift Right (SHR)	Returns a value calculated by shifting the bits of the input value a specified number of positions to the right. Bit values shifted from the least significant bit position are discarded during the shift, and most significant bit positions are zero-filled.

Character String

Statement	Description
Concatenate	Returns the result of concatenating two strings (appending one string to the end of another string).
Delete	Returns the result of deleting a specified number of characters from a specified position in the middle of the input string.
Find	Returns the starting position of one string within a second string. FIND returns 0 if the string is not found.
Insert	Returns a string formed by inserting one string of characters into another string at a specified position.
Left	Returns a specified number of the leftmost characters of the input string.
Length	Returns the length of a character string.
Middle	Returns a specified number of characters from the middle (at a specified position) of the input string.

Statement	Description
Replace	Returns a string formed by replacing characters in one string (at a specified position) with a specified number of characters from another string.
Right	Returns a specified number of the rightmost characters of the input string.
Equal (EQ)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the inputs are equal; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Greater Than or Equal (GE)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the first input is greater than or equal to the second input; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Greater Than (GT)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the first input is greater than the second input; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Less Than or Equal (LE)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the first input is less than or equal to the second input; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Less Than (LT)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the first input is less than the second input; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.
Not Equal (NE)	Returns a Boolean TRUE if the inputs are not equal; otherwise, returns FALSE. Sets the RLL rung output accordingly.

Conversion

Statement	Description
Byte Array to String (BATOS)	Converts an input array of bytes to ASCII characters and stores them to a string output. The terminating byte must contain zero.
Date to String (DateToString)	Converts a DATE to a STRING value. A pointer variable is used to point to the string.
Integer to String (ITOA)	Converts an integer to an ASCII character string representation of the value of the integer and returns the result.
Real to String (RTOA)	Converts a real number to an ASCII character string representation of the value of the number and returns the result.
RGB to DWORD	Converts a triplet of red, green and blue values to a DWORD. Used by the ActiveX control feature of the Operator Interface.
String to Byte Array (STOBA)	Converts each character in the input string to its decimal value and stores the result in a byte array. A zero is placed in the last byte of the array.
String to Date (StringToDate)	Converts a STRING to a DATE and returns the result.
String to Integer (ATOI)	Converts an ASCII numeric string to its integer equivalent. Non-numeric ASCII characters or numeric characters following a non-numeric character are ignored.

Statement	Description
String to Real (ATOR)	Converts an ASCII numeric string (including decimal point) to its real equivalent. Non-numeric ASCII characters or numeric characters following a non-numeric character are ignored.
String to TOD (StringToTOD)	Converts a STRING to a TOD and returns the result.
Time of Day to String (TODToString)	Converts a TOD to a STRING value and places the result in the symbol pointed to by pString.

Mathematical

Statement	Description
Absolute Value (ABS)	Returns the absolute value of the input.
Addition (ADD)	Returns the result of summing the inputs.
Division (DIV)	Returns the result of dividing the first input value by the second input value.
Exponent (EXPT)	Returns the result of raising a value to the power specified by a second value
Modulus (MOD)	Returns the remainder of dividing the first input by the second input.
Move (MOVE)	Returns the result of converting the input value to the same data type as the output.
Multiplication (MUL)	Returns the result of multiplying the input values.
Negation (NEG)	Returns the result of changing the sign of the input value.
Square Root (SQRT)	Returns the square root of the input value.
Subtraction (SUB)	Returns the result of subtracting the second input value from the first input value

Miscellaneous

Statement	Description
Abort All	Aborts all programs in the runtime subsystem.
Change MMI Screen	Displays a specified HMI screen.

Trigonometric and Logarithmic

Statement	Description
Arc Cosine (ACOS)	Calculates the arc cosine of the input. The result is in radians.
Arc Sine (ASIN)	Calculates the arc sine of the input. The result is in radians.
ARC Tangent (ATAN)	Calculates the arc tangent of the input. The result is in radians.
Cosine (COS)	Calculates the cosine of the input, which must be in radians.
Exponential (EXP)	Calculates the natural log exponentiation of the input value (raises e to the power of the input).
Natural Log (LN)	Calculates the natural logarithm of a value.
Logarithm (LOG)	Calculates the base 10 logarithm of a value.
Sine (SIN)	Calculates the sine of the input, which must be in radians.
Tangent (TAN)	Calculates the tangent of the input, which must be in radians.

.CFG

A file with the extension of CFG is a data file that contains information about the system hardware configuration parameters and symbolic information that refers to physical components and the I/O signals.

Action Qualifier

Graphical programming element in an SFC associated with each action block that controls execution of the action logic relative to the period during which the associated Step is active.

Action

Named collection of operations associated with one or more Steps in an SFC.

Active File

Program file that is contained in the top Program Editor window with its title bar highlighted. Commands that are executed from the menus or by clicking on buttons on the tool bars are performed on the active file.

ANY

Generic data type that can represent any of the supported data types.

ANY_BIT

Generic data type that can represent these data types: DWORD, WORD, BYTE, BOOL, including an individual bit within these data types.

ANY_INT

Generic data type that can represent the INT, UINT or DINT data type.

ANY_NUM

Generic data type that can represent these data types: ANY_REAL and ANY_INT.

ANY_REAL

Generic type name that can represent the REAL data type.

Application icon

An application icon is a step template with an icon attached. Whenever an application icon is placed in a SFC program, a new step is created and the information in the application icon is copied into that step.

Board

See I/O Card

BOOL

Member of the ANY_BIT group of data types. BOOL data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_BIT, or BOOL data type. A BOOL is one bit in length and can have one of two values: TRUE (1, or on) or FALSE (0, or off).

Boolean transition

Type of transition in an SFC represented by an expression consisting of symbols and operators that evaluate to a single Boolean result. If the Boolean result is TRUE, then the SFC transition condition is satisfied.

Boolean

Logical element or expression that evaluates to either TRUE or FALSE.

BYTE

Member of the ANY_BIT group of data types. BYTE data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_BIT, or BYTE data type. A BYTE is an unsigned integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0-9) and cannot contain a decimal point. A BYTE is 8 bits in length and has a range of 0 to 255.

Card

See I/O Card

Character Position

Position of a character within a string. The first character in a string starts at position 1.

Coil

RLL graphical programming element that represents a Boolean output symbol.

Configuration File

A Configuration File contains data and parameters describing the systems hardware configuration. This file also contains symbolic identifiers that are used in the application program to refer to the physical hardware devices or I/O signals.

Connector

Group of I/O ports usually routed to one physical connector on a board.

Contact tool

A button on the RLL tool bar that is used to insert an input contact into an RLL program.

Contact

RLL graphical programming element that represents a Boolean input symbol.

Control Loop Element

See Loop.

Control Path

Control path is a line between steps in an SFC that shows the path of the program control flow.

Cursor

The cursor is the object that follows the motion of the pointing device (keyboard, mouse, trackball or touch screen) and is used to select operator interface elements on the screen.

DATE

Member of the ANY_DATE group of data types. DATE data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_DATE, or DATE data type.

DINT

Member of the ANY_NUM group of data types. DINT data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_NUM, ANY_INT, or DINT data type. The DINT is a signed integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0-9) and cannot contain a decimal point. An DINT is 32 bits in length and has a range of -2147483648 to +2147483647.

DWORD

Member of the ANY_BIT group of data types. DWORD data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_BIT, or DWORD data type. A DWORD is an unsigned integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0-9) and cannot contain a decimal point. A DWORD is 32 bits in length and has a range of 0-4,294,967,295.

Dynamic Data Exchange

DDE is the passage of data between applications, accomplished without user involvement or monitoring. In the Windows environment, DDE is achieved through a set of message types, recommended procedures (protocols) for processing these message types, and some newly defined data types. By following the protocols, applications that were written independently of each other can pass data between themselves without involvement on the part of the user.

FCB

File Control Block. An internal data item that is used to control the File I/O Operations in Structured Text.

First Scan

First Scan Logic is used to execute specific commands only one time during the first logic scan of a program. An example may be initializing timers and counter to a specific value.

Function

Predefined SFC algorithm that carries out a single operation, such as Square Root, Rotate Left, Rewind File, etc.

Function Block

Predefined RLL algorithm that carries out a single operation, extending the program's capabilities beyond the simple logic implicit to contacts and coils.

HMI

HMI stands for "Human/Machine Interface" and refers to the body of functionality that allows the human operator to interact with the machine or process controller.

I/O

I/O stands for inputs and outputs to and from the controller.

I/O Card

Plugs into one of the expansion slots of the system unit and connects to the peripheral I/O racks and modules. Also called card or board.

I/O Scanner

I/O scanner is a task within the system that is responsible for retrieving all inputs from and transmitting all outputs to the I/O interface. The I/O scanner updates the internal I/O data tables that are used by the other subsystems.

ICON

An Icon is a picture that represents another object. In SFC+ may be used to represent step boxes or macro steps. Icons can contain predefined functionality and can be used for function libraries or canned routines.

IEC 1131-3

IEC 1131-3 is an international standard from the International Electrotechnical Commission defining programming languages for Programmable Controllers.

Instruction List

Instruction List is a textual language defined by IEC 1131-3.

INT

Member of the ANY_NUM group of data types. INT data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_NUM, ANY_INT, or INT data type. The INT is a signed integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0-9) and cannot contain a decimal point. In an enhancement to the IEC1131-3 specification, the INT is 32 bits in length and has a range of -2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647.

Integer

The integer data type, or INT is composed of 32 bits, signed and can represent the values -2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,648.

Label

Graphical programming element in an SFC or RLL program that identifies where program flow is to resume from its corresponding jump.

Ladder Diagram

Ladder diagram is graphical programming language defined by IEC 1131 using relay ladder logic concepts.

Loop

Graphical programming element in an SFC diagram that either directs all program execution to continue in the downward direction or to loop back to some position in the control path above. The Loop Element contains two transition conditions: one directs program flow to continue in the downward direction, and the other directs program flow to loop back. Multiple Loop Elements can be nested within each other, but they can not cross each other and can not enter Select Diverges or Parallel Diverges.

Loop Tool

The Loop Tool is a button on the SFC Edit Toolbar that inserts a control element into an SFC diagram.

Macro Step

Named graphical element in an SFC that represents the inclusion of another entire SFC as a single Step. The included SFC begins execution at its Start Step when the Macro Step that calls it becomes active. Execution in the Macro Step is completed when the included SFC reaches its End Step. Macro Steps can be used to control the complexity or provide a high level view of a larger SFC by breaking the SFC into a collection of smaller and simpler SFCs. Actions can be attached to Macro Steps just as they can be for regular Steps.

Operator Interface

The operator interface is a series of computer screens, messages or windows that are presented to the operator to control and monitor a machine or process.

Parallel Diverge

SFC graphical programming element that splits a control path into two or more parallel paths. When program execution reaches the beginning of a Parallel Divergence, all the subsequent control paths become active in parallel. These control paths continue to be active until all the control paths within a Parallel Diverge reach the point of convergence. At this point, all the paths within the Parallel Divergence are deactivated and the control path below the convergence point will become active.

Port

I/O port usually consisting of eight I/O bits. A port may be accessed as an integer within programs.

PRGCB

The Program Control Block allows SFC programs to create and control the execution of other application programs.

Program Editor

The Program Editor is a utility used to edit application programs. It consists of editors for SFC and RLL programs.

Project

Organizes or groups the application programs and configuration files for an application in a separate subdirectory.

REAL

Member of the ANY_NUM group of data types. REAL data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_NUM, ANY_REAL, or REAL data type. A REAL number data type is composed of one or more of the digits (0-9), is signed, and contains a decimal point. The range for REAL numbers is: -3.402823 E38 to -1.401298 E-45 (negative), and +1.401298E-45 to +3.402823 E38 (positive).

Relay Ladder Logic

RLL is the graphical programming language used for describing application program logic based on an electrical relay contact and coil analogy.

RLL

RLL stands for Relay Ladder Logic. A graphical programming language using electrical relay contact and coil analogy.

RLL Transition

Transition in an SFC that is programmed using Relay Ladder Logic. The RLL transition consists of a single RLL rung with an output coil that has the same name as the RLL transition. When this output coil has power flow, the SFC transition condition is satisfied.

Rung

RLL graphical programming element that represents an RLL function.

Runtime Engine

Module responsible for scheduling and executing the program logic associated with the project's source code, e.g., SFC, RLL, etc. This module also performs as a server to DDE clients.

Select Diverge

SFC graphical programming element that splits a single control path into two or more paths. The control path selected for execution is determined by the transition conditions that are located at the beginning of each of the new control paths.

Sequential Function Chart

SFC is the graphical programming language for diagramming sequential logic using Steps, Transitions and Actions.

SFC

SFC stands for Sequential Function Chart which is used as a graphical programming language for diagramming sequential logic using steps, transitions, and actions. The IEC 1131 has defined a specific implementation of SFC for use with PLCs.

SFC+

SFC+ is an enhanced version of the IEC 1131 Sequential Function Chart standard programming language used by PC Control.

SFC Transition Coil

SFC graphical programming element that can be associated with a Step or a Macro Step and provide program flow control. Associated with a Step, the SFC transition coil can abort the Step and direct program flow to another Step. Associated with a Macro Step, the SFC transition coil can abort the child SFC and direct program flow to another Step in the parent SFC.

Simultaneous Diverge

Simultaneous diverge is a SFC graphical programming elements that splits a control path into two or more parallel control paths. When program execution reached the beginning of a simultaneous divergence all subsequent control paths will become active in parallel. These control paths will continue to be active until all control paths within the simultaneous divergence reach a point of convergence at which time the paths will be deactivated and the control path below the convergence will become active.

Slot

A space in an I/O or computer in which a card is placed.

Step

Named graphical element in an SFC that represents a state or span of time in the program execution during which the actions and functions associated with the Step are performed.

Step Name

The Step Name is an identifier that refers to a step in a Sequential Function Chart. The Step name can be changed by double clicking on the Step box to open the Edit Step dialog box, then double clicking the identifier in the Step Name edit box and entering a new identifier.

STRING

Member of the ANY group of data types. STRING data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY or STRING data type. The format for a STRING data type consists of a string of up to 250 ASCII characters in single quotation marks.

Structured Text

Structured Text is a textual programming language defined by IEC 1131.

Symbol

Internal memory location that contains information. The content of the information is defined by the data type and can be real numbers, integers, strings of characters, etc. The Symbol Manager is used to define a symbol and to assign it a symbolic name and data type.

TIME

TIME Member of the ANY group of data types. TIME data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY or TIME data type. The format of the TIME data type consist of a T# or t# followed by a sequence of one or more numbers and time unit specifiers. Examples:

T#1D2h = 1 day and 2 hours

t#26H = 26 hours

t#5m45s = 5 minutes and 45 seconds

t#26S200MS = 26 seconds and 200 milliseconds

T#900ms = 900 milliseconds

Time of Day

The Time of Day data type, or TOD, is used to represent a specific time of day. IEC-1131-3 uses the format TOD#HH:MM:SS.ms to designate that the following characters will be a time of day. Ex. TOD#23:59:59.999

TMR

The Timer data type, or TMR is used to implement a timer using structured text.

TOD

Member of the ANY_DATE group of data types. TOD (Time of Day) data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_DATE, or TOD data type.

Transition

Graphical element in an SFC that evaluates to a Boolean result. This Boolean result determines when program flow is passed from Step(s) preceding the transition to Step(s) following the transition.

Transition Condition

A transition condition is a logical expression associated with an SFC transition element resulting in a single Boolean result. The Boolean result is used to determine when activation is passed from the active step to the step following the transition.

Transition Logic

Transition logic can be represented by a single Boolean expression or single relay ladder logic rung.

Transition Mode

The Transition Mode Button on the SFC toolbar determines what type of transition is inserted when using the Transition Insertion Tool. If the Transition Mode button is not depressed an RLL transition is inserted. If the Transition Mode button is depressed a Boolean transition is inserted.

UINT

Member of the ANY_INT group of data types. UINT data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_INT, or UINT data type. A UINT is an unsigned integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0-9) and cannot contain a decimal point. A UINT is 16 bits in length and has a range of 0 to 65535.

WORD

Member of the ANY_BIT group of data types. WORD data types are valid in any instruction or function block that accepts an ANY, ANY_BIT, or WORD data type. A WORD is an unsigned integer data type that is composed of one or more of the digits (0-9) and cannot contain a decimal point. A WORD is 16 bits in length and has a range of 0 to 65535.

A

Aborting

- RLL program, 6-5
- running SFC program, 5-3

Access levels

- changing, 2-8, 6-3
- descriptions, 2-7

Access Levels

- Descriptions, 6-2–6-3
- Entering, 2-8, 6-3

Action function, 4-44

Action manager, 4-50

Action name, 4-49

Action parameters, 4-45

Action Qualifiers, 4-47, G-8

Actions, 4-44

- adding, 4-69
- configuring, 4-69
- editing, 4-70
- printing, 2-23

Activating configurations, 2-32, 3-4, 6-13

Activation and Edit Modes, 6-4

ActiveX controls, 6-33

- Editing, 6-37
- Editing events, 6-42
- editing methods, 6-38
- Editing properties, 6-37
- Inserting, 6-36
- introduction, 6-33
- limitations, 6-33
- notes, 6-34
- registering, 6-35
- Sources, 6-34

Adding

- Actions, 4-69
- Application Icon Steps, 4-65
- Boolean Transitions, 4-67
- branches, 4-31
- coils, 4-30
- contacts, 4-29
- controls, 6-9
- function blocks, 4-34
- jump coils, 4-33
- Jumps, SFC, 4-71
- Labels, SFC, 4-72

loops, 4-73

Macro Steps, 4-67

program comments, SFC, 4-81

RLL Transitions, 4-66

rung comments, 4-40

Select Divergences, 4-76

SFC transition coils, 4-33

Simultaneous Divergences, 4-77

Steps, 4-63

symbol descriptions, 4-40

Adding a loop, SFC, 4-73

Addresses, avoiding conflicts

PCIF2, C-7

PCIF-30, B-2

PCIM, A-4

Aligning controls, 6-12

Arrays, 4-12

pointers, F-5

Assignment

Structured Text, 4-86

Authorization, 2-14

Authorized mode, 1-5

Axis Group Input Symbols, E-16

.TOOLLEN Axis Group
Input Symbols, E-17

.TOOLRAD Axis Group
Input Symbols, E-16

Axis Group Output Symbols, E-12

Axis Input Symbols, E-13

.FIXOFF Axis Input
Symbols, E-14

.JM and .JP Axis Input
Symbols, E-15

.TOOLOFF Axis Input
Symbols, E-14

Axis Output Symbols, E-11

AXSJOG, E-29, G-16

B

Backing up and restoring
variables, 2-31

Bar control, 6-16

Baud Rate, A-18

Bit String
 IL, G-17
 RLL, G-2
 ST, G-10
Bitmap, 6-18
BIU, Field Control
 sample configuration, 3-33
Block display, Motion Control,
 E-34
Block Format, E-5
Board Address, B-2
BOOL, 4-7
Box, 6-19
Branches
 deleting, 4-39
 moving, 4-38
BREAK, 4-87
Bus
 connection to, A-1, A-3,
 A-12
 errors, A-18
 termination, A-12, A-13
Button functions, 6-22
BYTE, 4-7

C

CASE, 4-87
Catalog numbers
 PCIF2, C-1
 PCIF-30, B-1
 PCIM, A-14
Character String
 IL, G-17
 RLL, G-3
 ST, G-11
CIMPLICITY HMI
 exporting symbols for, 4-25
Clearing fault mode and error
 conditions, 4-104
Click button, 6-20
Closing a program, 2-24
Comment, 4-88
Comments
 Instruction List, 4-107
 RLL, 4-40
 SFC, 4-81
 Structured Text, 4-88
 turning on and off, 2-25

Common questions, 2-18
Comparison functions
 RLL, G-3
Configuration, 3-4–3-5
 editing, 3-4
 importing/exporting, 3-41
 new, 3-4
Configuration Utility, 2-2
Configuration Utility,
 description, 3-5
Configurations, 2-20
 activating, 3-4, 6-13
Configuring
 Motion Control, E-2
Configuring a Macro Step,
 4-68
Configuring a step, 4-63
Configuring Series 90-30 I/O,
 3-16
Conflicts, hardware, 3-2
Connectors
 PCIF2, C-4
 PCIF-30, B-1
 PCIM, A-3
Contacts and Coils
 RLL, G-1
Context-sensitive help, 1-8
Continuous button, 6-23
Continuous Logic Manager,
 6-5
Control loops, 4-54
Controller Port Address, A-5
Controlling RLL programs
 from Operator Interface,
 6-5
Controls
 adding, 6-9
 aligning, 6-12
 Bar, 6-16
 Bitmap, 6-18
 Box, 6-19
 Button functions, 6-22
 Click button, 6-20
 Continuous button, 6-23
 Cutting, copying, and
 pasting, 6-11
 deleting, 6-12
 Deselect a control, 6-10

- editing, 6-9
- Gauge, 6-25
- Indicator, 6-27
- Moving, 6-10
- Moving Front/Back, 6-12
- Numeric display, 6-29
- Program Status Panel, 6-30
- Selecting, 6-10
- Sizing, 6-11
- Slide, 6-30
 - standard, 6-14
 - Text, 6-32
- Conversion functions
 - IL, G-18
 - RLL, G-4
- Copying a screen, 6-7
- Copying a symbol, 4-16
- Counters and Timers
 - RLL, G-4
 - ST, G-13
- Creating
 - array of symbols, 4-12
 - new Operator Interface
 - screen, 6-7
 - Relay Ladder Logic
 - programs, 4-28
 - SFC program, 4-60
 - symbols, 4-14
 - user-defined data type, 4-17
- Creating
 - Structured Text application
 - programs, 4-82
- Creating a new configuration, 3-4
- CSV file
 - exporting, 3-41
- Cutting, copying, and pasting
 - controls, 6-11

D

- Data port, 3-2
- Data types, 4-7
 - BOOL, 4-7
 - BYTE, 4-7
 - DATE, 4-8
 - DINT, 4-8
 - DWORD, 4-8
 - INT, 4-8

- REAL, 4-9
- STRING, 4-9
- TIME, 4-9, 4-10
- TOD, 4-10
- UINT, 4-10
- WORD, 4-10
- Datagrams, A-18
 - using with the PCIM driver, 3-15
- DATE, 4-8
- Daughterboard, A-1, A-2
- Define Board dialog, 3-2, 3-6
- Define M Flag Symbols, E-10, E-18
- Deleting
 - branch, 4-39
 - Controls, 6-12
 - screen, 6-7
 - symbol, 4-16
- Demo mode, 1-5
- DeviceNet I/O
 - configuring, 3-20
- DINT, 4-8
- DIP switches
 - PCIF2, C-6
 - PCIF-30, B-3
- DIP Switches
 - PCIM, A-8
- Display property options, 2-27
- Divergences, 4-51
 - selected, 4-51
 - simultaneous, 4-52
- Do Not Process M Codes
 - Feature, E-10
- Documenting
 - RLL application programs, 4-40
 - SFC programs, 4-81
- Drive capability, A-15
- DWORD, 4-8
- Dynamic data exchange (DDE), 3-38

E

- Edge Detect
 - RLL, G-4
 - ST, G-13

Edit Menu, 2-10

Editing

- Action parameters, 4-45
- Actions, 4-70
- ActiveX controls, 6-37
- configuration parameter of an
 - Action, 4-71
- configurations, 3-4
- controls, 6-9
- existing SFC programs, 4-61
- online, 4-115
- program comments, SFC,
 - 4-81
- RLL programs from
 - Continuous Logic Manager, 6-5
- rung comments, 4-40
- Structured Text, 4-83
- symbol descriptions, 4-40
- symbols, 4-14, 6-13
- Transitions, 4-66

EEPROM Address, A-5

Electrical characteristics, A-15

Error conditions, 4-104

Event Log, 5-2

Events

- ActiveX controls, 6-42

Examples

- identifiers, 4-3
- Instruction List, 4-112
- literals, 4-4
- online editing, 4-118
- operator interface screen,
 - 6-15
- PID, 4-99
- SFC program, 4-56
- simple RLL, 4-28
- Structured Text, 4-85
- Symbol Manager, 4-13
- time duration, 4-48

Execute Menu, 2-13

EXIT, 4-89

Exporting

- configuration (CSV) file,
 - 3-41
- symbols for CIMPLICITY HMI (snf), 4-25

Exporting configuration, 3-41

- format, 3-41
- information types, 3-41

Expressions

- Structured Text, 4-84

Extended Timers

- RLL, G-5
- ST, G-13

Extensions

- IEC 1131-3, 4-59
- RLL, 4-59
- SFC, 4-59

F

Field Control BIU

- sample configuration, 3-33

File functions

- RLL, G-5
- ST, G-14

File Menu, 2-10

File names, 2-34

Find, 2-11

First scan, 2-32

Fit the window, 2-25

Font and color options, 2-27

FOR, 4-91

Frequently asked questions,

- 2-18

Function Block Diagram, 2-3

Function Blocks Palette, 2-12

Function call, 4-93

G

G Codes, E-6

G56 Macro Calls with Motion,

- E-22

G65 Macro Calls

- Designing the Macro, E-22
- Execution, E-23

Gauge, 6-25

Genius bus address definitions,

- 3-11

Global Data, A-18

Global Data Setup dialog, 3-11

Graphical Languages

- Function Block Diagram, 2-3
- Ladder Diagram, 2-3
- Sequential Function Chart,
 - 2-3

H

Hardware conflicts, 3-2
Hardware requirements for the
PC, 1-2

I

I/O Base Address, A-6
I/O configuration overview,
3-2
I/O points
configuration, 3-4
description, 4-2
I/O scan rate, 3-5
I/O Scanner, 2-6, 3-2, 3-5, 5-2
Icon Menu, 2-14
Identifiers, 4-3
IEC 1131-3
extensions, 4-59
overview, 2-3
IEC style locations, 2-29
IF, 4-90
IF-GOTO Command, E-21
IF-GOTO Command Example,
E-21
Importing configuration, 3-41
information types, 3-41
Importing configuration, CSV
file, 3-43
INCLUDE, 4-91
Indicator, 6-27
Indirect addressing, F-2
Infinite loop, 4-94, 4-96
Inserting
ActiveX controls, 6-36
new rung, 4-31
Installation, A-9
Instruction List, 2-3
examples, 4-112
language overview, 4-107
opening a document, 4-105
overview, 4-105
syntax, 4-107
Instruction set summary
Instruction List, G-17
RLL (LD), G-1

SFC, G-7
Structured Text, G-10
INT, 4-8
Integrating Structured Text
into an SFC, 4-80
Interrupts, 3-2, A-7
IRQ, A-7

J

Jog panel, E-31
Jog Panel, E-24
Jump and label construct, 4-54
Jump and label parameters,
4-55

K

Keyboard shortcuts, Operator
Interface, 2-9

L

LABEL, 4-93
Labels
adding to SFC, 4-72
Ladder Diagram, 2-3
LEDs, A-14, A-16
PCIM, A-3
License
transferring, 2-14
upgrading, 2-14
Literals, 4-4

M

M Codes, E-8
Predefined, E-9
Wait and Continue, E-9
Macro Steps, 4-58
adding, 4-67
configuring, 4-68
Managing Projects, 2-20
Math functions
RLL, G-5
ST, G-15

- Mathematical functions
 - IL, G-19
- Memory address, 3-3
- Memory Base Address, A-6
- Memory size options, 2-26
- Memory usage, 4-21
- Menus
 - Edit, 2-10
 - Execute, 2-13
 - File, 2-10
 - Icon, 2-14
 - Project, 2-13
 - Tool, 2-14
 - View Menu, 2-12
- Methods
 - ActiveX controls, 6-38
- Minimum PC hardware requirements, 1-2
- Miscellaneous functions
 - IL, G-19
 - RLL, G-6
 - ST, G-15
- Monitoring
 - Application programs, 4-102
 - power flow, 5-5
 - symbols, 4-102
- Monitoring an axis, E-32
- Monitoring Axis Plot, E-25
- Monitoring motion
 - applications, E-24
- Monitoring Multi-Axis Motion Status, E-26
- Motherboard, A-2
- Motion Commands, E-4
- Motion control
 - Jog panel, E-31
 - Single axis panel, E-32
- Motion Control
 - Block Examples, E-6
 - Block Format, E-5
 - Define M Flag Symbols, E-10, E-18
 - Do Not Process M Codes Feature, E-10
 - Embedding Structured Text, E-3, E-27
 - G56 Macro Calls, E-22
 - Guidelines for motion in structured text, E-27
 - How the Embedded Structured Text Code is Evaluated, E-28
 - IF-GOTO Command, E-21
 - IF-GOTO Command Example, E-21
 - Jog Panel, E-24
 - Monitoring, E-24
 - Monitoring Axis Plot, E-25
 - Monitoring Multi-Axis Motion Status, E-26
 - Multi-axis status panel, E-33
 - Multi-Axis Status Panel, E-26
 - Predefined Symbols, E-11
 - Program Flow Control, E-19
 - RS274 block display, E-34
 - Running, E-24
 - Single Axis Motion Status, E-25
 - Single Axis Panel, E-25
 - Suspend on Spindle
 - Commands Feature, E-18
 - Suspend on Tool Changes Feature, E-19
 - Wait on All M Codes Feature, E-10
 - WHILE Command, E-19
 - WHILE Command Example, E-20
- Motion Control Language, E-1
- Motion Control to an SFC, E-3
- Motion functions
 - ST, G-16
- Motion Functions
 - Structured Text, E-29
- Motion programming, E-3
- Motion Qualifiers, 4-46, G-9
- MOVEAXS, E-29, G-16
- Moving
 - branch, 4-38
 - contact points of a branch, 4-32
 - Controls, 6-10
 - loop, SFC, 4-75
 - program elements, 4-37, 4-39
- Multi-axis status panel, E-33
- Multi-Axis Status Panel, E-26
- Multistate button, 6-20

N

- Naming a bit in a symbol, 4-16
- Navigating in the
 - Configuration Utility, 3-5
- New configuration, 3-4
- New Operator Interface file, 6-6
- New program
 - creating, 2-22
- New projects
 - creating, 2-20
- Normal operation, 2-33
- NULL pointer, F-4
- Numeric display, 6-29

O

- Online documentation, 1-7
- Online editing, 4-115
 - File operations, 4-117
 - I/O, 4-116
 - IL programs, 4-118
 - operation, 4-115
 - RLL programs, 4-117
 - rules, 4-116
 - SFC programs, 4-117
 - ST programs, 4-118
 - symbols, 4-116
- Online Help, 1-7
- Opening an Operator Interface file, 6-6
- Operator Interface, 2-2
 - Activation and Edit modes, 6-4
 - controlling RLL programs, 6-5
 - editing operations, 6-9
 - Motion controls, E-31
 - new file, 6-6
 - starting, 6-2
 - switching modes, 6-4
 - symbol operations, 6-13
- Operator Interface file
 - opening, 6-6
 - saving, 6-6
- Operator Interface operations, 6-6

- Operator Interface screen
 - operations, 6-7
 - copying a screen, 6-7
 - creating a screen, 6-7
 - deleting a screen, 6-7
 - renaming a screen, 6-8
 - selecting a screen to edit, 6-8
 - selecting the Start screen, 6-8
- Operator Interface screens, 6-6
- Operator Interface, description, 2-14
- Operators
 - Instruction List, 4-108
 - Structured Text, 4-84, 4-97
- Overview
 - Instruction List, 4-105
 - of PC Control software, 2-2
 - Relay Ladder Logic diagrams, 4-26
 - Sequential Function Charts, 4-41
 - Structured Text, 4-82

P

- Parameters
 - Step, 4-43
 - system options, 2-26
- Parity checking, 2-18
- Parity errors, 2-18, A-18
- Parsing a program, 4-102
- Password, 6-2
 - default, 1-5, 4-1
 - entering, 2-8
- Pasting controls, 6-11
- PC Control, running and authorizing, 1-5
- PC hardware requirements, 1-2
- PCIF2
 - connectors, C-4
 - DIP switches, C-6
 - installing, C-7
 - jumpers, C-3
 - quick start guide, C-7
- PCIF2 (IC693PIF400), C-1
- PCIF-30
 - DIP switches, B-3
 - installing, B-1
- PCIF-30 (IC693PIF301), B-1

- PCIM, 3-7
 - catalog numbers, A-14
 - daughterboard, A-1, A-2
 - electrical characteristics,
 - A-15
 - motherboard, A-2
 - specifications, A-14
 - PID (proportional integral derivative) control, 4-98, G-16
 - Pointer operators, 4-85, F-2
 - Pointer symbol definition, F-3
 - Power flow, monitoring, 5-5
 - Power loss, 2-19
 - Power supply requirements,
 - A-15
 - Power-down sequence, 2-32
 - Predefined Motion Control,
 - E-11
 - Predefined system symbols,
 - 4-20
 - PRGCB
 - Rewind Function, 4-101
 - Printing
 - program cross-references,
 - 2-24
 - programs, 2-23
 - Profibus I/O
 - configuring, 3-22
 - Program
 - creating new, 3-4
 - Program Control Block (PRGCB)
 - Status Code, 4-100
 - using, 4-100
 - Program Editor, 2-2, 3-4
 - Program elements
 - editing, 4-39
 - moving, 4-39
 - Program Execution, 2-2, 2-6, 5-2
 - Program flow control, 4-53
 - control loops, 4-54
 - jump and label construct,
 - 4-54
 - Program Flow Control in
 - motion applications, E-19
 - Program label, 4-45
 - Program management, 2-24
 - Program Manager, 2-2, 5-2
 - Program operation
 - Activate configuration, 2-32
 - File names, 2-34
 - First scan, 2-32
 - Normal operation, 2-33
 - Power-down sequence, 2-32
 - Program operation overview*,
 - 2-32
 - Program Status Panel, 6-30
 - Project management, 2-21
 - Project Menu, 2-13
 - Projects, 3-2, 3-4–3-5
 - activating configuration, 2-21
 - copying, 2-21
 - creating, 2-20
 - new, 2-13
 - opening, 2-20
 - opening new, 2-22
 - renaming, 2-21
 - Properties
 - ActiveX controls, 6-37
 - Proportional Integral Derivative (PID), 4-98
 - example, 4-99
 - notes on using, 4-99
- ## Q
- Qualifiers
 - Action, 4-47, G-8
 - Motion, 4-46, G-9
 - Quick Start, 2-4
- ## R
- REAL, 4-9
 - Redoing, 4-39
 - Registering
 - ActiveX controls, 6-35
 - Relay Ladder Logic
 - extensions, 4-59
 - how it is solved, 4-27
 - when function blocks used,
 - 4-28
 - Relay Ladder Logic
 - instructions

- Output Coils, 5-5
- Positive Transition Sensing Contact, 5-5
- Relay Ladder Logic programs
 - adding a branch, 4-31
 - adding a coil, 4-30
 - adding a contact, 4-29
 - adding a jump coil, 4-33
 - adding an SFC transition coil, 4-33
 - adding function blocks, 4-34
 - creating, 4-28
 - inserting a new rung, 4-31
- Relay Ladder Logic Transition Manager, 4-51
- Renaming a screen, 6-8
- REPEAT, 4-94
- REPLACE, 2-11
- Reserved system symbols, 4-22
- Resource conflicts,
 - determining, A-7, B-2, C-7
- Resources you must reserve PCIM, A-4
- Restart
 - running RLL programs with, 6-5
- RLL Toolbar, 2-17
- RS274 Block Display, E-34
- RS-274-D, Enhancements, E-3
- RUN Relay
 - PCIF2, C-5
- RUN with Debug, 2-13, 4-103, 5-3
- Rung
 - new, 4-31
- Rung comments
 - adding, 4-40
 - editing, 4-40
- Running
 - active file with debug, 5-3
 - active file with restart, 5-3, 5-5
 - one step of the active file, 5-3
 - RLL programs from
 - Continuous Logic Manager, 6-5
 - Running motion applications, E-24
 - Running the Active Program, 5-2
 - Running the software, 3-5
 - Runtime
 - overview, 2-6
 - shutdown, 2-5
 - start, 2-5
- S**
- Saving files, 2-23
 - Operator Interface file, 6-6
 - with new name, 2-23
- Scale to Fit Window, 2-16, 2-25
- SCAN, 4-95
- Scan rate, 4-21
- Scope
 - of symbols, 4-2
- Screen operations, 6-7
- Search and Replace, 2-11
- Selected divergences, 4-51
- Selecting
 - controls, 6-10
 - elements, 4-37
 - multiple elements, 4-37
 - screen to edit, 6-8
 - start screen, 6-8
- Selection functions ST, G-15
- Sequential Function Charts
 - creating, 4-60
 - described, 2-3
 - how solved, 4-56
 - overview, 4-41
- Series 90-30 I/O, configuring, 3-16
- SFC
 - extensions, 4-59
 - Motion Control, E-3
- SFC Functions
 - Action, 2-14, 2-17, 2-25
 - Macro Step, 2-17
- SFC menus, 4-62
- SFC program, 5-3–5-5
 - Application Icon Step, 2-14
 - Boolean Transition, 2-16
 - RLL Transition, 2-14

- SFC program flow controls
 - adding a Jump, SFC, 4-71
 - adding a Label, SFC, 4-72
 - adding a loop, 4-73
 - adding a Select Divergence, 4-76
 - adding a Simultaneous Divergence, 4-77
 - moving a loop, 4-75
 - PRGCB, 4-100
- SFC Toolbar, 2-12, 2-17, 4-62
- SFC transitions
 - how evaluated, 4-57
- Sharing data, 3-38
- Shift/Rotate functions
 - ST, G-14
- Shutting down Runtime, 2-5
- Signal conditioning, A-15
- Simultaneous divergences,
 - 4-52, 4-58
 - guidelines for using, 4-79
- Single Axis Motion Status,
 - E-25
- Single Axis Panel, E-25
- Single axis status panel, E-32
- Single stepping a program,
 - 4-104
- Sizing Controls, 6-11
- Sizing program to fit window,
 - 2-25
- Slide, 6-30
- SNF file
 - exporting, 4-25
- Software overview, 2-2
- Software subsystem
 - Configuration Utility, 3-5
 - I/O Scanner, 2-6, 3-2, 3-5
 - Operator Interface, 2-14
 - Program Editor, 3-4
 - Program Execution, 2-6
- Specifications
 - PCIM, A-14
- Spindle Output Symbols, E-13
- Standard controls, 6-14
- Standard Toolbar, 2-16
- Starting
 - Operator Interface, 6-2
 - Program Editor, 5-2–5-3
 - Runtime, 2-5, 5-2–5-3
- Starting the software, 3-5
- Statement types
 - Structured Text, 4-98
- Statements
 - ST, G-10
- Status Bar, 2-18, 3-4
- Status of Application Programs, 5-6
- Status symbols
 - average scan, 4-21
 - first scan, 4-21
 - last scan, 4-21
 - max scan, 4-21
 - memory usage, 4-21
 - scan overrun, 4-21
 - scan rate, 4-21
- Step system symbols, 4-43
- Steps, 4-41, 4-63
 - adding, 4-63
 - Application Icon, 4-65
 - configuring, 4-63
- STOPJOG, E-30, G-16
- Stopping
 - RLL program, 6-5
 - running SFC program, 5-3
- STRING, 4-9
- Structured Text, 2-3
 - accessory bar, 4-83
 - editing, 4-83
 - editing in an SFC Step, 4-82
 - entering statements, 4-83
 - expressions, 4-84
 - Insert Function menu, 4-83
 - Insert Statements menu, 4-83
 - integrating into an SFC, 4-80
 - language overview, 4-84
 - opening a Structured Text Document, 4-82
 - operators, 4-84
 - overview, 4-82
 - Pointer definition, F-3
 - pointer operators, 4-85, F-2
- Structured Text Motion
 - functions
 - AXSJOG, G-16
 - MOVEAXS, G-16
 - STOPJOG, G-16

- Structured Text Motion
 - Functions, E-29
 - AXSJOG, E-29
 - MOVEAXS, E-29
 - STOPJOG, E-30
 - Structured Text operators, 4-97
 - Structured Text statement
 - types
 - assignment, 4-86, 4-98
 - BREAK, 2-13, 4-87, 5-3
 - CASE, 4-87, 4-98
 - comment, 2-17, 4-88, 4-98
 - DELETE, 2-14
 - EXIT, 4-89, 4-98
 - FOR, 2-23, 3-5, 4-91, 4-98, 5-2
 - function call, 4-93, 4-98
 - IF, 3-2-3-4, 4-90, 4-98, 5-2-5-5
 - INCLUDE, 4-91, 4-98
 - LABEL, 4-93
 - REPEAT, 4-94, 4-98
 - RIGHT, 2-24
 - SCAN, 3-5, 4-95, 4-98
 - WHILE, 4-95, 4-98
 - Structured Text syntax, 4-85
 - Structuring RLL application
 - programs, 4-26
 - Suspend on Spindle
 - Commands Feature, E-18
 - Suspend on Tool Changes
 - Feature, E-19
 - Switching Operator Interface
 - modes, 6-4
 - Symbol data types
 - User-defined data type, 4-11
 - Symbol descriptions
 - adding, 4-40
 - editing, 4-40
 - Symbol Enumeration, 2-28
 - Symbol manager, 4-12
 - opening, 4-12
 - pointer definition, F-3
 - Symbol operations, 6-13
 - editing, 6-13
 - Symbols, 3-4
 - copying, 4-16
 - creating, 4-14
 - creating an array, 4-12
 - defining, 4-12
 - deleting, 4-16
 - editing, 4-14
 - global, 4-2
 - local, 4-2
 - naming a bit, 4-16
 - online editing, 4-116
 - overview, 4-2
 - predefined, 4-20
 - Reserved system symbols, 4-22
 - system status, 4-21
 - system, for SFC steps, 4-43
 - Syntax
 - Instruction List, 4-107
 - Structured Text, 4-85
 - System Configuration dialog, 3-2, 3-5
 - System Objects
 - ST, G-16
 - System options, 2-26
 - Display properties, 2-27
 - Font and color options, 2-27
 - Memory size options, 2-26
- ## T
- Temporary authorization, 2-14
 - Testing
 - application programs, 4-102
 - symbols, 4-102
 - Text, 6-32
 - Textual Languages
 - Instruction List, 2-3
 - Structured Text, 2-3
 - Theory of operation*, 2-32
 - TIME, 4-9, 4-10
 - Time duration, 4-48
 - Timers
 - RLL, G-4
 - TOD, 4-10
 - Tool Menu, 2-14
 - Toolbars
 - Instruction List, 4-106
 - RLL Toolbar, 2-17
 - SFC, 2-12, 2-17
 - Standard, 2-16
 - Trace, 2-11
 - Transferring data, 3-38

Transition Manager, RLL,
4-51
Transition parameters, 4-51
Transitions
about, 4-50
adding a Boolean Transition,
4-67
adding an RLL Transition,
4-66
definition, 4-66
editing, 4-66
how evaluated, 4-57
printing, 2-23
Trigonometric and Logarithmic
functions
IL, G-20
RLL, G-6
ST, G-16
Tutorial
cookie, D-1

U

UINT, 4-10
Uninterruptible power supply
(UPS), 2-19
configuring, 2-30
shutting down, 2-30
Use of online documentation,
1-7
User-defined data type, 4-11
User-defined data types
creating, 4-17

V

View Menu, 2-12
Viewing a comment, SFC,
4-81
Viewing programs, 2-25

W

Wait on All M Codes Feature,
E-10
Watching and forcing symbols
(Watch window), 4-102
WHILE, 4-95
WHILE Command, E-19
WHILE Command Example,
E-20
WORD, 4-10